User Documentation for IDA v4.0.0-dev (SUNDIALS v4.0.0-dev)

Alan C. Hindmarsh, Radu Serban, and Aaron Collier
Center for Applied Scientific Computing
Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory

May 7, 2018

UCRL-SM-208112

This work was performed under the auspices of the U.S. Department of Energy by Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory under Contract DE-AC52-07NA27344.

Contents

List of Tables vii

List of Figures ix

1 Introduction 1
- 1.1 Changes from previous versions . . . 2
- 1.2 Reading this User Guide . . . 7
- 1.3 SUNDIALS Release License . . . 7
  - 1.3.1 Copyright Notices . . . 8
    - 1.3.1.1 SUNDIALS Copyright . . . 8
    - 1.3.1.2 ARKode Copyright . . . 8
  - 1.3.2 BSD License . . . 8

2 Mathematical Considerations 11
- 2.1 IVP solution . . . 11
- 2.2 Preconditioning . . . 15
- 2.3 Rootfinding . . . 15

3 Code Organization 17
- 3.1 SUNDIALS organization . . . 17
- 3.2 IDA organization . . . 17

4 Using IDA for C Applications 23
- 4.1 Access to library and header files . . . 23
- 4.2 Data types . . . 24
  - 4.2.1 Floating point types . . . 24
  - 4.2.2 Integer types used for vector and matrix indices . . . 24
- 4.3 Header files . . . 25
- 4.4 A skeleton of the user's main program . . . 26
- 4.5 User-callable functions . . . 28
  - 4.5.1 IDA initialization and deallocation functions . . . 28
  - 4.5.2 IDA tolerance specification functions . . . 30
  - 4.5.3 Linear solver interface functions . . . 32
  - 4.5.4 Initial condition calculation function . . . 33
  - 4.5.5 Rootfinding initialization function . . . 34
  - 4.5.6 IDA solver function . . . 35
  - 4.5.7 Optional input functions . . . 36
    - 4.5.7.1 Main solver optional input functions . . . 36
    - 4.5.7.2 Direct linear solver interface optional input functions . . . 42
    - 4.5.7.3 Iterative linear solver interface optional input functions . . . 43
    - 4.5.7.4 Initial condition calculation optional input functions . . . 44
    - 4.5.7.5 Rootfinding optional input functions . . . 46
  - 4.5.8 Interpolated output function . . . 47

4.5.9 Optional output functions . . . 48
4.5.9.1 SUNDIALS version information . . . 48
4.5.9.2 Main solver optional output functions . . . 50
4.5.9.3 Initial condition calculation optional output functions . . . 55
4.5.9.4 Rootfinding optional output functions . . . 56
4.5.9.5 Direct linear solver interface optional output functions . . . 56
4.5.9.6 Iterative linear solver interface optional output functions . . . 58
4.5.10 IDA reinitialization function . . . 61
4.6 User-supplied functions . . . 62
4.6.1 Residual function . . . 62
4.6.2 Error message handler function . . . 62
4.6.3 Error weight function . . . 63
4.6.4 Rootfinding function . . . 63
4.6.5 Jacobian information (direct method Jacobian) . . . 64
4.6.6 Jacobian information (matrix-vector product) . . . 66
4.6.7 Jacobian information (matrix-vector setup) . . . 66
4.6.8 Preconditioning (linear system solution) . . . 67
4.6.9 Preconditioning (Jacobian data) . . . 68
4.7 A parallel band-block-diagonal preconditioner module . . . 68

5 FIDA, an Interface Module for FORTRAN Applications 75
5.1 Important note on portability . . . 75
5.2 Fortran Data Types . . . 75
5.3 FIDA routines . . . 76
5.4 Usage of the FIDA interface module . . . 77
5.5 FIDA optional input and output . . . 85
5.6 Usage of the FIDAROOT interface to rootfinding . . . 88
5.7 Usage of the FIDABBD interface to IDABBDPRE . . . 88

6 Description of the NVECTOR module 93
6.1 The NVECTOR_SERIAL implementation . . . 102
6.2 The NVECTOR_PARALLEL implementation . . . 104
6.3 The NVECTOR_OPENMP implementation . . . 107
6.4 The NVECTOR_PTHREADS implementation . . . 109
6.5 The NVECTOR_PARHYP implementation . . . 112
6.6 The NVECTOR_PETSC implementation . . . 113
6.7 The NVECTOR_CUDA implementation . . . 115
6.8 The NVECTOR_RAJA implementation . . . 117
6.9 NVECTOR Examples . . . 120
6.10 NVECTOR functions used by IDA . . . 123

7 Description of the SUNMatrix module 125
7.1 The SUNMatrix_Dense implementation . . . 128
7.2 The SUNMatrix_Band implementation . . . 131
7.3 The SUNMatrix_Sparse implementation . . . 135
7.4 SUNMatrix Examples . . . 141
7.5 SUNMatrix functions used by IDA . . . 142

8 Description of the SUNLinearSolver module 143
8.1 Description of the client-supplied SUNLinearSolver routines . . . 148
8.2 Compatibility of SUNLinearSolver modules . . . 149
8.3 The SUNLinearSolver_Dense implementation . . . 150
8.4 The SUNLinearSolver_Band implementation . . . 152
8.5 The SUNLinearSolver_LapackDense implementation . . . 153
8.6 The SUNLinearSolver_LapackBand implementation . . . 155

8.7 The SUNLinearSolver_KLU implementation . . . 156
8.8 The SUNLinearSolver_SuperLUMT implementation . . . 159
8.9 The SUNLinearSolver_SPGMR implementation . . . 162
8.10 The SUNLinearSolver_SPFGMR implementation . . . 165
8.11 The SUNLinearSolver_SPBCGS implementation . . . 169
8.12 The SUNLinearSolver_SPTFQMR implementation . . . 172
8.13 The SUNLinearSolver_PCG implementation . . . 175
8.14 SUNLinearSolver Examples . . . 178
8.15 SUNLinearSolver functions used by IDA . . . 179

A SUNDIALS Package Installation Procedure **181**
A.1 CMake-based installation . . . 182
A.1.1 Configuring, building, and installing on Unix-like systems . . . 182
A.1.2 Configuration options (Unix/Linux) . . . 184
A.1.3 Configuration examples . . . 190
A.1.4 Working with external Libraries . . . 191
A.1.5 Testing the build and installation . . . 193
A.2 Building and Running Examples . . . 193
A.3 Configuring, building, and installing on Windows . . . 193
A.4 Installed libraries and exported header files . . . 194

B IDA Constants **197**
B.1 IDA input constants . . . 197
B.2 IDA output constants . . . 197

Bibliography **201**

Index **203**

List of Tables

4.1 SUNDIALS linear solver interfaces and vector implementations that can be used for each. 29
4.2 Optional inputs for IDA, IDADLS, and IDASPILS 37
4.3 Optional outputs from IDA, IDADLS, and IDASPILS 49

5.1 Keys for setting FIDA optional inputs 86
5.2 Description of the FIDA optional output arrays `IOUT` and `ROUT` 87

6.1 Vector Identifications associated with vector kernels supplied with SUNDIALS. 95
6.2 Description of the NVECTOR operations 95
6.3 Description of the NVECTOR fused operations 98
6.4 Description of the NVECTOR vector array operations 99
6.5 List of vector functions usage by IDA code modules 123

7.1 Identifiers associated with matrix kernels supplied with SUNDIALS. 126
7.2 Description of the `SUNMatrix` operations 126
7.3 SUNDIALS matrix interfaces and vector implementations that can be used for each. . . 127
7.4 List of matrix functions usage by IDA code modules 142

8.1 Identifiers associated with linear solver kernels supplied with SUNDIALS. 145
8.2 Description of the `SUNLinearSolver` operations 145
8.3 SUNDIALS direct linear solvers and matrix implementations that can be used for each. 149
8.4 Description of the `SUNLinearSolver` error codes 150
8.5 List of linear solver function usage by IDA code modules 179

A.1 SUNDIALS libraries and header files 194

List of Figures

3.1 High-level diagram of the SUNDIALS suite 18
3.2 Organization of the SUNDIALS suite 19
3.3 Overall structure diagram of the IDA package 20

7.1 Diagram of the storage for a SUNMATRIX_BAND object 132
7.2 Diagram of the storage for a compressed-sparse-column matrix 138

A.1 Initial *ccmake* configuration screen 183
A.2 Changing the *instdir* 184

Chapter 1

Introduction

IDA is part of a software family called SUNDIALS: SUite of Nonlinear and DIfferential/ALgebraic equation Solvers [17]. This suite consists of CVODE, ARKODE, KINSOL, and IDA, and variants of these with sensitivity analysis capabilities, CVODES and IDAS.

IDA is a general purpose solver for the initial value problem (IVP) for systems of differential-algebraic equations (DAEs). The name IDA stands for Implicit Differential-Algebraic solver. IDA is based on DASPK [5, 6], but is written in ANSI-standard C rather than FORTRAN77. Its most notable features are that, (1) in the solution of the underlying nonlinear system at each time step, it offers a choice of Newton/direct methods and a choice of Inexact Newton/Krylov (iterative) methods; and (2) it is written in a *data-independent* manner in that it acts on generic vectors without any assumptions on the underlying organization of the data. Thus IDA shares significant modules previously written within CASC at LLNL to support the ordinary differential equation (ODE) solvers CVODE [18, 10] and PVODE [8, 9], and also the nonlinear system solver KINSOL [11].

At present, IDA may utilize a variety of Krylov methods provided in SUNDIALS that can be used in conjuction with Newton iteration: these include the GMRES (Generalized Minimal RESidual) [25], FGMRES (Flexible Generalized Minimum RESidual) [24], Bi-CGStab (Bi-Conjugate Gradient Stabilized) [26], TFQMR (Transpose-Free Quasi-Minimal Residual) [14], and PCG (Preconditioned Conjugate Gradient) [15] linear iterative methods. As Krylov methods, these require little matrix storage for solving the Newton equations as compared to direct methods. However, the algorithms allow for a user-supplied preconditioner matrix, and, for most problems, preconditioning is essential for an efficient solution.

For very large DAE systems, the Krylov methods are preferable over direct linear solver methods, and are often the only feasible choice. Among the Krylov methods in SUNDIALS, we recommend GMRES as the best overall choice. However, users are encouraged to compare all options, especially if encountering convergence failures with GMRES. Bi-CGFStab and TFQMR have an advantage in storage requirements, in that the number of workspace vectors they require is fixed, while that number for GMRES depends on the desired Krylov subspace size. FGMRES has an advantage in that it is designed to support preconditioners that vary between iterations (e.g. iterative methods). PCG exhibits rapid convergence and minimal workspace vectors, but only works for symmetric linear systems.

There are several motivations for choosing the C language for IDA. First, a general movement away from FORTRAN and toward C in scientific computing was apparent. Second, the pointer, structure, and dynamic memory allocation features in C are extremely useful in software of this complexity, with the great variety of method options offered. Finally, we prefer C over C++ for IDA because of the wider availability of C compilers, the potentially greater efficiency of C, and the greater ease of interfacing the solver to applications written in extended FORTRAN.

1.1 Changes from previous versions

Changes in v4.0.0-dev

Three fused vector operations and seven vector array operations have been added to the NVECTOR API. These *optional* operations are intended to increase data reuse in vector operations, reduce parallel communication on distributed memory systems, and lower the number of kernel launches on systems with accelerators. The new operations are `N_VLinearCombination`, `N_VScaleAddMulti`, `N_VDotProdMulti`, `N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray`, `N_VScaleVectorArray`, `N_VConstVectorArray`, `N_VWrmsNormVectorArray`, `N_VWrmsNormMaskVectorArray`, `N_VScaleAddMultiVectorArray`, and `N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray`. If any of these operations are defined as `NULL` in an NVECTOR implementation the NVECTOR interface will automatically call standard NVECTOR operations as necessary. Details on the new operations can be found in Chapter 6.

Several changes were made to the build system. If MPI is enabled and MPI compiler wrappers are not set, the build system will check if `CMAKE_<language>_COMPILER` can compile MPI programs before trying to locate and use an MPI installation. The native CMake FindMPI module is now used to locate an MPI installation. The options for setting MPI compiler wrappers and the executable for running MPI programs have been updated to align with those in native CMake FindMPI module. This included changing `MPI_MPICC` to `MPI_C_COMPILER`, `MPI_MPICXX` to `MPI_CXX_COMPILER`, combining `MPI_MPIF77` and `MPI_MPIF90` to `MPI_Fortran_COMPILER`, and changing `MPI_RUN_COMMAND` to `MPIEXEC`. When a Fortran name-mangling scheme is needed (e.g., `LAPACK_ENABLE` is `ON`) the build system will infer the scheme from the Fortran compiler. If a Fortran compiler is not available or the inferred or default scheme needs to be overridden, the advanced options `SUNDIALS_F77_FUNC_CASE` and `SUNDIALS_F77_FUNC_UNDERSCORES` can be used to manually set the name-mangling scheme and bypass trying to infer the scheme. Additionally, parts of the main CMakeLists.txt file were moved to new files in the `src` and `example` directories to make the CMake configuration file structure more modular.

Changes in v3.1.1

The changes in this minor release include the following:

- Fixed a potential memory leak in the SPGMR and SPFGMR linear solvers: if "Initialize" was called multiple times then the solver memory was reallocated (without being freed).
- Updated KLU SUNLINEARSOLVER module to use a `typedef` for the precision-specific solve function to be used (to avoid compiler warnings).
- Added missing typecasts for some `(void*)` pointers (again, to avoid compiler warnings).
- Bugfix in `sunmatrix_sparse.c` where we had used `int` instead of `sunindextype` in one location.
- Added missing `#include <stdio.h>` in NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX header files.
- Added missing prototype for `IDASpilsGetNumJTSetupEvals`.
- Fixed an indexing bug in the CUDA NVECTOR implementation of `N_VWrmsNormMask` and revised the RAJA NVECTOR implementation of `N_VWrmsNormMask` to work with mask arrays using values other than zero or one. Replaced `double` with `realtype` in the RAJA vector test functions.
- Fixed compilation issue with GCC 7.3.0 and Fortran programs that do not require a SUNMATRIX module (e.g., iterative linear solvers).

In addition to the changes above, minor corrections were also made to the example programs, build system, and user documentation.

Changes in v3.1.0

Added NVECTOR print functions that write vector data to a specified file (e.g., `N_VPrintFile_Serial`).

Added `make test` and `make test_install` options to the build system for testing SUNDIALS after building with `make` and installing with `make install` respectively.

Changes in v3.0.0

All interfaces to matrix structures and linear solvers have been reworked, and all example programs have been updated. The goal of the redesign of these interfaces was to provide more encapsulation and to ease interfacing of custom linear solvers and interoperability with linear solver libraries. Specific changes include:

- Added generic SUNMATRIX module with three provided implementations: dense, banded and sparse. These replicate previous SUNDIALS Dls and Sls matrix structures in a single object-oriented API.
- Added example problems demonstrating use of generic SUNMATRIX modules.
- Added generic `SUNLinearSolver` module with eleven provided implementations: SUNDIALS native dense, SUNDIALS native banded, LAPACK dense, LAPACK band, KLU, SuperLU_MT, SPGMR, SPBCGS, SPTFQMR, SPFGMR, and PCG. These replicate previous SUNDIALS generic linear solvers in a single object-oriented API.
- Added example problems demonstrating use of generic `SUNLinearSolver` modules.
- Expanded package-provided direct linear solver (Dls) interfaces and scaled, preconditioned, iterative linear solver (Spils) interfaces to utilize generic SUNMATRIX and `SUNLinearSolver` objects.
- Removed package-specific, linear solver-specific, solver modules (e.g. `CVDENSE`, `KINBAND`, `IDAKLU`, `ARKSPGMR`) since their functionality is entirely replicated by the generic Dls/Spils interfaces and `SUNLinearSolver/SUNMATRIX` modules. The exception is `CVDIAG`, a diagonal approximate Jacobian solver available to CVODE and CVODES.
- Converted all SUNDIALS example problems and files to utilize the new generic SUNMATRIX and `SUNLinearSolver` objects, along with updated Dls and Spils linear solver interfaces.
- Added Spils interface routines to ARKODE, CVODE, CVODES, IDA, and IDAS to allow specification of a user-provided "JTSetup" routine. This change supports users who wish to set up data structures for the user-provided Jacobian-times-vector ("JTimes") routine, and where the cost of one JTSetup setup per Newton iteration can be amortized between multiple JTimes calls.

Two additional NVECTOR implementations were added – one for CUDA and one for RAJA vectors. These vectors are supplied to provide very basic support for running on GPU architectures. Users are advised that these vectors both move all data to the GPU device upon construction, and speedup will only be realized if the user also conducts the right-hand-side function evaluation on the device. In addition, these vectors assume the problem fits on one GPU. Further information about RAJA, users are referred to the web site, https://software.llnl.gov/RAJA/. These additions are accompanied by additions to various interface functions and to user documentation.

All indices for data structures were updated to a new `sunindextype` that can be configured to be a 32- or 64-bit integer data index type. `sunindextype` is defined to be `int32_t` or `int64_t` when portable types are supported, otherwise it is defined as `int` or `long int`. The Fortran interfaces continue to use `long int` for indices, except for their sparse matrix interface that now uses the new `sunindextype`. This new flexible capability for index types includes interfaces to PETSc, hypre, SuperLU_MT, and KLU with either 32-bit or 64-bit capabilities depending how the user configures SUNDIALS.

To avoid potential namespace conflicts, the macros defining `booleantype` values `TRUE` and `FALSE` have been changed to `SUNTRUE` and `SUNFALSE` respectively.

Temporary vectors were removed from preconditioner setup and solve routines for all packages. It is assumed that all necessary data for user-provided preconditioner operations will be allocated and stored in user-provided data structures.

The file `include/sundials_fconfig.h` was added. This file contains SUNDIALS type information for use in Fortran programs.

The build system was expanded to support many of the xSDK-compliant keys. The xSDK is a movement in scientific software to provide a foundation for the rapid and efficient production of high-quality, sustainable extreme-scale scientific applications. More information can be found at, https://xsdk.info.

Added functions `SUNDIALSGetVersion` and `SUNDIALSGetVersionNumber` to get SUNDIALS release version information at runtime.

In addition, numerous changes were made to the build system. These include the addition of separate `BLAS_ENABLE` and `BLAS_LIBRARIES` CMake variables, additional error checking during CMake configuration, minor bug fixes, and renaming CMake options to enable/disable examples for greater clarity and an added option to enable/disable Fortran 77 examples. These changes included changing `EXAMPLES_ENABLE` to `EXAMPLES_ENABLE_C`, changing `CXX_ENABLE` to `EXAMPLES_ENABLE_CXX`, changing `F90_ENABLE` to `EXAMPLES_ENABLE_F90`, and adding an `EXAMPLES_ENABLE_F77` option.

A bug fix was done to add a missing prototype for `IDASetMaxBacksIC` in `ida.h`.

Corrections and additions were made to the examples, to installation-related files, and to the user documentation.

Changes in v2.9.0

Two additional NVECTOR implementations were added – one for Hypre (parallel) ParVector vectors, and one for PetSC vectors. These additions are accompanied by additions to various interface functions and to user documentation.

Each NVECTOR module now includes a function, `N_VGetVectorID`, that returns the NVECTOR module name.

An optional input function was added to set a maximum number of linesearch backtracks in the initial condition calculation. Also, corrections were made to three Fortran interface functions.

For each linear solver, the various solver performance counters are now initialized to 0 in both the solver specification function and in solver `linit` function. This ensures that these solver counters are initialized upon linear solver instantiation as well as at the beginning of the problem solution.

A memory leak was fixed in the banded preconditioner interface. In addition, updates were done to return integers from linear solver and preconditioner 'free' functions.

The Krylov linear solver Bi-CGstab was enhanced by removing a redundant dot product. Various additions and corrections were made to the interfaces to the sparse solvers KLU and SuperLU_MT, including support for CSR format when using KLU.

New examples were added for use of the openMP vector.

Minor corrections and additions were made to the IDA solver, to the Fortran interfaces, to the examples, to installation-related files, and to the user documentation.

Changes in v2.8.0

Two major additions were made to the linear system solvers that are available for use with the IDA solver. First, in the serial case, an interface to the sparse direct solver KLU was added. Second, an interface to SuperLU_MT, the multi-threaded version of SuperLU, was added as a thread-parallel sparse direct solver option, to be used with the serial version of the NVECTOR module. As part of these additions, a sparse matrix (CSC format) structure was added to IDA.

Otherwise, only relatively minor modifications were made to IDA:

In `IDARootfind`, a minor bug was corrected, where the input array `rootdir` was ignored, and a line was added to break out of root-search loop if the initial interval size is below the tolerance `ttol`.

In `IDALapackBand`, the line `smu = MIN(N-1,mu+ml)` was changed to `smu = mu + ml` to correct an illegal input error for `DGBTRF/DGBTRS`.

A minor bug was fixed regarding the testing of the input tstop on the first call to IDASolve.

In order to avoid possible name conflicts, the mathematical macro and function names MIN, MAX, SQR, RAbs, RSqrt, RExp, RPowerI, and RPowerR were changed to SUNMIN, SUNMAX, SUNSQR, SUNRabs, SUNRsqrt, SUNRexp, SRpowerI, and SUNRpowerR, respectively. These names occur in both the solver and in various example programs.

In the FIDA optional input routines FIDASETIIN, FIDASETRIN, and FIDASETVIN, the optional fourth argument key_length was removed, with hardcoded key string lengths passed to all strncmp tests.

In all FIDA examples, integer declarations were revised so that those which must match a C type long int are declared INTEGER*8, and a comment was added about the type match. All other integer declarations are just INTEGER. Corresponding minor corrections were made to the user guide.

Two new NVECTOR modules have been added for thread-parallel computing environments — one for openMP, denoted NVECTOR_OPENMP, and one for Pthreads, denoted NVECTOR_PTHREADS.

With this version of SUNDIALS, support and documentation of the Autotools mode of installation is being dropped, in favor of the CMake mode, which is considered more widely portable.

Changes in v2.7.0

One significant design change was made with this release: The problem size and its relatives, bandwidth parameters, related internal indices, pivot arrays, and the optional output lsflag have all been changed from type int to type long int, except for the problem size and bandwidths in user calls to routines specifying BLAS/LAPACK routines for the dense/band linear solvers. The function NewIntArray is replaced by a pair NewIntArray/NewLintArray, for int and long int arrays, respectively.

A large number of minor errors have been fixed. Among these are the following: After the solver memory is created, it is set to zero before being filled. To be consistent with IDAS, IDA uses the function IDAGetDky for optional output retrieval. In each linear solver interface function, the linear solver memory is freed on an error return, and the **Free function now includes a line setting to NULL the main memory pointer to the linear solver memory. A memory leak was fixed in two of the IDASp***Free functions. In the rootfinding functions IDARcheck1/IDARcheck2, when an exact zero is found, the array glo of g values at the left endpoint is adjusted, instead of shifting the t location tlo slightly. In the installation files, we modified the treatment of the macro SUNDIALS_USE_GENERIC_MATH, so that the parameter GENERIC_MATH_LIB is either defined (with no value) or not defined.

Changes in v2.6.0

Two new features were added in this release: (a) a new linear solver module, based on Blas and Lapack for both dense and banded matrices, and (b) option to specify which direction of zero-crossing is to be monitored while performing rootfinding.

The user interface has been further refined. Some of the API changes involve: (a) a reorganization of all linear solver modules into two families (besides the already present family of scaled preconditioned iterative linear solvers, the direct solvers, including the new Lapack-based ones, were also organized into a *direct* family); (b) maintaining a single pointer to user data, optionally specified through a Set-type function; (c) a general streamlining of the band-block-diagonal preconditioner module distributed with the solver.

Changes in v2.5.0

The main changes in this release involve a rearrangement of the entire SUNDIALS source tree (see §3.1). At the user interface level, the main impact is in the mechanism of including SUNDIALS header files which must now include the relative path (e.g. #include <cvode/cvode.h>). Additional changes were made to the build system: all exported header files are now installed in separate subdirectories of the installation *include* directory.

A bug was fixed in the internal difference-quotient dense and banded Jacobian approximations, related to the estimation of the perturbation (which could have led to a failure of the linear solver when zero components with sufficiently small absolute tolerances were present).

The user interface to the consistent initial conditions calculations was modified. The `IDACalcIC` arguments `t0`, `yy0`, and `yp0` were removed and a new function, `IDAGetconsistentIC` is provided (see §4.5.4 and §4.5.9.3 for details).

The functions in the generic dense linear solver (`sundials_dense` and `sundials_smalldense`) were modified to work for rectangular $m \times n$ matrices ($m \leq n$), while the factorization and solution functions were renamed to `DenseGETRF`/`denGETRF` and `DenseGETRS`/`denGETRS`, respectively. The factorization and solution functions in the generic band linear solver were renamed `BandGBTRF` and `BandGBTRS`, respectively.

Changes in v2.4.0

FIDA, a FORTRAN-C interface module, was added (for details see Chapter 5).

IDASPBCG and IDASPTFQMR modules have been added to interface with the Scaled Preconditioned Bi-CGstab (SPBCGS) and Scaled Preconditioned Transpose-Free Quasi-Minimal Residual (SPTFQMR) linear solver modules, respectively (for details see Chapter 4). At the same time, function type names for Scaled Preconditioned Iterative Linear Solvers were added for the user-supplied Jacobian-times-vector and preconditioner setup and solve functions.

The rootfinding feature was added, whereby the roots of a set of given functions may be computed during the integration of the DAE system.

A user-callable routine was added to access the estimated local error vector.

The deallocation functions now take as arguments the address of the respective memory block pointer.

To reduce the possibility of conflicts, the names of all header files have been changed by adding unique prefixes (`ida_` and `sundials_`). When using the default installation procedure, the header files are exported under various subdirectories of the target `include` directory. For more details see Appendix A.

Changes in v2.3.0

The user interface has been further refined. Several functions used for setting optional inputs were combined into a single one. An optional user-supplied routine for setting the error weight vector was added. Additionally, to resolve potential variable scope issues, all SUNDIALS solvers release user data right after its use. The build systems has been further improved to make it more robust.

Changes in v2.2.2

Minor corrections and improvements were made to the build system. A new chapter in the User Guide was added — with constants that appear in the user interface.

Changes in v2.2.1

The changes in this minor SUNDIALS release affect only the build system.

Changes in v2.2.0

The major changes from the previous version involve a redesign of the user interface across the entire SUNDIALS suite. We have eliminated the mechanism of providing optional inputs and extracting optional statistics from the solver through the `iopt` and `ropt` arrays. Instead, IDA now provides a set of routines (with prefix `IDASet`) to change the default values for various quantities controlling the solver and a set of extraction routines (with prefix `IDAGet`) to extract statistics after return from the main solver routine. Similarly, each linear solver module provides its own set of `Set`- and `Get`-type routines. For more details see §4.5.7 and §4.5.9.

Additionally, the interfaces to several user-supplied routines (such as those providing Jacobians and preconditioner information) were simplified by reducing the number of arguments. The same information that was previously accessible through such arguments can now be obtained through `Get`-type functions.

Installation of IDA (and all of SUNDIALS) has been completely redesigned and is now based on configure scripts.

1.2 Reading this User Guide

The structure of this document is as follows:

- In Chapter 2, we give short descriptions of the numerical methods implemented by IDA for the solution of initial value problems for systems of DAEs, along with short descriptions of preconditioning (§2.2) and rootfinding (§2.3).
- The following chapter describes the structure of the SUNDIALS suite of solvers (§3.1) and the software organization of the IDA solver (§3.2).
- Chapter 4 is the main usage document for IDA for C applications. It includes a complete description of the user interface for the integration of DAE initial value problems.
- In Chapter 5, we describe FIDA, an interface module for the use of IDA with FORTRAN applications.
- Chapter 6 gives a brief overview of the generic NVECTOR module shared among the various components of SUNDIALS, as well as details on the NVECTOR implementations provided with SUNDIALS.
- Chapter 7 gives a brief overview of the generic SUNMATRIX module shared among the various components of SUNDIALS, and details on the SUNMATRIX implementations provided with SUNDIALS: a dense implementation (§7.1), a banded implementation (§7.2) and a sparse implementation (§7.3).
- Chapter 8 gives a brief overview of the generic SUNLINSOL module shared among the various components of SUNDIALS. This chapter contains details on the SUNLINSOL implementations provided with SUNDIALS. The chapter also contains details on the SUNLINSOL implementations provided with SUNDIALS that interface with external linear solver libraries.
- Finally, in the appendices, we provide detailed instructions for the installation of IDA, within the structure of SUNDIALS (Appendix A), as well as a list of all the constants used for input to and output from IDA functions (Appendix B).

Finally, the reader should be aware of the following notational conventions in this user guide: program listings and identifiers (such as `IDAInit`) within textual explanations appear in typewriter type style; fields in C structures (such as *content*) appear in italics; and packages or modules, such as IDADLS, are written in all capitals. Usage and installation instructions that constitute important warnings are marked with a triangular symbol in the margin.

Acknowledgments. We wish to acknowledge the contributions to previous versions of the IDA code and user guide of Allan G. Taylor.

1.3 SUNDIALS Release License

The SUNDIALS packages are released open source, under a BSD license. The only requirements of the BSD license are preservation of copyright and a standard disclaimer of liability. Our Copyright notice is below along with the license.

PLEASE NOTE If you are using SUNDIALS with any third party libraries linked in (e.g., LaPACK, KLU, SuperLU_MT, PETSc, or *hypre*), be sure to review the respective license of the package as that license may have more restrictive terms than the SUNDIALS license. For example, if someone builds SUNDIALS with a statically linked KLU, the build is subject to terms of the LGPL license (which is what KLU is released with) and *not* the SUNDIALS BSD license anymore.

1.3.1 Copyright Notices

All SUNDIALS packages except ARKode are subject to the following Copyright notice.

1.3.1.1 SUNDIALS Copyright

1.3.1.2 ARKode Copyright

1.3.2 BSD License

Additional BSD Notice

1. This notice is required to be provided under our contract with the U.S. Department of Energy (DOE). This work was produced at Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory under Contract No. DE-AC52-07NA27344 with the DOE.

2. Neither the United States Government nor Lawrence Livermore National Security, LLC nor any of their employees, makes any warranty, express or implied, or assumes any liability or responsibility for the accuracy, completeness, or usefulness of any information, apparatus, product, or process disclosed, or represents that its use would not infringe privately-owned rights.

3. Also, reference herein to any specific commercial products, process, or services by trade name, trademark, manufacturer or otherwise does not necessarily constitute or imply its endorsement, recommendation, or favoring by the United States Government or Lawrence Livermore National Security, LLC. The views and opinions of authors expressed herein do not necessarily state or reflect those of the United States Government or Lawrence Livermore National Security, LLC, and shall not be used for advertising or product endorsement purposes.

Chapter 2

Mathematical Considerations

IDA solves the initial-value problem (IVP) for a DAE system of the general form

$$F(t, y, \dot{y}) = 0\,, \quad y(t_0) = y_0\,,\ \dot{y}(t_0) = \dot{y}_0\,, \tag{2.1}$$

where y, $\dot{y}$, and F are vectors in $\mathbf{R}^N$, t is the independent variable, $\dot{y} = dy/dt$, and initial values y_0, $\dot{y}_0$ are given. (Often t is time, but it certainly need not be.)

2.1 IVP solution

Prior to integrating a DAE initial-value problem, an important requirement is that the pair of vectors y_0 and $\dot{y}_0$ are both initialized to satisfy the DAE residual $F(t_0, y_0, \dot{y}_0) = 0$. For a class of problems that includes so-called semi-explicit index-one systems, IDA provides a routine that computes consistent initial conditions from a user's initial guess [6]. For this, the user must identify sub-vectors of y (not necessarily contiguous), denoted y_d and y_a, which are its differential and algebraic parts, respectively, such that F depends on $\dot{y}_d$ but not on any components of $\dot{y}_a$. The assumption that the system is "index one" means that for a given t and y_d, the system $F(t, y, \dot{y}) = 0$ defines y_a uniquely. In this case, a solver within IDA computes y_a and $\dot{y}_d$ at $t = t_0$, given y_d and an initial guess for y_a. A second available option with this solver also computes all of $y(t_0)$ given $\dot{y}(t_0)$; this is intended mainly for quasi-steady-state problems, where $\dot{y}(t_0) = 0$ is given. In both cases, IDA solves the system $F(t_0, y_0, \dot{y}_0) = 0$ for the unknown components of y_0 and $\dot{y}_0$, using Newton iteration augmented with a line search global strategy. In doing this, it makes use of the existing machinery that is to be used for solving the linear systems during the integration, in combination with certain tricks involving the step size (which is set artificially for this calculation). For problems that do not fall into either of these categories, the user is responsible for passing consistent values, or risks failure in the numerical integration.

The integration method used in IDA is the variable-order, variable-coefficient BDF (Backward Differentiation Formula), in fixed-leading-coefficient form [3]. The method order ranges from 1 to 5, with the BDF of order q given by the multistep formula

$$\sum_{i=0}^{q} \alpha_{n,i} y_{n-i} = h_n \dot{y}_n\,, \tag{2.2}$$

where y_n and $\dot{y}_n$ are the computed approximations to $y(t_n)$ and $\dot{y}(t_n)$, respectively, and the step size is $h_n = t_n - t_{n-1}$. The coefficients $\alpha_{n,i}$ are uniquely determined by the order q, and the history of the step sizes. The application of the BDF (2.2) to the DAE system (2.1) results in a nonlinear algebraic system to be solved at each step:

$$G(y_n) \equiv F\left(t_n,\, y_n,\, h_n^{-1} \sum_{i=0}^{q} \alpha_{n,i} y_{n-i}\right) = 0\,. \tag{2.3}$$

Regardless of the method options, the solution of the nonlinear system (2.3) is accomplished with some form of Newton iteration. This leads to a linear system for each Newton correction, of the form

$$J[y_{n(m+1)} - y_{n(m)}] = -G(y_{n(m)}) \,, \tag{2.4}$$

where $y_{n(m)}$ is the m-th approximation to y_n. Here J is some approximation to the system Jacobian

$$J = \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial F}{\partial y} + \alpha \frac{\partial F}{\partial \dot{y}} \,, \tag{2.5}$$

where $\alpha = \alpha_{n,0}/h_n$. The scalar α changes whenever the step size or method order changes.

For the solution of the linear systems within the Newton corrections, IDA provides several choices, including the option of a user-supplied linear solver module. The linear solver modules distributed with SUNDIALS are organized in two families, a *direct* family comprising direct linear solvers for dense, banded, or sparse matrices and a *spils* family comprising scaled preconditioned iterative (Krylov) linear solvers. The methods offered through these modules are as follows:

- dense direct solvers, using either an internal implementation or a Blas/Lapack implementation (serial or threaded vector modules only),
- band direct solvers, using either an internal implementation or a Blas/Lapack implementation (serial or threaded vector modules only),
- sparse direct solver interfaces, using either the KLU sparse solver library [12, 1], or the thread-enabled SuperLU_MT sparse solver library [22, 13, 2] (serial or threaded vector modules only) [Note that users will need to download and install the KLU or SUPERLUMT packages independent of IDA],
- SPGMR, a scaled preconditioned GMRES (Generalized Minimal Residual method) solver without restarts,
- SPFGMR, a scaled preconditioned FGMRES (Flexible Generalized Minimal Residual method) solver,
- SPBCGS, a scaled preconditioned Bi-CGStab (Bi-Conjugate Gradient Stable method) solver,
- SPTFQMR, a scaled preconditioned TFQMR (Transpose-Free Quasi-Minimal Residual method) solver, or
- PCG, a scaled preconditioned CG (Conjugate Gradient method) solver.

For large stiff systems, where direct methods are not feasible, the combination of a BDF integrator and any of the preconditioned Krylov methods (SPGMR, SPBCGS, or SPTFQMR) yields a powerful tool because it combines established methods for stiff integration, nonlinear iteration, and Krylov (linear) iteration with a problem-specific treatment of the dominant source of stiffness, in the form of the user-supplied preconditioner matrix [4]. For the *spils* linear solvers, preconditioning is allowed only on the left (see §2.2). Note that the dense, band, and sparse direct linear solvers can only be used with serial and threaded vector representations.

In the process of controlling errors at various levels, IDA uses a weighted root-mean-square norm, denoted $\|\cdot\|_{\mathrm{WRMS}}$, for all error-like quantities. The multiplicative weights used are based on the current solution and on the relative and absolute tolerances input by the user, namely

$$W_i = 1/[\mathrm{RTOL} \cdot |y_i| + \mathrm{ATOL}_i] \,. \tag{2.6}$$

Because $1/W_i$ represents a tolerance in the component y_i, a vector whose norm is 1 is regarded as "small." For brevity, we will usually drop the subscript WRMS on norms in what follows.

In the case of a direct linear solver (dense, band, or sparse), the nonlinear iteration (2.4) is a Modified Newton iteration, in that the Jacobian J is fixed (and usually out of date), with a coefficient $\bar{\alpha}$ in place of α in J. When using one of the Krylov methods SPGMR, SPBCGS, or SPTFQMR as the linear

solver, the iteration is an Inexact Newton iteration, using the current Jacobian (through matrix-free products Jv), in which the linear residual $J\Delta y + G$ is nonzero but controlled. The Jacobian matrix J (direct cases) or preconditioner matrix P (SPGMR/SPBCGS/SPTFQMR case) is updated when:

- starting the problem,
- the value $\bar{\alpha}$ at the last update is such that $\alpha/\bar{\alpha} < 3/5$ or $\alpha/\bar{\alpha} > 5/3$, or
- a non-fatal convergence failure occurred with an out-of-date J or P.

The above strategy balances the high cost of frequent matrix evaluations and preprocessing with the slow convergence due to infrequent updates. To reduce storage costs on an update, Jacobian information is always reevaluated from scratch.

We note that with the sparse direct solvers, the Jacobian *must* be supplied by a user routine in compressed-sparse-column format, as this is not approximated automatically within IDA.

The stopping test for the Newton iteration in IDA ensures that the iteration error $y_n - y_{n(m)}$ is small relative to y itself. For this, we estimate the linear convergence rate at all iterations $m > 1$ as

$$R = \left(\frac{\delta_m}{\delta_1}\right)^{\frac{1}{m-1}} ,$$

where the $\delta_m = y_{n(m)} - y_{n(m-1)}$ is the correction at iteration $m = 1, 2, \ldots$. The Newton iteration is halted if $R > 0.9$. The convergence test at the m-th iteration is then

$$S\|\delta_m\| < 0.33 , \tag{2.7}$$

where $S = R/(R-1)$ whenever $m > 1$ and $R \le 0.9$. The user has the option of changing the constant in the convergence test from its default value of 0.33. The quantity S is set to $S = 20$ initially and whenever J or P is updated, and it is reset to $S = 100$ on a step with $\alpha \ne \bar{\alpha}$. Note that at $m = 1$, the convergence test (2.7) uses an old value for S. Therefore, at the first Newton iteration, we make an additional test and stop the iteration if $\|\delta_1\| < 0.33 \cdot 10^{-4}$ (since such a δ_1 is probably just noise and therefore not appropriate for use in evaluating R). We allow only a small number (default value 4) of Newton iterations. If convergence fails with J or P current, we are forced to reduce the step size h_n, and we replace h_n by $h_n/4$. The integration is halted after a preset number (default value 10) of convergence failures. Both the maximum allowable Newton iterations and the maximum nonlinear convergence failures can be changed by the user from their default values.

When SPGMR, SPBCGS, or SPTFQMR is used to solve the linear system, to minimize the effect of linear iteration errors on the nonlinear and local integration error controls, we require the preconditioned linear residual to be small relative to the allowed error in the Newton iteration, i.e., $\|P^{-1}(Jx + G)\| < 0.05 \cdot 0.33$. The safety factor 0.05 can be changed by the user.

In the direct linear solver cases, the Jacobian J defined in (2.5) can be either supplied by the user or have IDA compute one internally by difference quotients. In the latter case, we use the approximation

$$\begin{aligned} J_{ij} &= [F_i(t, y + \sigma_j e_j, \dot{y} + \alpha\sigma_j e_j) - F_i(t, y, \dot{y})]/\sigma_j , \text{ with} \\ \sigma_j &= \sqrt{U} \max\{|y_j|, |h\dot{y}_j|, 1/W_j\} \operatorname{sign}(h\dot{y}_j) , \end{aligned}$$

where U is the unit roundoff, h is the current step size, and W_j is the error weight for the component y_j defined by (2.6). In the SPGMR/SPBCGS/SPTFQMR case, if a routine for Jv is not supplied, such products are approximated by

$$Jv = [F(t, y + \sigma v, \dot{y} + \alpha\sigma v) - F(t, y, \dot{y})]/\sigma ,$$

where the increment σ is $1/\|v\|$. As an option, the user can specify a constant factor that is inserted into this expression for σ.

During the course of integrating the system, IDA computes an estimate of the local truncation error, LTE, at the n-th time step, and requires this to satisfy the inequality

$$\|\text{LTE}\|_{\text{WRMS}} \le 1 .$$

Asymptotically, LTE varies as h^{q+1} at step size h and order q, as does the predictor-corrector difference $\Delta_n \equiv y_n - y_{n(0)}$. Thus there is a constant C such that

$$\text{LTE} = C\Delta_n + O(h^{q+2})\,,$$

and so the norm of LTE is estimated as $|C| \cdot \|\Delta_n\|$. In addition, IDA requires that the error in the associated polynomial interpolant over the current step be bounded by 1 in norm. The leading term of the norm of this error is bounded by $\bar{C}\|\Delta_n\|$ for another constant $\bar{C}$. Thus the local error test in IDA is

$$\max\{|C|, \bar{C}\}\|\Delta_n\| \le 1\,. \tag{2.8}$$

A user option is available by which the algebraic components of the error vector are omitted from the test (2.8), if these have been so identified.

In IDA, the local error test is tightly coupled with the logic for selecting the step size and order. First, there is an initial phase that is treated specially; for the first few steps, the step size is doubled and the order raised (from its initial value of 1) on every step, until (a) the local error test (2.8) fails, (b) the order is reduced (by the rules given below), or (c) the order reaches 5 (the maximum). For step and order selection on the general step, IDA uses a different set of local error estimates, based on the asymptotic behavior of the local error in the case of fixed step sizes. At each of the orders q' equal to q, $q-1$ (if $q > 1$), $q-2$ (if $q > 2$), or $q+1$ (if $q < 5$), there are constants $C(q')$ such that the norm of the local truncation error at order q' satisfies

$$\text{LTE}(q') = C(q')\|\phi(q'+1)\| + O(h^{q'+2})\,,$$

where $\phi(k)$ is a modified divided difference of order k that is retained by IDA (and behaves asymptotically as h^k). Thus the local truncation errors are estimated as $\text{ELTE}(q') = C(q')\|\phi(q'+1)\|$ to select step sizes. But the choice of order in IDA is based on the requirement that the scaled derivative norms, $\|h^k y^{(k)}\|$, are monotonically decreasing with k, for k near q. These norms are again estimated using the $\phi(k)$, and in fact

$$\|h^{q'+1}y^{(q'+1)}\| \approx T(q') \equiv (q'+1)\text{ELTE}(q')\,.$$

The step/order selection begins with a test for monotonicity that is made even *before* the local error test is performed. Namely, the order is reset to $q' = q-1$ if (a) $q = 2$ and $T(1) \le T(2)/2$, or (b) $q > 2$ and $\max\{T(q-1), T(q-2)\} \le T(q)$; otherwise $q' = q$. Next the local error test (2.8) is performed, and if it fails, the step is redone at order $q \leftarrow q'$ and a new step size h'. The latter is based on the h^{q+1} asymptotic behavior of $\text{ELTE}(q)$, and, with safety factors, is given by

$$\eta = h'/h = 0.9/[2\,\text{ELTE}(q)]^{1/(q+1)}\,.$$

The value of η is adjusted so that $0.25 \le \eta \le 0.9$ before setting $h \leftarrow h' = \eta h$. If the local error test fails a second time, IDA uses $\eta = 0.25$, and on the third and subsequent failures it uses $q = 1$ and $\eta = 0.25$. After 10 failures, IDA returns with a give-up message.

As soon as the local error test has passed, the step and order for the next step may be adjusted. No such change is made if $q' = q-1$ from the prior test, if $q = 5$, or if q was increased on the previous step. Otherwise, if the last $q+1$ steps were taken at a constant order $q < 5$ and a constant step size, IDA considers raising the order to $q+1$. The logic is as follows: (a) If $q = 1$, then reset $q = 2$ if $T(2) < T(1)/2$. (b) If $q > 1$ then

- reset $q \leftarrow q-1$ if $T(q-1) \le \min\{T(q), T(q+1)\}$;
- else reset $q \leftarrow q+1$ if $T(q+1) < T(q)$;
- leave q unchanged otherwise [then $T(q-1) > T(q) \le T(q+1)$].

In any case, the new step size h' is set much as before:

$$\eta = h'/h = 1/[2\,\text{ELTE}(q)]^{1/(q+1)}\,.$$

The value of η is adjusted such that (a) if $\eta > 2$, η is reset to 2; (b) if $\eta \leq 1$, η is restricted to $0.5 \leq \eta \leq 0.9$; and (c) if $1 < \eta < 2$ we use $\eta = 1$. Finally h is reset to $h' = \eta h$. Thus we do not increase the step size unless it can be doubled. See [3] for details.

IDA permits the user to impose optional inequality constraints on individual components of the solution vector y. Any of the following four constraints can be imposed: $y_i > 0$, $y_i < 0$, $y_i \geq 0$, or $y_i \leq 0$. The constraint satisfaction is tested after a successful nonlinear system solution. If any constraint fails, we declare a convergence failure of the Newton iteration and reduce the step size. Rather than cutting the step size by some arbitrary factor, IDA estimates a new step size h' using a linear approximation of the components in y that failed the constraint test (including a safety factor of 0.9 to cover the strict inequality case). These additional constraints are also imposed during the calculation of consistent initial conditions.

Normally, IDA takes steps until a user-defined output value $t = t_{\text{out}}$ is overtaken, and then computes $y(t_{\text{out}})$ by interpolation. However, a "one step" mode option is available, where control returns to the calling program after each step. There are also options to force IDA not to integrate past a given stopping point $t = t_{\text{stop}}$.

2.2 Preconditioning

When using a Newton method to solve the nonlinear system (2.4), IDA makes repeated use of a linear solver to solve linear systems of the form $J\Delta y = -G$. If this linear system solve is done with one of the scaled preconditioned iterative linear solvers, these solvers are rarely successful if used without preconditioning; it is generally necessary to precondition the system in order to obtain acceptable efficiency. A system $Ax = b$ can be preconditioned on the left, on the right, or on both sides. The Krylov method is then applied to a system with the matrix $P^{-1}A$, or AP^{-1}, or $P_L^{-1}AP_R^{-1}$, instead of A. However, within IDA, preconditioning is allowed *only* on the left, so that the iterative method is applied to systems $(P^{-1}J)\Delta y = -P^{-1}G$. Left preconditioning is required to make the norm of the linear residual in the Newton iteration meaningful; in general, $\|J\Delta y + G\|$ is meaningless, since the weights used in the WRMS-norm correspond to y.

In order to improve the convergence of the Krylov iteration, the preconditioner matrix P should in some sense approximate the system matrix A. Yet at the same time, in order to be cost-effective, the matrix P should be reasonably efficient to evaluate and solve. Finding a good point in this tradeoff between rapid convergence and low cost can be very difficult. Good choices are often problem-dependent (for example, see [4] for an extensive study of preconditioners for reaction-transport systems).

Typical preconditioners used with IDA are based on approximations to the Newton iteration matrix of the systems involved; in other words, $P \approx \frac{\partial F}{\partial y} + \alpha \frac{\partial F}{\partial \dot{y}}$, where α is a scalar inversely proportional to the integration step size h. Because the Krylov iteration occurs within a Newton iteration and further also within a time integration, and since each of these iterations has its own test for convergence, the preconditioner may use a very crude approximation, as long as it captures the dominant numerical feature(s) of the system. We have found that the combination of a preconditioner with the Newton-Krylov iteration, using even a fairly poor approximation to the Jacobian, can be surprisingly superior to using the same matrix without Krylov acceleration (i.e., a modified Newton iteration), as well as to using the Newton-Krylov method with no preconditioning.

2.3 Rootfinding

The IDA solver has been augmented to include a rootfinding feature. This means that, while integrating the Initial Value Problem (2.1), IDA can also find the roots of a set of user-defined functions $g_i(t, y, \dot{y})$ that depend on t, the solution vector $y = y(t)$, and its $t-$derivative $\dot{y}(t)$. The number of these root functions is arbitrary, and if more than one g_i is found to have a root in any given interval, the various root locations are found and reported in the order that they occur on the t axis, in the direction of integration.

Generally, this rootfinding feature finds only roots of odd multiplicity, corresponding to changes in sign of $g_i(t, y(t), \dot{y}(t))$, denoted $g_i(t)$ for short. If a user root function has a root of even multiplicity (no

sign change), it will probably be missed by IDA. If such a root is desired, the user should reformulate the root function so that it changes sign at the desired root.

The basic scheme used is to check for sign changes of any $g_i(t)$ over each time step taken, and then (when a sign change is found) to home in on the root (or roots) with a modified secant method [16]. In addition, each time g is computed, IDA checks to see if $g_i(t) = 0$ exactly, and if so it reports this as a root. However, if an exact zero of any g_i is found at a point t, IDA computes g at $t + \delta$ for a small increment δ, slightly further in the direction of integration, and if any $g_i(t + \delta) = 0$ also, IDA stops and reports an error. This way, each time IDA takes a time step, it is guaranteed that the values of all g_i are nonzero at some past value of t, beyond which a search for roots is to be done.

At any given time in the course of the time-stepping, after suitable checking and adjusting has been done, IDA has an interval $(t_{lo}, t_{hi}]$ in which roots of the $g_i(t)$ are to be sought, such that t_{hi} is further ahead in the direction of integration, and all $g_i(t_{lo}) \neq 0$. The endpoint t_{hi} is either t_n, the end of the time step last taken, or the next requested output time t_{out} if this comes sooner. The endpoint t_{lo} is either t_{n-1}, or the last output time t_{out} (if this occurred within the last step), or the last root location (if a root was just located within this step), possibly adjusted slightly toward t_n if an exact zero was found. The algorithm checks g at t_{hi} for zeros and for sign changes in (t_{lo}, t_{hi}). If no sign changes are found, then either a root is reported (if some $g_i(t_{hi}) = 0$) or we proceed to the next time interval (starting at t_{hi}). If one or more sign changes were found, then a loop is entered to locate the root to within a rather tight tolerance, given by

$$\tau = 100 * U * (|t_n| + |h|) \quad (U = \text{unit roundoff}) \ .$$

Whenever sign changes are seen in two or more root functions, the one deemed most likely to have its root occur first is the one with the largest value of $|g_i(t_{hi})|/|g_i(t_{hi}) - g_i(t_{lo})|$, corresponding to the closest to t_{lo} of the secant method values. At each pass through the loop, a new value t_{mid} is set, strictly within the search interval, and the values of $g_i(t_{mid})$ are checked. Then either t_{lo} or t_{hi} is reset to t_{mid} according to which subinterval is found to have the sign change. If there is none in (t_{lo}, t_{mid}) but some $g_i(t_{mid}) = 0$, then that root is reported. The loop continues until $|t_{hi} - t_{lo}| < \tau$, and then the reported root location is t_{hi}.

In the loop to locate the root of $g_i(t)$, the formula for t_{mid} is

$$t_{mid} = t_{hi} - (t_{hi} - t_{lo})g_i(t_{hi})/[g_i(t_{hi}) - \alpha g_i(t_{lo})] \ ,$$

where α a weight parameter. On the first two passes through the loop, α is set to 1, making t_{mid} the secant method value. Thereafter, α is reset according to the side of the subinterval (low vs high, i.e. toward t_{lo} vs toward t_{hi}) in which the sign change was found in the previous two passes. If the two sides were opposite, α is set to 1. If the two sides were the same, α is halved (if on the low side) or doubled (if on the high side). The value of t_{mid} is closer to t_{lo} when $\alpha < 1$ and closer to t_{hi} when $\alpha > 1$. If the above value of t_{mid} is within $\tau/2$ of t_{lo} or t_{hi}, it is adjusted inward, such that its fractional distance from the endpoint (relative to the interval size) is between .1 and .5 (.5 being the midpoint), and the actual distance from the endpoint is at least $\tau/2$.

Chapter 3

Code Organization

3.1 SUNDIALS organization

The family of solvers referred to as SUNDIALS consists of the solvers CVODE and ARKODE (for ODE systems), KINSOL (for nonlinear algebraic systems), and IDA (for differential-algebraic systems). In addition, SUNDIALS also includes variants of CVODE and IDA with sensitivity analysis capabilities (using either forward or adjoint methods), called CVODES and IDAS, respectively.

The various solvers of this family share many subordinate modules. For this reason, it is organized as a family, with a directory structure that exploits that sharing (see Figs. 3.1 and 3.2). The following is a list of the solver packages presently available, and the basic functionality of each:

- CVODE, a solver for stiff and nonstiff ODE systems $dy/dt = f(t, y)$ based on Adams and BDF methods;
- CVODES, a solver for stiff and nonstiff ODE systems with sensitivity analysis capabilities;
- ARKODE, a solver for ODE systems $M dy/dt = f_E(t, y) + f_I(t, y)$ based on additive Runge-Kutta methods;
- IDA, a solver for differential-algebraic systems $F(t, y, \dot{y}) = 0$ based on BDF methods;
- IDAS, a solver for differential-algebraic systems with sensitivity analysis capabilities;
- KINSOL, a solver for nonlinear algebraic systems $F(u) = 0$.

3.2 IDA organization

The IDA package is written in the ANSI C language. The following summarizes the basic structure of the package, although knowledge of this structure is not necessary for its use.

The overall organization of the IDA package is shown in Figure 3.3. The central integration module, implemented in the files `ida.h`, `ida_impl.h`, and `ida.c`, deals with the evaluation of integration coefficients, the Newton iteration process, estimation of local error, selection of stepsize and order, and interpolation to user output points, among other issues. Although this module contains logic for the basic Newton iteration algorithm, it has no knowledge of the method being used to solve the linear systems that arise. For any given user problem, one of the linear system solver interfaces is specified, and is then invoked as needed during the integration.

At present, the package includes two linear solver interfaces. The *direct* linear solver interface, IDADLS, supports SUNLINSOL implementations with type `SUNLINSOL_DIRECT` (see Chapter 8). These linear solvers utilize direct methods for the solution of linear systems stored using one of the SUNDIALS generic SUNMATRIX implementations (dense, banded or sparse; see Chapter 7). The *spils* linear solver interface, IDASPILS, supports SUNLINSOL implementations with type `SUNLINSOL_ITERATIVE` (see Chapter 8). These linear solvers utilize scaled preconditioned iterative methods. It is assumed

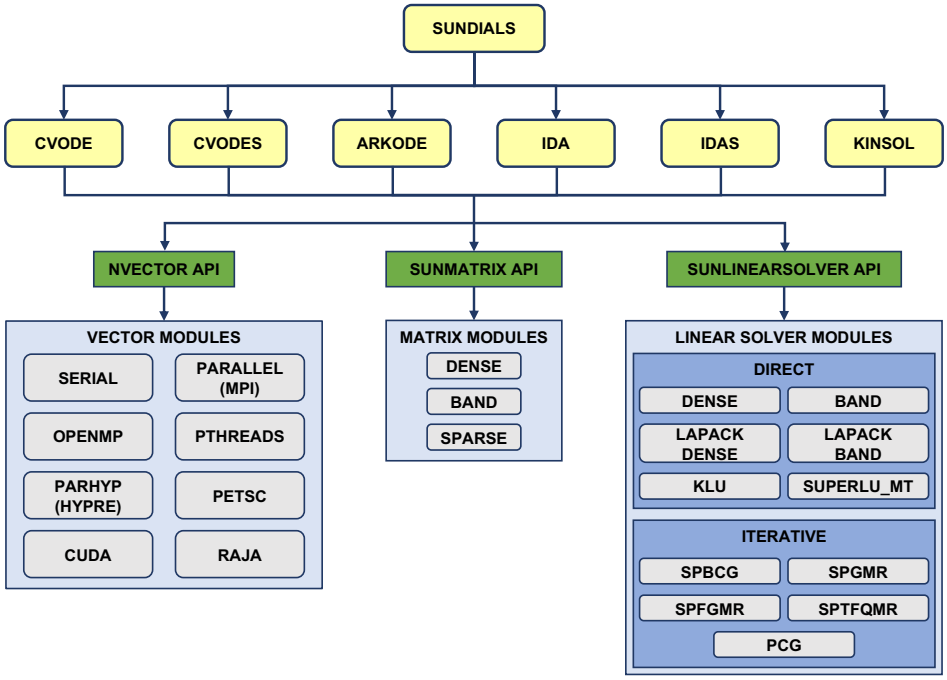


Figure 3.1: High-level diagram of the SUNDIALS suite

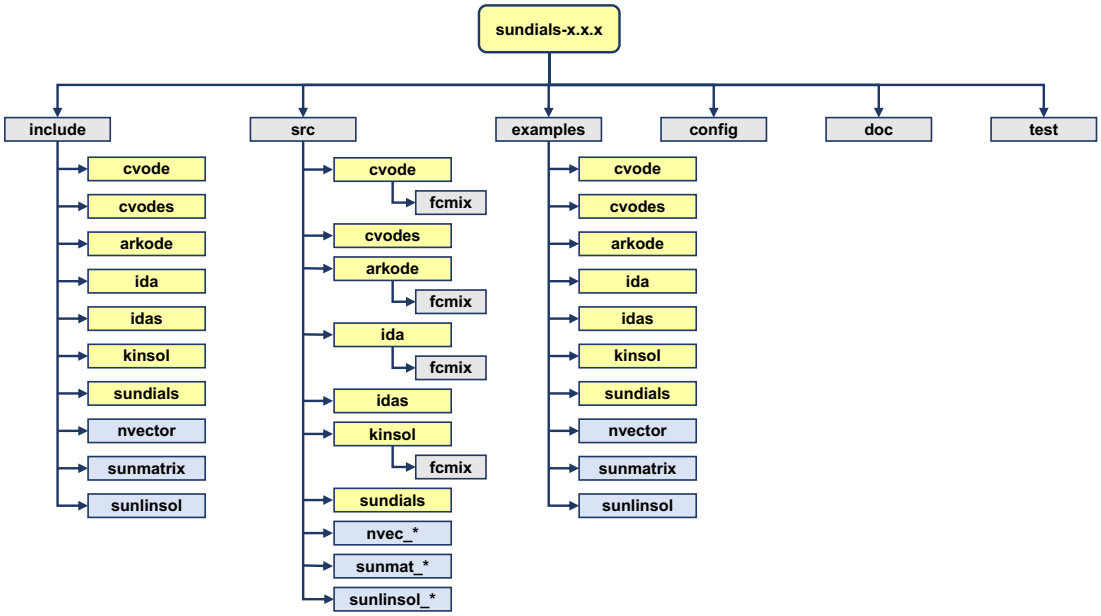
that these methods are implemented in a "matrix-free" manner, wherein only the action of the matrix-vector product is required. Since IDA can operate on any valid SUNLINSOL implementation of `SUNLINSOL_DIRECT` or `SUNLINSOL_ITERATIVE` types, the set of linear solver modules available to IDA will expand as new SUNLINSOL modules are developed.

Within the IDADLS interface, the package includes algorithms for the approximation of dense or banded Jacobians through difference quotients, but the user also has the option of supplying the Jacobian (or an approximation to it) directly. This user-supplied routine is required when using sparse Jacobian matrices, since standard difference quotient approximations do not leverage the inherent sparsity of the problem.

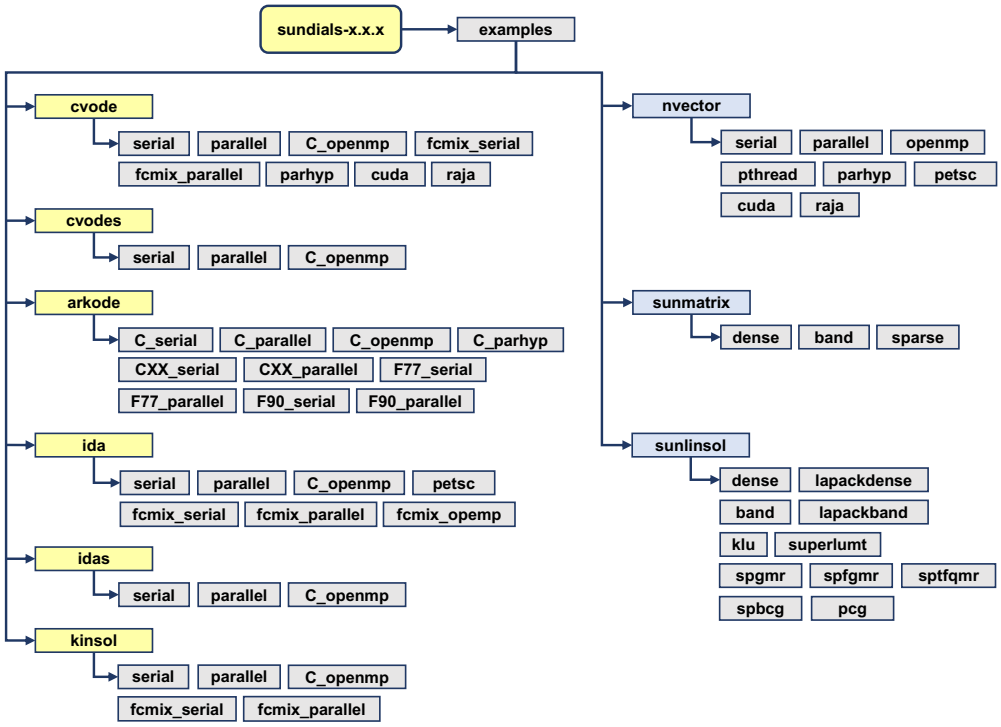
Within the IDASPILS interface, the package includes an algorithm for the approximation by difference quotients of the product between the Jacobian matrix and a vector. Again, the user has the option of providing routines for this operation, in two phases: setup (preprocessing of Jacobian data) and multiplication. For preconditioned iterative methods, the preconditioning must be supplied by the user, again in two phases: setup and solve. While there is no default choice of preconditioner analogous to the difference-quotient approximation in the direct case, the references [4, 7], together with the example and demonstration programs included with IDA, offer considerable assistance in building preconditioners.

Each IDA linear solver interface consists of four routines, devoted to (1) memory allocation and initialization, (2) setup of the matrix data involved, (3) solution of the system, and (4) freeing of memory. The setup and solution phases are separate because the evaluation of Jacobians and preconditioners is done only periodically during the integration, as required to achieve convergence. The call list within the central IDA module to each of the four associated functions is fixed, thus allowing the central module to be completely independent of the linear system method.

These modules are also decomposed in another way. Each of the modules (IDADENSE, etc.) consists of an interface built on top of a generic linear system solver (DENSE, etc.). The interface deals with the use of the particular method in the IDA context, whereas the generic solver is independent of the context. While some of the generic linear system solvers (DENSE, BAND, SPGMR, SPBCGS, and



(a) Directory structure of the SUNDIALS source tree



(b) Directory structure of the SUNDIALS examples

Figure 3.2: Organization of the SUNDIALS suite

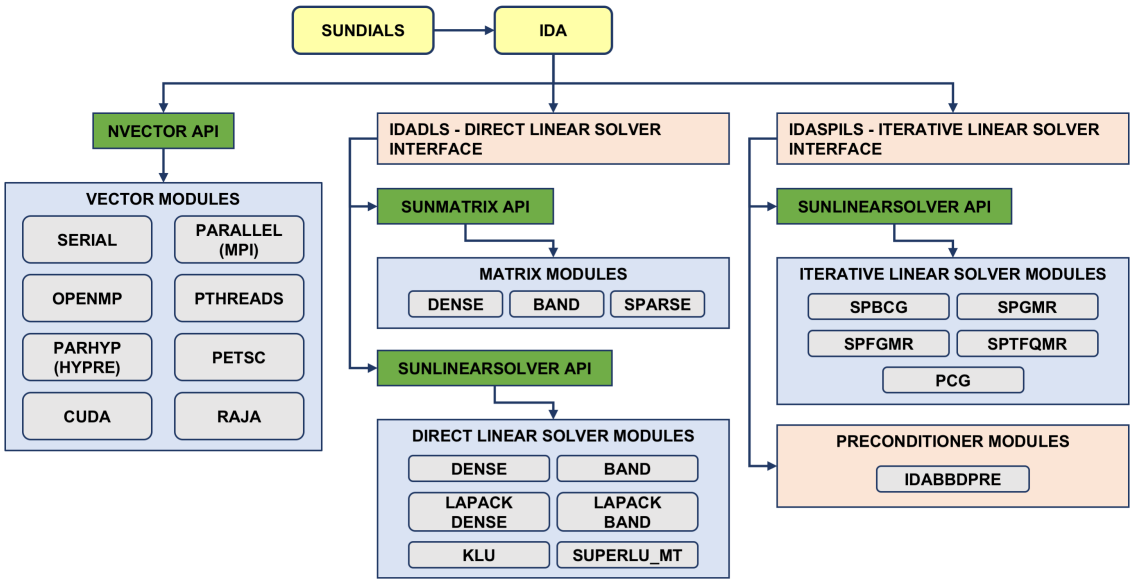


Figure 3.3: Overall structure diagram of the IDA package. Modules specific to IDA begin with "IDA" (IDADLS, IDASPILS, and IDABBDPRE), all other items correspond to generic solver and auxiliary modules. Note also that the LAPACK, KLU and SUPERLUMT support is through interfaces to external packages. Users will need to download and compile those packages independently.

SPTFQMR) were written with SUNDIALS in mind, they are intended to be usable anywhere as general-purpose solvers. This separation also allows for any generic solver to be replaced by an improved version, with no necessity to revise the IDA package elsewhere.

IDA also provides a preconditioner module, IDABBDPRE, that works in conjunction with NVECTOR_PARALLEL and generates a preconditioner that is a block-diagonal matrix with each block being a banded matrix.

All state information used by IDA to solve a given problem is saved in a structure, and a pointer to that structure is returned to the user. There is no global data in the IDA package, and so, in this respect, it is reentrant. State information specific to the linear solver is saved in a separate structure, a pointer to which resides in the IDA memory structure. The reentrancy of IDA was motivated by the situation where two or more problems are solved by intermixed calls to the package from one user program.

Chapter 4

Using IDA for C Applications

This chapter is concerned with the use of IDA for the integration of DAEs in a C language setting. The following sections treat the header files, the layout of the user's main program, description of the IDA user-callable functions, and description of user-supplied functions.

The sample programs described in the companion document [19] may also be helpful. Those codes may be used as templates (with the removal of some lines involved in testing), and are included in the IDA package.

Users with applications written in FORTRAN should see Chapter 5, which describes the FORTRAN/C interface module.

The user should be aware that not all SUNLINSOL and SUNMATRIX modules are compatible with all NVECTOR implementations. Details on compatability are given in the documentation for each SUNMATRIX module (Chapter 7) and each SUNLINSOL module (Chapter 8). For example, NVECTOR_PARALLEL is not compatible with the dense, banded, or sparse SUNMATRIX types, or with the corresponding dense, banded, or sparse SUNLINSOL modules. Please check Chapters 7 and 8 to verify compatability between these modules. In addition to that documentation, we note that the preconditioner module IDABBDPRE can only be used with NVECTOR_PARALLEL. It is not recommended to use a threaded vector module with SuperLU_MT unless it is the NVECTOR_OPENMP module, and SuperLU_MT is also compiled with openMP.

IDA uses various constants for both input and output. These are defined as needed in this chapter, but for convenience are also listed separately in Appendix B.

4.1 Access to library and header files

At this point, it is assumed that the installation of IDA, following the procedure described in Appendix A, has been completed successfully.

Regardless of where the user's application program resides, its associated compilation and load commands must make reference to the appropriate locations for the library and header files required by IDA. The relevant library files are

- *libdir*/`libsundials_ida.`*lib*,
- *libdir*/`libsundials_nvec*.`*lib* (one to four files),

where the file extension *.lib* is typically `.so` for shared libraries and `.a` for static libraries. The relevant header files are located in the subdirectories

- *incdir*/`include/ida`
- *incdir*/`include/sundials`
- *incdir*/`include/nvector`

- *incdir*/include/sunmatrix
- *incdir*/include/sunlinsol

The directories *libdir* and *incdir* are the install library and include directories, respectively. For a default installation, these are *instdir*/lib and *instdir*/include, respectively, where *instdir* is the directory where SUNDIALS was installed (see Appendix A).

Note that an application cannot link to both the IDA and IDAS libraries because both contain user-callable functions with the same names (to ensure that IDAS is backward compatible with IDA). Therefore, applications that contain both DAE problems and DAEs with sensitivity analysis, should use IDAS.

4.2 Data types

The sundials_types.h file contains the definition of the type realtype, which is used by the SUNDIALS solvers for all floating-point data, the definition of the integer type sunindextype, which is used for vector and matrix indices, and booleantype, which is used for certain logic operations within SUNDIALS.

4.2.1 Floating point types

The type realtype can be float, double, or long double, with the default being double. The user can change the precision of the SUNDIALS solvers arithmetic at the configuration stage (see §A.1.2).

Additionally, based on the current precision, sundials_types.h defines BIG_REAL to be the largest value representable as a realtype, SMALL_REAL to be the smallest value representable as a realtype, and UNIT_ROUNDOFF to be the difference between 1.0 and the minimum realtype greater than 1.0.

Within SUNDIALS, real constants are set by way of a macro called RCONST. It is this macro that needs the ability to branch on the definition realtype. In ANSI C, a floating-point constant with no suffix is stored as a double. Placing the suffix "F" at the end of a floating point constant makes it a float, whereas using the suffix "L" makes it a long double. For example,

```
#define A 1.0
#define B 1.0F
#define C 1.0L
```

defines A to be a double constant equal to 1.0, B to be a float constant equal to 1.0, and C to be a long double constant equal to 1.0. The macro call RCONST(1.0) automatically expands to 1.0 if realtype is double, to 1.0F if realtype is float, or to 1.0L if realtype is long double. SUNDIALS uses the RCONST macro internally to declare all of its floating-point constants.

A user program which uses the type realtype and the RCONST macro to handle floating-point constants is precision-independent except for any calls to precision-specific standard math library functions. (Our example programs use both realtype and RCONST.) Users can, however, use the type double, float, or long double in their code (assuming that this usage is consistent with the typedef for realtype). Thus, a previously existing piece of ANSI C code can use SUNDIALS without modifying the code to use realtype, so long as the SUNDIALS libraries use the correct precision (for details see §A.1.2).

4.2.2 Integer types used for vector and matrix indices

The type sunindextype can be either a 32- or 64-bit *signed* integer. The default is the portable int64_t type, and the user can change it to int32_t at the configuration stage. The configuration system will detect if the compiler does not support portable types, and will replace int32_t and int64_t with int and long int, respectively, to ensure use of the desired sizes on Linux, Mac OS X, and Windows platforms. SUNDIALS currently does not support *unsigned* integer types for vector and matrix indices, although these could be added in the future if there is sufficient demand.

A user program which uses `sunindextype` to handle vector and matrix indices will work with both index storage types except for any calls to index storage-specific external libraries. (Our `C` and `C++` example programs use `sunindextype`.) Users can, however, use any one of `int`, `long int`, `int32_t`, `int64_t` or `long long int` in their code, assuming that this usage is consistent with the typedef for `sunindextype` on their architecture). Thus, a previously existing piece of ANSI C code can use SUNDIALS without modifying the code to use `sunindextype`, so long as the SUNDIALS libraries use the appropriate index storage type (for details see §A.1.2).

4.3 Header files

The calling program must include several header files so that various macros and data types can be used. The header file that is always required is:

- `ida/ida.h`, the header file for IDA, which defines the several types and various constants, and includes function prototypes.

Note that `ida.h` includes `sundials_types.h`, which defines the types `realtype`, `sunindextype`, and `booleantype` and the constants `SUNFALSE` and `SUNTRUE`.

The calling program must also include an NVECTOR implementation header file, of the form `nvector/nvector_***.h`. See Chapter 6 for the appropriate name. This file in turn includes the header file `sundials_nvector.h` which defines the abstract `N_Vector` data type.

Finally, a linear solver module header file is required. The header files corresponding to the various linear solver interfaces and linear solver modules available for use with IDA are:

- `ida/ida_direct.h`, which is used with the IDADLS direct linear solver interface to access direct solvers with the following header files:
  - `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_dense.h`, which is used with the dense linear solver module, SUNLINSOL_DENSE;
  - `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_band.h`, which is used with the banded linear solver module, SUNLINSOL_BAND;
  - `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_lapackdense.h`, which is used with the LAPACK dense linear solver interface module, SUNLINSOL_LAPACKDENSE;
  - `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_lapackband.h`, which is used with the LAPACK banded linear solver interface module, SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND;
  - `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_klu.h`, which is used with the KLU sparse linear solver interface module, SUNLINSOL_KLU;
  - `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_superlumt.h`, which is used with the SUPERLUMT sparse linear solver interface module, SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT;
- `ida/ida_spils.h`, which is used with the IDASPILS iterative linear solver interface to access iterative solvers with the following header files:
  - `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_spgmr.h`, which is used with the scaled, preconditioned GMRES Krylov linear solver module, SUNLINSOL_SPGMR;
  - `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_spfgmr.h`, which is used with the scaled, preconditioned FGMRES Krylov linear solver module, SUNLINSOL_SPFGMR;
  - `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_spbcgs.h`, which is used with the scaled, preconditioned Bi-CGStab Krylov linear solver module, SUNLINSOL_SPBCGS;
  - `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_sptfqmr.h`, which is used with the scaled, preconditioned TFQMR Krylov linear solver module, SUNLINSOL_SPTFQMR;
  - `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_pcg.h`, which is used with the scaled, preconditioned CG Krylov linear solver module, SUNLINSOL_PCG;

The header files for the SUNLINSOL_DENSE and SUNLINSOL_LAPACKDENSE linear solver modules include the file `sunmatrix/sunmatrix_dense.h`, which defines the SUNMATRIX_DENSE matrix module, as as well as various functions and macros acting on such matrices.

The header files for the SUNLINSOL_BAND and SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND linear solver modules include the file `sunmatrix/sunmatrix_band.h`, which defines the SUNMATRIX_BAND matrix module, as as well as various functions and macros acting on such matrices.

The header files for the SUNLINSOL_KLU and SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT sparse linear solvers include the file `sunmatrix/sunmatrix_sparse.h`, which defines the SUNMATRIX_SPARSE matrix module, as well as various functions and macros acting on such matrices.

The header files for the Krylov iterative solvers include the file `sundials/sundials_iterative.h`, which enumerates the kind of preconditioning, and (for the SPGMR and SPFGMR solvers) the choices for the Gram-Schmidt process.

Other headers may be needed, according to the choice of preconditioner, etc. For example, in the `idaFoodWeb_kry_p` example (see [19]), preconditioning is done with a block-diagonal matrix. For this, even though the SUNLINSOL_SPGMR linear solver is used, the header `sundials/sundials_dense.h` is included for access to the underlying generic dense matrix arithmetic routines.

4.4 A skeleton of the user's main program

The following is a skeleton of the user's main program (or calling program) for the integration of a DAE IVP. Most of the steps are independent of the NVECTOR, SUNMATRIX, and SUNLINSOL implementations used. For the steps that are not, refer to Chapter 6, 7, and 8 for the specific name of the function to be called or macro to be referenced.

1. **Initialize parallel or multi-threaded environment, if appropriate**

   For example, call `MPI_Init` to initialize MPI if used, or set `num_threads`, the number of threads to use within the threaded vector functions, if used.

2. **Set problem dimensions etc.**

   This generally includes the problem size `N`, and may include the local vector length `Nlocal`.

   Note: The variables `N` and `Nlocal` should be of type `sunindextype`.

3. **Set vectors of initial values**

   To set the vectors `y0` and `yp0` to initial values for y and $\dot{y}$, use the appropriate functions defined by the particular NVECTOR implementation.

   For native SUNDIALS vector implementations (except the CUDA and RAJA-based ones), use a call of the form `y0 = N_VMake_***(..., ydata)` if the `realtype` array `ydata` containing the initial values of y already exists. Otherwise, create a new vector by making a call of the form `y0 = N_VNew_***(...)`, and then set its elements by accessing the underlying data with a call of the form `ydata = N_VGetArrayPointer(y0)`. See §6.1-6.4 for details.

   For the *hypre* and PETSc vector wrappers, first create and initialize the underlying vector and then create an NVECTOR wrapper with a call of the form `y0 = N_VMake_***(yvec)`, where `yvec` is a *hypre* or PETSc vector. Note that calls like `N_VNew_***(...)` and `N_VGetArrayPointer(...)` are not available for these vector wrappers. See §6.5 and §6.6 for details.

   If using either the CUDA- or RAJA-based vector implementations use a call of the form `y0 = N_VMake_***(..., c)` where `c` is a pointer to a `suncudavec` or `sunrajavec` vector class if this class already exists. Otherwise, create a new vector by making a call of the form `y0 = N_VNew_***(...)`, and then set its elements by accessing the underlying data where it is located with a call of the form `N_VGetDeviceArrayPointer_***` or `N_VGetHostArrayPointer_***`. Note that the vector class will allocate memory on both the host and device when instantiated. See §6.7-6.8 for details.

   Set the vector `yp0` of initial conditions for $\dot{y}$ similarly.

4. **Create IDA object**

   Call `ida_mem = IDACreate()` to create the IDA memory block. `IDACreate` returns a pointer to the IDA memory structure. See §4.5.1 for details. This `void *` pointer must then be passed as the first argument to all subsequent IDA function calls.

5. **Initialize IDA solver**

   Call `IDAInit(...)` to provide required problem specifications (residual function, initial time, and initial conditions), allocate internal memory for IDA, and initialize IDA. `IDAInit` returns an error flag to indicate success or an illegal argument value. See §4.5.1 for details.

6. **Specify integration tolerances**

   Call `IDASStolerances(...)` or `IDASVtolerances(...)` to specify, respectively, a scalar relative tolerance and scalar absolute tolerance, or a scalar relative tolerance and a vector of absolute tolerances. Alternatively, call `IDAWFtolerances` to specify a function which sets directly the weights used in evaluating WRMS vector norms. See §4.5.2 for details.

7. **Set optional inputs**

   Optionally, call `IDASet*` functions to change from their default values any optional inputs that control the behavior of IDA. See §4.5.7.1 for details.

8. **Create matrix object**

   If a direct linear solver is to be used within a Newton iteration then a template Jacobian matrix must be created by using the appropriate functions defined by the particular SUNMATRIX implementation.

   NOTE: The dense, banded, and sparse matrix objects are usable only in a serial or threaded environment.

9. **Create linear solver object**

   If a Newton iteration is chosen, then the desired linear solver object must be created by using the appropriate functions defined by the particular SUNLINSOL implementation.

10. **Set linear solver optional inputs**

    Call `*Set*` functions from the selected linear solver module to change optional inputs specific to that linear solver. See the documentation for each SUNLINSOL module in Chapter 8 for details.

11. **Attach linear solver module**

    If a Newton iteration is chosen, initialize the IDADLS or IDASPILS linear solver interface by attaching the linear solver object (and matrix object, if applicable) with one of the following calls (for details see §4.5.3):

    ```
    ier = IDADlsSetLinearSolver(...);
    ```

    ```
    ier = IDASpilsSetLinearSolver(...);
    ```

12. **Set linear solver interface optional inputs**

    Call `IDADlsSet*` or `IDASpilsSet*` functions to change optional inputs specific to that linear solver interface. See §4.5.7 for details.

13. **Correct initial values**

    Optionally, call `IDACalcIC` to correct the initial values `y0` and `yp0` passed to `IDAInit`. See §4.5.4. Also see §4.5.7.4 for relevant optional input calls.

14. **Specify rootfinding problem**

Optionally, call `IDARootInit` to initialize a rootfinding problem to be solved during the integration of the DAE system. See §4.5.5 for details, and see §4.5.7.5 for relevant optional input calls.

15. **Advance solution in time**

    For each point at which output is desired, call `flag = IDASolve(ida_mem, tout, &tret, yret, ypret, itask)`. Here `itask` specifies the return mode. The vector `yret` (which can be the same as the vector `y0` above) will contain $y(t)$, while the vector `ypret` (which can be the same as the vector `yp0` above) will contain $\dot{y}(t)$. See §4.5.6 for details.

16. **Get optional outputs**

    Call `IDA*Get*` functions to obtain optional output. See §4.5.9 for details.

17. **Deallocate memory for solution vectors**

    Upon completion of the integration, deallocate memory for the vectors `yret` and `ypret` (or `y` and `yp`) by calling the appropriate destructor function defined by the NVECTOR implementation:

    ```
    N_VDestroy(yret);
    ```

    and similarly for `ypret`.

18. **Free solver memory**

    `IDAFree(&ida_mem)` to free the memory allocated for IDA.

19. **Free linear solver and matrix memory**

    Call `SUNLinSolFree` and `SUNMatDestroy` to free any memory allocated for the linear solver and matrix objects created above.

20. **Finalize MPI, if used**

    Call `MPI_Finalize()` to terminate MPI.

SUNDIALS provides some linear solvers only as a means for users to get problems running and not as highly efficient solvers. For example, if solving a dense system, we suggest using the Lapack solvers if the size of the linear system is $> 50,000$. (Thanks to A. Nicolai for his testing and recommendation.) Table 4.1 shows the linear solver interfaces available as SUNLINSOL modules and the vector implementations required for use. As an example, one cannot use the dense direct solver interfaces with the MPI-based vector implementation. However, as discussed in Chapter 8 the SUNDIALS packages operate on generic SUNLINSOL objects, allowing a user to develop their own solvers should they so desire.

4.5 User-callable functions

This section describes the IDA functions that are called by the user to set up and solve a DAE. Some of these are required. However, starting with §4.5.7, the functions listed involve optional inputs/outputs or restarting, and those paragraphs can be skipped for a casual use of IDA. In any case, refer to §4.4 for the correct order of these calls.

On an error, each user-callable function returns a negative value and sends an error message to the error handler routine, which prints the message on `stderr` by default. However, the user can set a file as error output or can provide his own error handler function (see §4.5.7.1).

4.5.1 IDA initialization and deallocation functions

The following three functions must be called in the order listed. The last one is to be called only after the DAE solution is complete, as it frees the IDA memory block created and allocated by the first two calls.

Table 4.1: SUNDIALS linear solver interfaces and vector implementations that can be used for each.

Linear Solver	Serial	Parallel (MPI)	OpenMP	pThreads	*hypre*	PETSc	CUDA	RAJA	User Supp.
Dense	✓		✓	✓					✓
Band	✓		✓	✓					✓
LapackDense	✓		✓	✓					✓
LapackBand	✓		✓	✓					✓
KLU	✓		✓	✓					✓
SUPERLUMT	✓		✓	✓					✓
SPGMR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SPFGMR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SPBCGS	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SPTFQMR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
PCG	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
User Supp.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

`IDACreate`

Call `ida_mem = IDACreate();`

Description The function `IDACreate` instantiates an IDA solver object.

Arguments `IDACreate` has no arguments.

Return value If successful, `IDACreate` returns a pointer to the newly created IDA memory block (of type `void *`). Otherwise it returns `NULL`.

`IDAInit`

Call `flag = IDAInit(ida_mem, res, t0, y0, yp0);`

Description The function `IDAInit` provides required problem and solution specifications, allocates internal memory, and initializes IDA.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block returned by `IDACreate`.

`res` (`IDAResFn`) is the C function which computes the residual function F in the DAE. This function has the form `res(t, yy, yp, resval, user_data)`. For full details see §4.6.1.

`t0` (`realtype`) is the initial value of t.

`y0` (`N_Vector`) is the initial value of y.

`yp0` (`N_Vector`) is the initial value of $\dot{y}$.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) will be one of the following:

`IDA_SUCCESS` The call to `IDAInit` was successful.

`IDA_MEM_NULL` The IDA memory block was not initialized through a previous call to `IDACreate`.

`IDA_MEM_FAIL` A memory allocation request has failed.

`IDA_ILL_INPUT` An input argument to `IDAInit` has an illegal value.

Notes If an error occurred, `IDAInit` also sends an error message to the error handler function.

`IDAFree`

Call `IDAFree(&ida_mem);`

Description The function `IDAFree` frees the pointer allocated by a previous call to `IDACreate`.

Arguments The argument is the pointer to the IDA memory block (of type `void *`).

Return value The function `IDAFree` has no return value.

4.5.2 IDA tolerance specification functions

One of the following three functions must be called to specify the integration tolerances (or directly specify the weights used in evaluating WRMS vector norms). Note that this call must be made after the call to `IDAInit`.

`IDASStolerances`

Call `flag = IDASStolerances(ida_mem, reltol, abstol);`

Description The function `IDASStolerances` specifies scalar relative and absolute tolerances.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block returned by `IDACreate`.
`reltol` (`realtype`) is the scalar relative error tolerance.
`abstol` (`realtype`) is the scalar absolute error tolerance.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) will be one of the following:

`IDA_SUCCESS`	The call to `IDASStolerances` was successful.
`IDA_MEM_NULL`	The IDA memory block was not initialized through a previous call to `IDACreate`.
`IDA_NO_MALLOC`	The allocation function `IDAInit` has not been called.
`IDA_ILL_INPUT`	One of the input tolerances was negative.

`IDASVtolerances`

Call `flag = IDASVtolerances(ida_mem, reltol, abstol);`

Description The function `IDASVtolerances` specifies scalar relative tolerance and vector absolute tolerances.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block returned by `IDACreate`.
`reltol` (`realtype`) is the scalar relative error tolerance.
`abstol` (`N_Vector`) is the vector of absolute error tolerances.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) will be one of the following:

`IDA_SUCCESS`	The call to `IDASVtolerances` was successful.
`IDA_MEM_NULL`	The IDA memory block was not initialized through a previous call to `IDACreate`.
`IDA_NO_MALLOC`	The allocation function `IDAInit` has not been called.
`IDA_ILL_INPUT`	The relative error tolerance was negative or the absolute tolerance had a negative component.

Notes This choice of tolerances is important when the absolute error tolerance needs to be different for each component of the state vector y.

`IDAWFtolerances`

Call `flag = IDAWFtolerances(ida_mem, efun);`

Description The function `IDAWFtolerances` specifies a user-supplied function `efun` that sets the multiplicative error weights W_i for use in the weighted RMS norm, which are normally defined by Eq. (2.6).

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block returned by `IDACreate`.
`efun` (`IDAEwtFn`) is the C function which defines the `ewt` vector (see §4.6.3).

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) will be one of the following:

`IDA_SUCCESS`	The call to `IDAWFtolerances` was successful.
`IDA_MEM_NULL`	The IDA memory block was not initialized through a previous call to `IDACreate`.
`IDA_NO_MALLOC`	The allocation function `IDAInit` has not been called.

General advice on choice of tolerances. For many users, the appropriate choices for tolerance values in `reltol` and `abstol` are a concern. The following pieces of advice are relevant.

(1) The scalar relative tolerance `reltol` is to be set to control relative errors. So `reltol`=10^{-4} means that errors are controlled to .01%. We do not recommend using `reltol` larger than 10^{-3}. On the other hand, `reltol` should not be so small that it is comparable to the unit roundoff of the machine arithmetic (generally around 10^{-15}).

(2) The absolute tolerances `abstol` (whether scalar or vector) need to be set to control absolute errors when any components of the solution vector `y` may be so small that pure relative error control is meaningless. For example, if `y[i]` starts at some nonzero value, but in time decays to zero, then pure relative error control on `y[i]` makes no sense (and is overly costly) after `y[i]` is below some noise level. Then `abstol` (if scalar) or `abstol[i]` (if a vector) needs to be set to that noise level. If the different components have different noise levels, then `abstol` should be a vector. See the example `idaRoberts_dns` in the IDA package, and the discussion of it in the IDA Examples document [19]. In that problem, the three components vary between 0 and 1, and have different noise levels; hence the `abstol` vector. It is impossible to give any general advice on `abstol` values, because the appropriate noise levels are completely problem-dependent. The user or modeler hopefully has some idea as to what those noise levels are.

(3) Finally, it is important to pick all the tolerance values conservatively, because they control the error committed on each individual time step. The final (global) errors are a sort of accumulation of those per-step errors. A good rule of thumb is to reduce the tolerances by a factor of .01 from the actual desired limits on errors. So if you want .01% accuracy (globally), a good choice is `reltol`= 10^{-6}. But in any case, it is a good idea to do a few experiments with the tolerances to see how the computed solution values vary as tolerances are reduced.

Advice on controlling unphysical negative values. In many applications, some components in the true solution are always positive or non-negative, though at times very small. In the numerical solution, however, small negative (hence unphysical) values can then occur. In most cases, these values are harmless, and simply need to be controlled, not eliminated. The following pieces of advice are relevant.

(1) The way to control the size of unwanted negative computed values is with tighter absolute tolerances. Again this requires some knowledge of the noise level of these components, which may or may not be different for different components. Some experimentation may be needed.

(2) If output plots or tables are being generated, and it is important to avoid having negative numbers appear there (for the sake of avoiding a long explanation of them, if nothing else), then eliminate them, but only in the context of the output medium. Then the internal values carried by the solver are unaffected. Remember that a small negative value in `yret` returned by IDA, with magnitude comparable to `abstol` or less, is equivalent to zero as far as the computation is concerned.

(3) The user's residual routine `res` should never change a negative value in the solution vector `yy` to a non-negative value, as a "solution" to this problem. This can cause instability. If the `res` routine cannot tolerate a zero or negative value (e.g. because there is a square root or log of it), then the

offending value should be changed to zero or a tiny positive number in a temporary variable (not in the input `yy` vector) for the purposes of computing $F(t, y, \dot{y})$.

(4) IDA provides the option of enforcing positivity or non-negativity on components. Also, such constraints can be enforced by use of the recoverable error return feature in the user-supplied residual function. However, because these options involve some extra overhead cost, they should only be exercised if the use of absolute tolerances to control the computed values is unsuccessful.

4.5.3 Linear solver interface functions

As previously explained, a Newton iteration requires the solution of linear systems of the form (2.4). There are two IDA linear solvers currently available for this task: IDADLS and IDASPILS.

The first corresponds to the use of Direct Linear Solvers, and utilizes SUNMATRIX objects to store the Jacobian $J = \partial F/\partial y + \alpha \partial F/\partial \dot{y}$ and factorizations used throughout the solution process.

The second corresponds to the use of Scaled, Preconditioned, Iterative Linear Solvers, utilizing matrix-free Krylov methods to solve the Newton linear systems of equations. With most of these methods, preconditioning can be done on the left only, on the right only, on both the left and the right, or not at all. The exceptions to this rule are SPFGMR that supports right preconditioning only and PCG that performs symmetric preconditioning. For the specification of a preconditioner, see the iterative linear solver sections in §4.5.7 and §4.6. A preconditioner matrix P must approximate the Jacobian J, at least crudely.

To specify a generic linear solver to IDA, after the call to `IDACreate` but before any calls to `IDASolve`, the user's program must create the appropriate SUNLINSOL object and call either of the functions `IDADlsSetLinearSolver` or `IDASpilsSetLinearSolver`, as documented below. The first argument passed to these functions is the IDA memory pointer returned by `IDACreate`; the second argument passed to these functions is the desired SUNLINSOL object to use for solving Newton systems. A call to one of these functions initializes the appropriate IDA linear solver interface, linking this to the main IDA integrator, and allows the user to specify parameters which are specific to a particular solver interface. The use of each of the generic linear solvers involves certain constants and possibly some macros, that are likely to be needed in the user code. These are available in the corresponding header file associated with the specific SUNMATRIX or SUNLINSOL module in question, as described in Chapters 7 and 8.

`IDADlsSetLinearSolver`

Call `flag = IDADlsSetLinearSolver(ida_mem, LS, J);`

Description The function `IDADlsSetLinearSolver` attaches a direct SUNLINSOL object `LS` and corresponding template Jacobian SUNMATRIX object `J` to IDA, initializing the IDADLS direct linear solver interface.

The user's main program must include the `ida_direct.h` header file.

Arguments
- `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
- `LS` (`SUNLinearSolver`) SUNLINSOL object to use for solving Newton linear systems.
- `J` (`SUNMatrix`) SUNMATRIX object for used as a template for the Jacobian (must have a type compatible with the linear solver object).

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
- `IDADLS_SUCCESS` The IDADLS initialization was successful.
- `IDADLS_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
- `IDADLS_ILL_INPUT` The IDADLS solver is not compatible with the current NVECTOR module.
- `IDADLS_MEM_FAIL` A memory allocation request failed.

Notes The IDADLS linear solver is not compatible with all implementations of the SUNLINSOL and NVECTOR modules. Specifically, IDADLS requires use of a *direct* SUNLINSOL object

and a serial or theaded NVECTOR module. Additional compatibility limitations for each SUNLINSOL object (i.e. SUNMATRIX and NVECTOR object compatibility) are described in Chapter 8.

`IDASpilsSetLinearSolver`

Call `flag = IDASpilsSetLinearSolver(ida_mem, LS);`

Description The function `IDASpilsSetLinearSolver` attaches an iterative SUNLINSOL object `LS` to IDA, initializing the IDASPILS scaled, preconditioned, iterative linear solver interface.

The user's main program must include the `ida_spils.h` header file.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`LS` (`SUNLinearSolver`) SUNLINSOL object to use for solving Newton linear systems.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDASPILS_SUCCESS` The IDASPILS initialization was successful.

`IDASPILS_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDASPILS_ILL_INPUT` The IDASPILS solver is not compatible with the `LS` object or is incompatible with the current NVECTOR module.

`IDASPILS_MEM_FAIL` A memory allocation request failed.

`IDASPILS_SUNLS_FAIL` A call to the `LS` object failed.

Notes The IDASPILS linear solver interface is not compatible with all implementations of the SUNLINSOL and NVECTOR modules. Specifically, IDASPILS requires use of an *iterative* SUNLINSOL object. Additional compatibility limitations for each SUNLINSOL object (i.e. required NVECTOR routines) are described in Chapter 8.

4.5.4 Initial condition calculation function

`IDACalcIC` calculates corrected initial conditions for the DAE system for certain index-one problems including a class of systems of semi-implicit form. (See §2.1 and Ref. [6].) It uses Newton iteration combined with a linesearch algorithm. Calling `IDACalcIC` is optional. It is only necessary when the initial conditions do not satisfy the given system. Thus if `y0` and `yp0` are known to satisfy $F(t_0, y_0, \dot{y}_0) = 0$, then a call to `IDACalcIC` is generally *not* necessary.

A call to the function `IDACalcIC` must be preceded by successful calls to `IDACreate` and `IDAInit` (or `IDAReInit`), and by a successful call to the linear system solver specification function. The call to `IDACalcIC` should precede the call(s) to `IDASolve` for the given problem.

`IDACalcIC`

Call `flag = IDACalcIC(ida_mem, icopt, tout1);`

Description The function `IDACalcIC` corrects the initial values `y0` and `yp0` at time `t0`.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`icopt` (`int`) is one of the following two options for the initial condition calculation.

`icopt=IDA_YA_YDP_INIT` directs `IDACalcIC` to compute the algebraic components of y and differential components of $\dot{y}$, given the differential components of y. This option requires that the `N_Vector id` was set through `IDASetId`, specifying the differential and algebraic components.

`icopt=IDA_Y_INIT` directs `IDACalcIC` to compute all components of y, given $\dot{y}$. In this case, `id` is not required.

`tout1` (`realtype`) is the first value of t at which a solution will be requested (from `IDASolve`). This value is needed here only to determine the direction of integration and rough scale in the independent variable t.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) will be one of the following:

`IDA_SUCCESS`	`IDASolve` succeeded.
`IDA_MEM_NULL`	The argument `ida_mem` was `NULL`.
`IDA_NO_MALLOC`	The allocation function `IDAInit` has not been called.
`IDA_ILL_INPUT`	One of the input arguments was illegal.
`IDA_LSETUP_FAIL`	The linear solver's setup function failed in an unrecoverable manner.
`IDA_LINIT_FAIL`	The linear solver's initialization function failed.
`IDA_LSOLVE_FAIL`	The linear solver's solve function failed in an unrecoverable manner.
`IDA_BAD_EWT`	Some component of the error weight vector is zero (illegal), either for the input value of `y0` or a corrected value.
`IDA_FIRST_RES_FAIL`	The user's residual function returned a recoverable error flag on the first call, but `IDACalcIC` was unable to recover.
`IDA_RES_FAIL`	The user's residual function returned a nonrecoverable error flag.
`IDA_NO_RECOVERY`	The user's residual function, or the linear solver's setup or solve function had a recoverable error, but `IDACalcIC` was unable to recover.
`IDA_CONSTR_FAIL`	`IDACalcIC` was unable to find a solution satisfying the inequality constraints.
`IDA_LINESEARCH_FAIL`	The linesearch algorithm failed to find a solution with a step larger than `steptol` in weighted RMS norm, and within the allowed number of backtracks.
`IDA_CONV_FAIL`	`IDACalcIC` failed to get convergence of the Newton iterations.

Notes All failure return values are negative and therefore a test `flag` < 0 will trap all `IDACalcIC` failures.

Note that `IDACalcIC` will correct the values of $y(t_0)$ and $\dot{y}(t_0)$ which were specified in the previous call to `IDAInit` or `IDAReInit`. To obtain the corrected values, call `IDAGetconsistentIC` (see §4.5.9.3).

4.5.5 Rootfinding initialization function

While integrating the IVP, IDA has the capability of finding the roots of a set of user-defined functions. To activate the rootfinding algorithm, call the following function. This is normally called only once, prior to the first call to `IDASolve`, but if the rootfinding problem is to be changed during the solution, `IDARootInit` can also be called prior to a continuation call to `IDASolve`.

`IDARootInit`

Call `flag = IDARootInit(ida_mem, nrtfn, g);`

Description The function `IDARootInit` specifies that the roots of a set of functions $g_i(t, y, \dot{y})$ are to be found while the IVP is being solved.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block returned by `IDACreate`.

`nrtfn` (`int`) is the number of root functions g_i.

`g` (`IDARootFn`) is the C function which defines the `nrtfn` functions $g_i(t, y, \dot{y})$ whose roots are sought. See §4.6.4 for details.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS`	The call to `IDARootInit` was successful.
`IDA_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` argument was `NULL`.
`IDA_MEM_FAIL`	A memory allocation failed.

IDA_ILL_INPUT The function g is NULL, but nrtfn> 0.

Notes If a new IVP is to be solved with a call to IDAReInit, where the new IVP has no rootfinding problem but the prior one did, then call IDARootInit with nrtfn= 0.

4.5.6 IDA solver function

This is the central step in the solution process, the call to perform the integration of the DAE. One of the input arguments (itask) specifies one of two modes as to where IDA is to return a solution. But these modes are modified if the user has set a stop time (with IDASetStopTime) or requested rootfinding.

IDASolve

Call `flag = IDASolve(ida_mem, tout, &tret, yret, ypret, itask);`

Description The function IDASolve integrates the DAE over an interval in t.

Arguments
- ida_mem (void *) pointer to the IDA memory block.
- tout (realtype) the next time at which a computed solution is desired.
- tret (realtype) the time reached by the solver (output).
- yret (N_Vector) the computed solution vector y.
- ypret (N_Vector) the computed solution vector $\dot{y}$.
- itask (int) a flag indicating the job of the solver for the next user step. The IDA_NORMAL task is to have the solver take internal steps until it has reached or just passed the user specified tout parameter. The solver then interpolates in order to return approximate values of y(tout) and $\dot{y}$(tout). The IDA_ONE_STEP option tells the solver to just take one internal step and return the solution at the point reached by that step.

Return value IDASolve returns vectors yret and ypret and a corresponding independent variable value t = tret, such that (yret, ypret) are the computed values of ($y(t)$, $\dot{y}(t)$).

In IDA_NORMAL mode with no errors, tret will be equal to tout and yret = y(tout), ypret = $\dot{y}$(tout).

The return value flag (of type int) will be one of the following:

- IDA_SUCCESS IDASolve succeeded.
- IDA_TSTOP_RETURN IDASolve succeeded by reaching the stop point specified through the optional input function IDASetStopTime.
- IDA_ROOT_RETURN IDASolve succeeded and found one or more roots. In this case, tret is the location of the root. If nrtfn > 1, call IDAGetRootInfo to see which g_i were found to have a root. See §4.5.9.4 for more information.
- IDA_MEM_NULL The ida_mem argument was NULL.
- IDA_ILL_INPUT One of the inputs to IDASolve was illegal, or some other input to the solver was either illegal or missing. The latter category includes the following situations: (a) The tolerances have not been set. (b) A component of the error weight vector became zero during internal time-stepping. (c) The linear solver initialization function (called by the user after calling IDACreate) failed to set the linear solver-specific lsolve field in ida_mem. (d) A root of one of the root functions was found both at a point t and also very near t. In any case, the user should see the printed error message for details.
- IDA_TOO_MUCH_WORK The solver took mxstep internal steps but could not reach tout. The default value for mxstep is MXSTEP_DEFAULT = 500.

`IDA_TOO_MUCH_ACC`	The solver could not satisfy the accuracy demanded by the user for some internal step.
`IDA_ERR_FAIL`	Error test failures occurred too many times (`MXNEF = 10`) during one internal time step or occurred with $\|h\| = h_{min}$.
`IDA_CONV_FAIL`	Convergence test failures occurred too many times (`MXNCF = 10`) during one internal time step or occurred with $\|h\| = h_{min}$.
`IDA_LINIT_FAIL`	The linear solver's initialization function failed.
`IDA_LSETUP_FAIL`	The linear solver's setup function failed in an unrecoverable manner.
`IDA_LSOLVE_FAIL`	The linear solver's solve function failed in an unrecoverable manner.
`IDA_CONSTR_FAIL`	The inequality constraints were violated and the solver was unable to recover.
`IDA_REP_RES_ERR`	The user's residual function repeatedly returned a recoverable error flag, but the solver was unable to recover.
`IDA_RES_FAIL`	The user's residual function returned a nonrecoverable error flag.
`IDA_RTFUNC_FAIL`	The rootfinding function failed.

Notes The vector `yret` can occupy the same space as the vector `y0` of initial conditions that was passed to `IDAInit`, and the vector `ypret` can occupy the same space as `yp0`.

In the `IDA_ONE_STEP` mode, `tout` is used on the first call only, and only to get the direction and rough scale of the independent variable.

All failure return values are negative and therefore a test `flag` < 0 will trap all `IDASolve` failures.

On any error return in which one or more internal steps were taken by `IDASolve`, the returned values of `tret`, `yret`, and `ypret` correspond to the farthest point reached in the integration. On all other error returns, these values are left unchanged from the previous `IDASolve` return.

4.5.7 Optional input functions

There are numerous optional input parameters that control the behavior of the IDA solver. IDA provides functions that can be used to change these optional input parameters from their default values. Table 4.2 lists all optional input functions in IDA which are then described in detail in the remainder of this section. For the most casual use of IDA, the reader can skip to §4.6.

We note that, on an error return, all these functions also send an error message to the error handler function. We also note that all error return values are negative, so a test `flag` < 0 will catch any error.

4.5.7.1 Main solver optional input functions

The calls listed here can be executed in any order. However, if the user's program calls either `IDASetErrFile` or `IDASetErrHandlerFn`, then that call should appear first, in order to take effect for any later error message.

`IDASetErrFile`

Call `flag = IDASetErrFile(ida_mem, errfp);`

Description The function `IDASetErrFile` specifies the pointer to the file where all IDA messages should be directed when the default IDA error handler function is used.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`errfp` (`FILE *`) pointer to output file.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

Table 4.2: Optional inputs for IDA, IDADLS, and IDASPILS

Optional input	Function name	Default
IDA main solver		
Pointer to an error file	`IDASetErrFile`	`stderr`
Error handler function	`IDASetErrHandlerFn`	internal fn.
User data	`IDASetUserData`	`NULL`
Maximum order for BDF method	`IDASetMaxOrd`	5
Maximum no. of internal steps before t_{out}	`IDASetMaxNumSteps`	500
Initial step size	`IDASetInitStep`	estimated
Maximum absolute step size	`IDASetMaxStep`	∞
Value of t_{stop}	`IDASetStopTime`	∞
Maximum no. of error test failures	`IDASetMaxErrTestFails`	10
Maximum no. of nonlinear iterations	`IDASetMaxNonlinIters`	4
Maximum no. of convergence failures	`IDASetMaxConvFails`	10
Maximum no. of error test failures	`IDASetMaxErrTestFails`	7
Coeff. in the nonlinear convergence test	`IDASetNonlinConvCoef`	0.33
Suppress alg. vars. from error test	`IDASetSuppressAlg`	`SUNFALSE`
Variable types (differential/algebraic)	`IDASetId`	`NULL`
Inequality constraints on solution	`IDASetConstraints`	`NULL`
Direction of zero-crossing	`IDASetRootDirection`	both
Disable rootfinding warnings	`IDASetNoInactiveRootWarn`	none
IDA initial conditions calculation		
Coeff. in the nonlinear convergence test	`IDASetNonlinConvCoefIC`	0.0033
Maximum no. of steps	`IDASetMaxNumStepsIC`	5
Maximum no. of Jacobian/precond. evals.	`IDASetMaxNumJacsIC`	4
Maximum no. of Newton iterations	`IDASetMaxNumItersIC`	10
Max. linesearch backtracks per Newton iter.	`IDASetMaxBacksIC`	100
Turn off linesearch	`IDASetLineSearchOffIC`	`SUNFALSE`
Lower bound on Newton step	`IDASetStepToleranceIC`	$\text{uround}^{2/3}$
IDADLS linear solver interface		
Jacobian function	`IDADlsSetJacFn`	DQ
IDASPILS linear solver interface		
Preconditioner functions	`IDASpilsSetPreconditioner`	NULL, NULL
Jacobian-times-vector function	`IDASpilsSetJacTimes`	NULL, DQ
Ratio between linear and nonlinear tolerances	`IDASpilsSetEpsLin`	0.05

`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional value has been successfully set.

`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

Notes The default value for `errfp` is `stderr`.

Passing a value `NULL` disables all future error message output (except for the case in which the IDA memory pointer is `NULL`). This use of `IDASetErrFile` is strongly discouraged.

If `IDASetErrFile` is to be called, it should be called before any other optional input functions, in order to take effect for any later error message.

`IDASetErrHandlerFn`

Call `flag = IDASetErrHandlerFn(ida_mem, ehfun, eh_data);`

Description The function `IDASetErrHandlerFn` specifies the optional user-defined function to be used in handling error messages.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`ehfun` (`IDAErrHandlerFn`) is the user's C error handler function (see §4.6.2).

`eh_data` (`void *`) pointer to user data passed to `ehfun` every time it is called.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS` The function `ehfun` and data pointer `eh_data` have been successfully set.

`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

Notes Error messages indicating that the IDA solver memory is `NULL` will always be directed to `stderr`.

`IDASetUserData`

Call `flag = IDASetUserData(ida_mem, user_data);`

Description The function `IDASetUserData` specifies the user data block `user_data` and attaches it to the main IDA memory block.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`user_data` (`void *`) pointer to the user data.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional value has been successfully set.

`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

Notes If specified, the pointer to `user_data` is passed to all user-supplied functions that have it as an argument. Otherwise, a `NULL` pointer is passed.

If `user_data` is needed in user linear solver or preconditioner functions, the call to `IDASetUserData` must be made *before* the call to specify the linear solver.

`IDASetMaxOrd`

Call `flag = IDASetMaxOrd(ida_mem, maxord);`

Description The function `IDASetMaxOrd` specifies the maximum order of the linear multistep method.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`maxord` (`int`) value of the maximum method order. This must be positive.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional value has been successfully set.

`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

IDA_ILL_INPUT The input value maxord is ≤ 0, or larger than its previous value.

Notes The default value is 5. If the input value exceeds 5, the value 5 will be used. Since maxord affects the memory requirements for the internal IDA memory block, its value cannot be increased past its previous value.

IDASetMaxNumSteps

Call `flag = IDASetMaxNumSteps(ida_mem, mxsteps);`

Description The function IDASetMaxNumSteps specifies the maximum number of steps to be taken by the solver in its attempt to reach the next output time.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`mxsteps` (`long int`) maximum allowed number of steps.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

IDA_SUCCESS The optional value has been successfully set.

IDA_MEM_NULL The ida_mem pointer is NULL.

Notes Passing mxsteps $= 0$ results in IDA using the default value (500).

Passing mxsteps < 0 disables the test (*not recommended).*

IDASetInitStep

Call `flag = IDASetInitStep(ida_mem, hin);`

Description The function IDASetInitStep specifies the initial step size.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`hin` (`realtype`) value of the initial step size to be attempted. Pass 0.0 to have IDA use the default value.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

IDA_SUCCESS The optional value has been successfully set.

IDA_MEM_NULL The ida_mem pointer is NULL.

Notes By default, IDA estimates the initial step as the solution of $\|h\dot{y}\|_{\mathrm{WRMS}} = 1/2$, with an added restriction that $|h| \leq .001|$tout - t0$|$.

IDASetMaxStep

Call `flag = IDASetMaxStep(ida_mem, hmax);`

Description The function IDASetMaxStep specifies the maximum absolute value of the step size.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`hmax` (`realtype`) maximum absolute value of the step size.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

IDA_SUCCESS The optional value has been successfully set.

IDA_MEM_NULL The ida_mem pointer is NULL.

IDA_ILL_INPUT Either hmax is not positive or it is smaller than the minimum allowable step.

Notes Pass hmax$= 0$ to obtain the default value ∞.

`IDASetStopTime`

Call `flag = IDASetStopTime(ida_mem, tstop);`

Description The function `IDASetStopTime` specifies the value of the independent variable t past which the solution is not to proceed.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`tstop` (`realtype`) value of the independent variable past which the solution should not proceed.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDA_ILL_INPUT` The value of `tstop` is not beyond the current t value, t_n.

Notes The default, if this routine is not called, is that no stop time is imposed.

`IDASetMaxErrTestFails`

Call `flag = IDASetMaxErrTestFails(ida_mem, maxnef);`

Description The function `IDASetMaxErrTestFails` specifies the maximum number of error test failures in attempting one step.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`maxnef` (`int`) maximum number of error test failures allowed on one step (> 0).

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

Notes The default value is 7.

`IDASetMaxNonlinIters`

Call `flag = IDASetMaxNonlinIters(ida_mem, maxcor);`

Description The function `IDASetMaxNonlinIters` specifies the maximum number of nonlinear solver iterations at one step.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`maxcor` (`int`) maximum number of nonlinear solver iterations allowed on one step (> 0).

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

Notes The default value is 3.

`IDASetMaxConvFails`

Call `flag = IDASetMaxConvFails(ida_mem, maxncf);`

Description The function `IDASetMaxConvFails` specifies the maximum number of nonlinear solver convergence failures at one step.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`maxncf` (`int`) maximum number of allowable nonlinear solver convergence failures on one step (> 0).

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

IDA_SUCCESS The optional value has been successfully set.
IDA_MEM_NULL The ida_mem pointer is NULL.

Notes The default value is 10.

IDASetNonlinConvCoef

Call `flag = IDASetNonlinConvCoef(ida_mem, nlscoef);`

Description The function IDASetNonlinConvCoef specifies the safety factor in the nonlinear convergence test; see Chapter 2, Eq. (2.7).

Arguments ida_mem (void *) pointer to the IDA memory block.
nlscoef (realtype) coefficient in nonlinear convergence test (> 0.0).

Return value The return value flag (of type int) is one of
IDA_SUCCESS The optional value has been successfully set.
IDA_MEM_NULL The ida_mem pointer is NULL.
IDA_ILL_INPUT The value of nlscoef is $<= 0.0$.

Notes The default value is 0.33.

IDASetSuppressAlg

Call `flag = IDASetSuppressAlg(ida_mem, suppressalg);`

Description The function IDASetSuppressAlg indicates whether or not to suppress algebraic variables in the local error test.

Arguments ida_mem (void *) pointer to the IDA memory block.
suppressalg (booleantype) indicates whether to suppress (SUNTRUE) or not (SUNFALSE) the algebraic variables in the local error test.

Return value The return value flag (of type int) is one of
IDA_SUCCESS The optional value has been successfully set.
IDA_MEM_NULL The ida_mem pointer is NULL.

Notes The default value is SUNFALSE.

If suppressalg=SUNTRUE is selected, then the id vector must be set (through IDASetId) to specify the algebraic components.

In general, the use of this option (with suppressalg = SUNTRUE) is *discouraged* when solving DAE systems of index 1, whereas it is generally *encouraged* for systems of index 2 or more. See pp. 146-147 of Ref. [3] for more on this issue.

IDASetId

Call `flag = IDASetId(ida_mem, id);`

Description The function IDASetId specifies algebraic/differential components in the y vector.

Arguments ida_mem (void *) pointer to the IDA memory block.
id (N_Vector) state vector. A value of 1.0 indicates a differential variable, while 0.0 indicates an algebraic variable.

Return value The return value flag (of type int) is one of
IDA_SUCCESS The optional value has been successfully set.
IDA_MEM_NULL The ida_mem pointer is NULL.

Notes The vector id is required if the algebraic variables are to be suppressed from the local error test (see IDASetSuppressAlg) or if IDACalcIC is to be called with icopt = IDA_YA_YDP_INIT (see §4.5.4).

`IDASetConstraints`

Call `flag = IDASetConstraints(ida_mem, constraints);`

Description The function `IDASetConstraints` specifies a vector defining inequality constraints for each component of the solution vector y.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`constraints` (`N_Vector`) vector of constraint flags. If `constraints[i]` is

- 0.0 then no constraint is imposed on y_i.
- 1.0 then y_i will be constrained to be $y_i \geq 0.0$.
- −1.0 then y_i will be constrained to be $y_i \leq 0.0$.
- 2.0 then y_i will be constrained to be $y_i > 0.0$.
- −2.0 then y_i will be constrained to be $y_i < 0.0$.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

- `IDA_SUCCESS` The optional value has been successfully set.
- `IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
- `IDA_ILL_INPUT` The constraints vector contains illegal values.

Notes The presence of a non-`NULL` constraints vector that is not 0.0 in all components will cause constraint checking to be performed. However, a call with 0.0 in all components of `constraints` will result in an illegal input return.

4.5.7.2 Direct linear solver interface optional input functions

The IDADLS solver interface needs a function to compute an approximation to the Jacobian matrix $J(t, y, \dot{y})$. This function must be of type `IDADlsJacFn`. The user can supply a Jacobian function, or if using a dense or banded matrix J can use the default internal difference quotient approximation that comes with the IDADLS solver. To specify a user-supplied Jacobian function `jac`, IDADLS provides the function `IDADlsSetJacFn`. The IDADLS interface passes the pointer `user_data` to the Jacobian function. This allows the user to create an arbitrary structure with relevant problem data and access it during the execution of the user-supplied Jacobian function, without using global data in the program. The pointer `user_data` may be specified through `IDASetUserData`.

`IDADlsSetJacFn`

Call `flag = IDADlsSetJacFn(ida_mem, jac);`

Description The function `IDADlsSetJacFn` specifies the Jacobian approximation function to be used.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`jac` (`IDADlsJacFn`) user-defined Jacobian approximation function.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

- `IDADLS_SUCCESS` The optional value has been successfully set.
- `IDADLS_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
- `IDADLS_LMEM_NULL` The IDADLS linear solver interface has not been initialized.

Notes By default, IDADLS uses an internal difference quotient function for dense and band matrices. If `NULL` is passed to `jac`, this default function is used. An error will occur if no `jac` is supplied when using a sparse matrix.

The function type `IDADlsJacFn` is described in §4.6.5.

4.5.7.3 Iterative linear solver interface optional input functions

If the user will be doing preconditioning with the IDASPILS linear solver interface, then the user must supply a preconditioner solve function `psolve` and specify its name through a call to the routine `IDASpilsSetPreconditioner`. The evaluation and preprocessing of any Jacobian-related data needed by the user's preconditioner solve function is done in the optional user-supplied function `psetup`. Both of these functions are fully specified in §4.6. If used, the name of the `psetup` function should be specified in the call to `IDASpilsSetPreconditioner`.

The pointer `user_data` received through `IDASetUserData` (or a pointer to `NULL` if `user_data` was not specified) is passed to the preconditioner `psetup` and `psolve` functions. This allows the user to create an arbitrary structure with relevant problem data and access it during the execution of the user-supplied preconditioner functions without using global data in the program.

The IDASPILS solver interface requires a function to compute an approximation to the product between the Jacobian matrix $J(t, y)$ and a vector v. The user can supply his/her own Jacobian-times-vector approximation function, or use the default internal difference quotient function that comes with the IDASPILS solver interface. A user-defined Jacobian-vector function must be of type `IDASpilsJacTimesVecFn` and can be specified through a call to `IDASpilsSetJacTimes` (see §4.6.6 for specification details). As with the user-supplied preconditioner functions, the evaluation and processing of any Jacobian-related data needed by the user's Jacobian-times-vector function is done in the optional user-supplied function `jtsetup` (see §4.6.7 for specification details). As with the preconditioner functions, a pointer to the user-defined data structure, `user_data`, specified through `IDASetUserData` (or a `NULL` pointer otherwise) is passed to the Jacobian-times-vector setup and product functions, `jtsetup` and `jtimes`, each time they are called.

Finally, as described in Section 2.1, the IDASPILS interface requires that iterative linear solvers stop when the norm of the preconditioned residual is less than $0.05 \cdot (0.1\epsilon)$, where ϵ is the nonlinear solver tolerance. The user may adjust this linear solver tolerance by calling the function `IDASpilsSetEpsLin`.

`IDASpilsSetPreconditioner`

Call `flag = IDASpilsSetPreconditioner(ida_mem, psetup, psolve);`

Description The function `IDASpilsSetPreconditioner` specifies the preconditioner setup and solve functions.

Arguments
- `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
- `psetup` (`IDASpilsPrecSetupFn`) user-defined function to set up the preconditioner. Pass `NULL` if no setup is necessary.
- `psolve` (`IDASpilsPrecSolveFn`) user-defined preconditioner solve function.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
- `IDASPILS_SUCCESS` The optional values have been successfully set.
- `IDASPILS_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
- `IDASPILS_LMEM_NULL` The IDASPILS linear solver has not been initialized.
- `IDASPILS_SUNLS_FAIL` An error occurred when setting up preconditioning in the SUNLINSOL object used by the IDASPILS interface.

Notes The function type `IDASpilsPrecSolveFn` is described in §4.6.8. The function type `IDASpilsPrecSetupFn` is described in §4.6.9.

`IDASpilsSetJacTimes`

Call `flag = IDASpilsSetJacTimes(ida_mem, jsetup, jtimes);`

Description The function `IDASpilsSetJacTimes` specifies the Jacobian-vector setup and product.

Arguments
- `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
- `jtsetup` (`IDASpilsJacTimesSetupFn`) user-defined function to set up the Jacobian-vector product. Pass `NULL` if no setup is necessary.

`jtimes` (`IDASpilsJacTimesVecFn`) user-defined Jacobian-vector product function.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDASPILS_SUCCESS`	The optional value has been successfully set.
`IDASPILS_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDASPILS_LMEM_NULL`	The IDASPILS linear solver has not been initialized.
`IDASPILS_SUNLS_FAIL`	An error occurred when setting up the system matrix-times-vector routines in the SUNLINSOL object used by the IDASPILS interface.

Notes By default, the IDASPILS solvers use the difference quotient function. If `NULL` is passed to `jtimes`, this default function is used.

The function type `IDASpilsJacTimesSetupFn` is described in §4.6.7.

The function type `IDASpilsJacTimesVecFn` is described in §4.6.6.

`IDASpilsSetEpsLin`

Call `flag = IDASpilsSetEpsLin(ida_mem, eplifac);`

Description The function `IDASpilsSetEpsLin` specifies the factor by which the Krylov linear solver's convergence test constant is reduced from the Newton iteration test constant.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`eplifac` (`realtype`) linear convergence safety factor (≥ 0.0).

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDASPILS_SUCCESS`	The optional value has been successfully set.
`IDASPILS_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDASPILS_LMEM_NULL`	The IDASPILS linear solver has not been initialized.
`IDASPILS_ILL_INPUT`	The factor `eplifac` is negative.

Notes The default value is 0.05.

If `eplifac`$= 0.0$ is passed, the default value is used.

4.5.7.4 Initial condition calculation optional input functions

The following functions can be called just prior to calling `IDACalcIC` to set optional inputs controlling the initial condition calculation.

`IDASetNonlinConvCoefIC`

Call `flag = IDASetNonlinConvCoefIC(ida_mem, epiccon);`

Description The function `IDASetNonlinConvCoefIC` specifies the positive constant in the Newton iteration convergence test within the initial condition calculation.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`epiccon` (`realtype`) coefficient in the Newton convergence test (> 0).

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS`	The optional value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDA_ILL_INPUT`	The `epiccon` factor is $<= 0.0$.

Notes The default value is $0.01 \cdot 0.33$.

This test uses a weighted RMS norm (with weights defined by the tolerances). For new initial value vectors y and $\dot{y}$ to be accepted, the norm of $J^{-1}F(t_0, y, \dot{y})$ must be $\leq$ `epiccon`, where J is the system Jacobian.

`IDASetMaxNumStepsIC`

Call `flag = IDASetMaxNumStepsIC(ida_mem, maxnh);`

Description The function `IDASetMaxNumStepsIC` specifies the maximum number of steps allowed when `icopt=IDA_YA_YDP_INIT` in `IDACalcIC`, where h appears in the system Jacobian, $J = \partial F/\partial y + (1/h)\partial F/\partial \dot{y}$.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`maxnh` (`int`) maximum allowed number of values for h.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDA_ILL_INPUT` `maxnh` is non-positive.

Notes The default value is 5.

`IDASetMaxNumJacsIC`

Call `flag = IDASetMaxNumJacsIC(ida_mem, maxnj);`

Description The function `IDASetMaxNumJacsIC` specifies the maximum number of the approximate Jacobian or preconditioner evaluations allowed when the Newton iteration appears to be slowly converging.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`maxnj` (`int`) maximum allowed number of Jacobian or preconditioner evaluations.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDA_ILL_INPUT` `maxnj` is non-positive.

Notes The default value is 4.

`IDASetMaxNumItersIC`

Call `flag = IDASetMaxNumItersIC(ida_mem, maxnit);`

Description The function `IDASetMaxNumItersIC` specifies the maximum number of Newton iterations allowed in any one attempt to solve the initial conditions calculation problem.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`maxnit` (`int`) maximum number of Newton iterations.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDA_ILL_INPUT` `maxnit` is non-positive.

Notes The default value is 10.

`IDASetMaxBacksIC`

Call `flag = IDASetMaxBacksIC(ida_mem, maxbacks);`

Description The function `IDASetMaxBacksIC` specifies the maximum number of linesearch backtracks allowed in any Newton iteration, when solving the initial conditions calculation problem.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`maxbacks` (`int`) maximum number of linesearch backtracks per Newton step.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional value has been successfully set.

`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDA_ILL_INPUT` `maxbacks` is non-positive.

Notes The default value is 100.

`IDASetLineSearchOffIC`

Call `flag = IDASetLineSearchOffIC(ida_mem, lsoff);`

Description The function `IDASetLineSearchOffIC` specifies whether to turn on or off the linesearch algorithm.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`lsoff` (`booleantype`) a flag to turn off (`SUNTRUE`) or keep (`SUNFALSE`) the linesearch algorithm.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional value has been successfully set.

`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

Notes The default value is `SUNFALSE`.

`IDASetStepToleranceIC`

Call `flag = IDASetStepToleranceIC(ida_mem, steptol);`

Description The function `IDASetStepToleranceIC` specifies a positive lower bound on the Newton step.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`steptol` (`int`) Minimum allowed WRMS-norm of the Newton step (> 0.0).

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional value has been successfully set.

`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDA_ILL_INPUT` The `steptol` tolerance is $<= 0.0$.

Notes The default value is (unit roundoff)$^{2/3}$.

4.5.7.5 Rootfinding optional input functions

The following functions can be called to set optional inputs to control the rootfinding algorithm.

`IDASetRootDirection`

Call `flag = IDASetRootDirection(ida_mem, rootdir);`

Description The function `IDASetRootDirection` specifies the direction of zero-crossings to be located and returned to the user.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`rootdir` (`int *`) state array of length `nrtfn`, the number of root functions g_i, as specified in the call to the function `IDARootInit`. A value of 0 for `rootdir[i]` indicates that crossing in either direction should be reported for g_i. A value of $+1$ or -1 indicates that the solver should report only zero-crossings where g_i is increasing or decreasing, respectively.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS`	The optional value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDA_ILL_INPUT`	rootfinding has not been activated through a call to `IDARootInit`.

Notes The default behavior is to locate both zero-crossing directions.

`IDASetNoInactiveRootWarn`

Call `flag = IDASetNoInactiveRootWarn(ida_mem);`

Description The function `IDASetNoInactiveRootWarn` disables issuing a warning if some root function appears to be identically zero at the beginning of the integration.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS`	The optional value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

Notes IDA will not report the initial conditions as a possible zero-crossing (assuming that one or more components g_i are zero at the initial time). However, if it appears that some g_i is identically zero at the initial time (i.e., g_i is zero at the initial time and after the first step), IDA will issue a warning which can be disabled with this optional input function.

4.5.8 Interpolated output function

An optional function `IDAGetDky` is available to obtain additional output values. This function must be called after a successful return from `IDASolve` and provides interpolated values of y or its derivatives of order up to the last internal order used for any value of t in the last internal step taken by IDA.

The call to the `IDAGetDky` function has the following form:

`IDAGetDky`

Call `flag = IDAGetDky(ida_mem, t, k, dky);`

Description The function `IDAGetDky` computes the interpolated values of the k^{th} derivative of y for any value of t in the last internal step taken by IDA. The value of k must be non-negative and smaller than the last internal order used. A value of 0 for k means that the y is interpolated. The value of t must satisfy $t_n - h_u \leq t \leq t_n$, where t_n denotes the current internal time reached, and h_u is the last internal step size used successfully.

Arguments

`ida_mem`	(`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`t`	(`realtype`) time at which to interpolate.
`k`	(`int`) integer specifying the order of the derivative of y wanted.
`dky`	(`N_Vector`) vector containing the interpolated k^{th} derivative of $y(t)$.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS`	`IDAGetDky` succeeded.
`IDA_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` argument was `NULL`.
`IDA_BAD_T`	`t` is not in the interval $[t_n - h_u, t_n]$.
`IDA_BAD_K`	`k` is not one of $\{0, 1, \ldots, klast\}$.
`IDA_BAD_DKY`	`dky` is `NULL`.

Notes It is only legal to call the function `IDAGetDky` after a successful return from `IDASolve`. Functions `IDAGetCurrentTime`, `IDAGetLastStep` and `IDAGetLastOrder` (see §4.5.9.2) can be used to access t_n, h_u and $klast$.

4.5.9 Optional output functions

IDA provides an extensive list of functions that can be used to obtain solver performance information. Table 4.3 lists all optional output functions in IDA, which are then described in detail in the remainder of this section.

Some of the optional outputs, especially the various counters, can be very useful in determining how successful the IDA solver is in doing its job. For example, the counters `nsteps` and `nrevals` provide a rough measure of the overall cost of a given run, and can be compared among runs with differing input options to suggest which set of options is most efficient. The ratio `nniters/nsteps` measures the performance of the Newton iteration in solving the nonlinear systems at each time step; typical values for this range from 1.1 to 1.8. The ratio `njevals/nniters` (in the case of a direct linear solver), and the ratio `npevals/nniters` (in the case of an iterative linear solver) measure the overall degree of nonlinearity in these systems, and also the quality of the approximate Jacobian or preconditioner being used. Thus, for example, `njevals/nniters` can indicate if a user-supplied Jacobian is inaccurate, if this ratio is larger than for the case of the corresponding internal Jacobian. The ratio `nliters/nniters` measures the performance of the Krylov iterative linear solver, and thus (indirectly) the quality of the preconditioner.

4.5.9.1 SUNDIALS version information

The following functions provide a way to get SUNDIALS version information at runtime.

`SUNDIALSGetVersion`

Call `flag = SUNDIALSGetVersion(version, len);`

Description The function `SUNDIALSGetVersion` fills a character array with SUNDIALS version information.

Arguments
- `version` (`char *`) character array to hold the SUNDIALS version information.
- `len` (`int`) allocated length of the `version` character array.

Return value If successful, `SUNDIALSGetVersion` returns 0 and `version` contains the SUNDIALS version information. Otherwise, it returns -1 and `version` is not set (the input character array is too short).

Notes A string of 25 characters should be sufficient to hold the version information. Any trailing characters in the `version` array are removed.

`SUNDIALSGetVersionNumber`

Call `flag = SUNDIALSGetVersionNumber(&major, &minor, &patch, label, len);`

Description The function `SUNDIALSGetVersionNumber` set integers for the SUNDIALS major, minor, and patch release numbers and fills a character array with the release label if applicable.

Arguments
- `major` (`int`) SUNDIALS release major version number.
- `minor` (`int`) SUNDIALS release minor version number.
- `patch` (`int`) SUNDIALS release patch version number.
- `label` (`char *`) character array to hold the SUNDIALS release label.
- `len` (`int`) allocated length of the `label` character array.

Return value If successful, `SUNDIALSGetVersionNumber` returns 0 and the `major`, `minor`, `patch`, and `label` values are set. Otherwise, it returns -1 and the values are not set (the input character array is too short).

Notes A string of 10 characters should be sufficient to hold the label information. If a label is not used in the release version, no information is copied to `label`. Any trailing characters in the `label` array are removed.

Table 4.3: Optional outputs from IDA, IDADLS, and IDASPILS

Optional output	Function name
IDA main solver	
Size of IDA real and integer workspace	IDAGetWorkSpace
Cumulative number of internal steps	IDAGetNumSteps
No. of calls to residual function	IDAGetNumResEvals
No. of calls to linear solver setup function	IDAGetNumLinSolvSetups
No. of local error test failures that have occurred	IDAGetNumErrTestFails
Order used during the last step	IDAGetLastOrder
Order to be attempted on the next step	IDAGetCurrentOrder
Order reductions due to stability limit detection	IDAGetNumStabLimOrderReds
Actual initial step size used	IDAGetActualInitStep
Step size used for the last step	IDAGetLastStep
Step size to be attempted on the next step	IDAGetCurrentStep
Current internal time reached by the solver	IDAGetCurrentTime
Suggested factor for tolerance scaling	IDAGetTolScaleFactor
Error weight vector for state variables	IDAGetErrWeights
Estimated local errors	IDAGetEstLocalErrors
No. of nonlinear solver iterations	IDAGetNumNonlinSolvIters
No. of nonlinear convergence failures	IDAGetNumNonlinSolvConvFails
Array showing roots found	IDAGetRootInfo
No. of calls to user root function	IDAGetNumGEvals
Name of constant associated with a return flag	IDAGetReturnFlagName
IDA initial conditions calculation	
Number of backtrack operations	IDAGetNumBacktrackops
Corrected initial conditions	IDAGetConsistentIC
IDADLS linear solver interface	
Size of real and integer workspace	IDADlsGetWorkSpace
No. of Jacobian evaluations	IDADlsGetNumJacEvals
No. of residual calls for finite diff. Jacobian evals.	IDADlsGetNumResEvals
Last return from a linear solver function	IDADlsGetLastFlag
Name of constant associated with a return flag	IDADlsGetReturnFlagName
IDASPILS linear solver interface	
Size of real and integer workspace	IDASpilsGetWorkSpace
No. of linear iterations	IDASpilsGetNumLinIters
No. of linear convergence failures	IDASpilsGetNumConvFails
No. of preconditioner evaluations	IDASpilsGetNumPrecEvals
No. of preconditioner solves	IDASpilsGetNumPrecSolves
No. of Jacobian-vector setup evaluations	IDASpilsGetNumJTSetupEvals
No. of Jacobian-vector product evaluations	IDASpilsGetNumJtimesEvals
No. of residual calls for finite diff. Jacobian-vector evals.	IDASpilsGetNumResEvals
Last return from a linear solver function	IDASpilsGetLastFlag
Name of constant associated with a return flag	IDASpilsGetReturnFlagName

4.5.9.2 Main solver optional output functions

IDA provides several user-callable functions that can be used to obtain different quantities that may be of interest to the user, such as solver workspace requirements, solver performance statistics, as well as additional data from the IDA memory block (a suggested tolerance scaling factor, the error weight vector, and the vector of estimated local errors). Also provided are functions to extract statistics related to the performance of the IDA nonlinear solver being used. As a convenience, additional extraction functions provide the optional outputs in groups. These optional output functions are described next.

`IDAGetWorkSpace`

Call `flag = IDAGetWorkSpace(ida_mem, &lenrw, &leniw);`

Description The function `IDAGetWorkSpace` returns the IDA real and integer workspace sizes.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`lenrw` (`long int`) number of real values in the IDA workspace.
`leniw` (`long int`) number of integer values in the IDA workspace.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

Notes In terms of the problem size N, the maximum method order `maxord`, and the number `nrtfn` of root functions (see §4.5.5), the actual size of the real workspace, in `realtype` words, is given by the following:

- base value: `lenrw` $= 55 + (m + 6) * N_r + 3*$`nrtfn`;
- with `IDASVtolerances`: `lenrw` $=$ `lenrw` $+N_r$;
- with constraint checking (see `IDASetConstraints`): `lenrw` $=$ `lenrw` $+N_r$;
- with `id` specified (see `IDASetId`): `lenrw` $=$ `lenrw` $+N_r$;

where $m = \max($`maxord`$, 3)$, and N_r is the number of real words in one `N_Vector` ($\approx N$).

The size of the integer workspace (without distinction between `int` and `long int` words) is given by:

- base value: `leniw` $= 38 + (m + 6) * N_i$ $+$ `nrtfn`;
- with `IDASVtolerances`: `leniw` $=$ `leniw` $+N_i$;
- with constraint checking: `lenrw` $=$ `lenrw` $+N_i$;
- with `id` specified: `lenrw` $=$ `lenrw` $+N_i$;

where N_i is the number of integer words in one `N_Vector` ($= 1$ for NVECTOR_SERIAL and 2*`npes` for NVECTOR_PARALLEL on `npes` processors).

For the default value of `maxord`, with no rootfinding, no `id`, no constraints, and with no call to `IDASVtolerances`, these lengths are given roughly by: `lenrw` $= 55 + 11N$, `leniw` $= 49$.

`IDAGetNumSteps`

Call `flag = IDAGetNumSteps(ida_mem, &nsteps);`

Description The function `IDAGetNumSteps` returns the cumulative number of internal steps taken by the solver (total so far).

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`nsteps` (`long int`) number of steps taken by IDA.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.

`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDAGetNumResEvals`

Call `flag = IDAGetNumResEvals(ida_mem, &nrevals);`

Description The function `IDAGetNumResEvals` returns the number of calls to the user's residual evaluation function.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`nrevals` (`long int`) number of calls to the user's `res` function.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.

`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

Notes The `nrevals` value returned by `IDAGetNumResEvals` does not account for calls made to `res` from a linear solver or preconditioner module.

`IDAGetNumLinSolvSetups`

Call `flag = IDAGetNumLinSolvSetups(ida_mem, &nlinsetups);`

Description The function `IDAGetNumLinSolvSetups` returns the cumulative number of calls made to the linear solver's setup function (total so far).

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`nlinsetups` (`long int`) number of calls made to the linear solver setup function.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.

`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDAGetNumErrTestFails`

Call `flag = IDAGetNumErrTestFails(ida_mem, &netfails);`

Description The function `IDAGetNumErrTestFails` returns the cumulative number of local error test failures that have occurred (total so far).

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`netfails` (`long int`) number of error test failures.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.

`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDAGetLastOrder`

Call `flag = IDAGetLastOrder(ida_mem, &klast);`

Description The function `IDAGetLastOrder` returns the integration method order used during the last internal step.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`klast` (`int`) method order used on the last internal step.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.

`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDAGetCurrentOrder`

Call `flag = IDAGetCurrentOrder(ida_mem, &kcur);`

Description The function `IDAGetCurrentOrder` returns the integration method order to be used on the next internal step.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`kcur` (`int`) method order to be used on the next internal step.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDAGetLastStep`

Call `flag = IDAGetLastStep(ida_mem, &hlast);`

Description The function `IDAGetLastStep` returns the integration step size taken on the last internal step.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`hlast` (`realtype`) step size taken on the last internal step by IDA, or last artificial step size used in `IDACalcIC`, whichever was called last.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDAGetCurrentStep`

Call `flag = IDAGetCurrentStep(ida_mem, &hcur);`

Description The function `IDAGetCurrentStep` returns the integration step size to be attempted on the next internal step.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`hcur` (`realtype`) step size to be attempted on the next internal step.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDAGetActualInitStep`

Call `flag = IDAGetActualInitStep(ida_mem, &hinused);`

Description The function `IDAGetActualInitStep` returns the value of the integration step size used on the first step.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`hinused` (`realtype`) actual value of initial step size.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

Notes Even if the value of the initial integration step size was specified by the user through a call to `IDASetInitStep`, this value might have been changed by IDA to ensure that the step size is within the prescribed bounds ($h_{\min} \le h_0 \le h_{\max}$), or to meet the local error test.

`IDAGetCurrentTime`

Call `flag = IDAGetCurrentTime(ida_mem, &tcur);`

Description The function `IDAGetCurrentTime` returns the current internal time reached by the solver.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`tcur` (`realtype`) current internal time reached.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDAGetTolScaleFactor`

Call `flag = IDAGetTolScaleFactor(ida_mem, &tolsfac);`

Description The function `IDAGetTolScaleFactor` returns a suggested factor by which the user's tolerances should be scaled when too much accuracy has been requested for some internal step.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`tolsfac` (`realtype`) suggested scaling factor for user tolerances.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDAGetErrWeights`

Call `flag = IDAGetErrWeights(ida_mem, eweight);`

Description The function `IDAGetErrWeights` returns the solution error weights at the current time. These are the W_i given by Eq. (2.6) (or by the user's `IDAEwtFn`).

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`eweight` (`N_Vector`) solution error weights at the current time.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

Notes The user must allocate space for `eweight`.

`IDAGetEstLocalErrors`

Call `flag = IDAGetEstLocalErrors(ida_mem, ele);`

Description The function `IDAGetEstLocalErrors` returns the estimated local errors.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`ele` (`N_Vector`) estimated local errors at the current time.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

Notes The user must allocate space for `ele`.
The values returned in `ele` are only valid if `IDASolve` returned a non-negative value.

The `ele` vector, togther with the `eweight` vector from `IDAGetErrWeights`, can be used to determine how the various components of the system contributed to the estimated

local error test. Specifically, that error test uses the RMS norm of a vector whose components are the products of the components of these two vectors. Thus, for example, if there were recent error test failures, the components causing the failures are those with largest values for the products, denoted loosely as `eweight[i]*ele[i]`.

`IDAGetIntegratorStats`

Call
```
flag = IDAGetIntegratorStats(ida_mem, &nsteps, &nrevals, &nlinsetups,
                             &netfails, &klast, &kcur, &hinused,
                             &hlast, &hcur, &tcur);
```

Description The function `IDAGetIntegratorStats` returns the IDA integrator statistics as a group.

Arguments
- `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
- `nsteps` (`long int`) cumulative number of steps taken by IDA.
- `nrevals` (`long int`) cumulative number of calls to the user's `res` function.
- `nlinsetups` (`long int`) cumulative number of calls made to the linear solver setup function.
- `netfails` (`long int`) cumulative number of error test failures.
- `klast` (`int`) method order used on the last internal step.
- `kcur` (`int`) method order to be used on the next internal step.
- `hinused` (`realtype`) actual value of initial step size.
- `hlast` (`realtype`) step size taken on the last internal step.
- `hcur` (`realtype`) step size to be attempted on the next internal step.
- `tcur` (`realtype`) current internal time reached.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
- `IDA_SUCCESS` the optional output values have been successfully set.
- `IDA_MEM_NULL` the `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDAGetNumNonlinSolvIters`

Call
```
flag = IDAGetNumNonlinSolvIters(ida_mem, &nniters);
```

Description The function `IDAGetNumNonlinSolvIters` returns the cumulative number of nonlinear (functional or Newton) iterations performed.

Arguments
- `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
- `nniters` (`long int`) number of nonlinear iterations performed.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
- `IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.
- `IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDAGetNumNonlinSolvConvFails`

Call
```
flag = IDAGetNumNonlinSolvConvFails(ida_mem, &nncfails);
```

Description The function `IDAGetNumNonlinSolvConvFails` returns the cumulative number of nonlinear convergence failures that have occurred.

Arguments
- `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
- `nncfails` (`long int`) number of nonlinear convergence failures.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
- `IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.
- `IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDAGetNonlinSolvStats`

Call `flag = IDAGetNonlinSolvStats(ida_mem, &nniters, &nncfails);`

Description The function `IDAGetNonlinSolvStats` returns the IDA nonlinear solver statistics as a group.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`nniters` (`long int`) cumulative number of nonlinear iterations performed.
`nncfails` (`long int`) cumulative number of nonlinear convergence failures.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDAGetReturnFlagName`

Call `name = IDAGetReturnFlagName(flag);`

Description The function `IDAGetReturnFlagName` returns the name of the IDA constant corresponding to `flag`.

Arguments The only argument, of type `int`, is a return flag from an IDA function.

Return value The return value is a string containing the name of the corresponding constant.

4.5.9.3 Initial condition calculation optional output functions

`IDAGetNumBcktrackOps`

Call `flag = IDAGetNumBacktrackOps(ida_mem, &nbacktr);`

Description The function `IDAGetNumBacktrackOps` returns the number of backtrack operations done in the linesearch algorithm in `IDACalcIC`.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`nbacktr` (`long int`) the cumulative number of backtrack operations.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

`IDAGetConsistentIC`

Call `flag = IDAGetConsistentIC(ida_mem, yy0_mod, yp0_mod);`

Description The function `IDAGetConsistentIC` returns the corrected initial conditions calculated by `IDACalcIC`.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`yy0_mod` (`N_Vector`) consistent solution vector.
`yp0_mod` (`N_Vector`) consistent derivative vector.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDA_ILL_INPUT` The function was not called before the first call to `IDASolve`.
`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

Notes If the consistent solution vector or consistent derivative vector is not desired, pass `NULL` for the corresponding argument.

The user must allocate space for `yy0_mod` and `yp0_mod` (if not `NULL`).

4.5.9.4 Rootfinding optional output functions

There are two optional output functions associated with rootfinding.

`IDAGetRootInfo`

Call `flag = IDAGetRootInfo(ida_mem, rootsfound);`

Description The function `IDAGetRootInfo` returns an array showing which functions were found to have a root.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`rootsfound` (`int *`) array of length `nrtfn` with the indices of the user functions g_i found to have a root. For $i = 0, \ldots,$`nrtfn` -1, `rootsfound`$[i] \neq 0$ if g_i has a root, and $= 0$ if not.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output values have been successfully set.

`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

Notes Note that, for the components g_i for which a root was found, the sign of `rootsfound`$[i]$ indicates the direction of zero-crossing. A value of $+1$ indicates that g_i is increasing, while a value of -1 indicates a decreasing g_i.

The user must allocate memory for the vector `rootsfound`.

`IDAGetNumGEvals`

Call `flag = IDAGetNumGEvals(ida_mem, &ngevals);`

Description The function `IDAGetNumGEvals` returns the cumulative number of calls to the user root function g.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`ngevals` (`long int`) number of calls to the user's function `g` so far.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDA_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.

`IDA_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.

4.5.9.5 Direct linear solver interface optional output functions

The following optional outputs are available from the IDADLS modules: workspace requirements, number of calls to the Jacobian routine, number of calls to the residual routine for finite-difference Jacobian approximation, and last return value from an IDADLS function. Note that, where the name of an output would otherwise conflict with the name of an optional output from the main solver, a suffix `LS` (for Linear Solver) has been added (e.g. `lenrwLS`).

`IDADlsGetWorkSpace`

Call `flag = IDADlsGetWorkSpace(ida_mem, &lenrwLS, &leniwLS);`

Description The function `IDADlsGetWorkSpace` returns the sizes of the real and integer workspaces used by the IDADLS linear solver interface.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.

`lenrwLS` (`long int`) the number of real values in the IDADLS workspace.

`leniwLS` (`long int`) the number of integer values in the IDADLS workspace.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDADLS_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.

IDADLS_MEM_NULL The ida_mem pointer is NULL.

IDADLS_LMEM_NULL The IDADLS linear solver has not been initialized.

Notes The workspace requirements reported by this routine correspond only to memory allocated within this interface and to memory allocated by the SUNLINSOL object attached to it. The template Jacobian matrix allocated by the user outside of IDADLS is not included in this report.

IDADlsGetNumJacEvals

Call `flag = IDADlsGetNumJacEvals(ida_mem, &njevals);`

Description The function IDADlsGetNumJacEvals returns the cumulative number of calls to the IDADLS Jacobian approximation function.

Arguments ida_mem (void *) pointer to the IDA memory block.

njevals (long int) the cumulative number of calls to the Jacobian function (total so far).

Return value The return value flag (of type int) is one of

IDADLS_SUCCESS The optional output value has been successfully set.

IDADLS_MEM_NULL The ida_mem pointer is NULL.

IDADLS_LMEM_NULL The IDADENSE linear solver has not been initialized.

IDADlsGetNumResEvals

Call `flag = IDADlsGetNumResEvals(ida_mem, &nrevalsLS);`

Description The function IDADlsGetNumResEvals returns the cumulative number of calls to the user residual function due to the finite difference Jacobian approximation.

Arguments ida_mem (void *) pointer to the IDA memory block.

nrevalsLS (long int) the cumulative number of calls to the user residual function.

Return value The return value flag (of type int) is one of

IDADLS_SUCCESS The optional output value has been successfully set.

IDADLS_MEM_NULL The ida_mem pointer is NULL.

IDADLS_LMEM_NULL The IDADENSE linear solver has not been initialized.

Notes The value nrevalsLS is incremented only if one of the default internal difference quotient functions (dense or banded) is used.

IDADlsGetLastFlag

Call `flag = IDADlsGetLastFlag(ida_mem, &lsflag);`

Description The function IDADlsGetLastFlag returns the last return value from an IDADLS routine.

Arguments ida_mem (void *) pointer to the IDA memory block.

lsflag (long int) the value of the last return flag from an IDADLS function.

Return value The return value flag (of type int) is one of

IDADLS_SUCCESS The optional output value has been successfully set.

IDADLS_MEM_NULL The ida_mem pointer is NULL.

IDADLS_LMEM_NULL The IDADENSE linear solver has not been initialized.

Notes If the SUNLINSOL_DENSE or SUNLINSOL_BAND setup function failed (IDASolve returned IDA_LSETUP_FAIL), then the value of lsflag is equal to the column index (numbered from one) at which a zero diagonal element was encountered during the LU factorization of the (dense or banded) Jacobian matrix.

`IDADlsGetReturnFlagName`

Call `name = IDADlsGetReturnFlagName(lsflag);`

Description The function `IDADlsGetReturnFlagName` returns the name of the IDADLS constant corresponding to `lsflag`.

Arguments The only argument, of type `long int`, is a return flag from an IDADLS function.

Return value The return value is a string containing the name of the corresponding constant. If $1 \leq$ `lsflag` $\leq N$ (LU factorization failed), this function returns "NONE".

4.5.9.6 Iterative linear solver interface optional output functions

The following optional outputs are available from the IDASPILS modules: workspace requirements, number of linear iterations, number of linear convergence failures, number of calls to the preconditioner setup and solve routines, number of calls to the Jacobian-vector setup and product routines, number of calls to the residual routine for finite-difference Jacobian-vector product approximation, and last return value from a linear solver function. Note that, where the name of an output would otherwise conflict with the name of an optional output from the main solver, a suffix `LS` (for Linear Solver) has been added (e.g. `lenrwLS`).

`IDASpilsGetWorkSpace`

Call `flag = IDASpilsGetWorkSpace(ida_mem, &lenrwLS, &leniwLS);`

Description The function `IDASpilsGetWorkSpace` returns the global sizes of the IDASPILS real and integer workspaces.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`lenrwLS` (`long int`) the number of `realtype` values in the IDASPILS workspace.
`leniwLS` (`long int`) the number of integer values in the IDASPILS workspace.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDASPILS_SUCCESS`	The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDASPILS_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDASPILS_LMEM_NULL`	The IDASPILS linear solver has not been initialized.

Notes The workspace requirements reported by this routine correspond only to memory allocated within this interface and to memory allocated by the SUNLINSOL object attached to it.

In a parallel setting, the above values are global (i.e., summed over all processors).

`IDASpilsGetNumLinIters`

Call `flag = IDASpilsGetNumLinIters(ida_mem, &nliters);`

Description The function `IDASpilsGetNumLinIters` returns the cumulative number of linear iterations.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`nliters` (`long int`) the current number of linear iterations.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDASPILS_SUCCESS`	The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDASPILS_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDASPILS_LMEM_NULL`	The IDASPILS linear solver has not been initialized.

IDASpilsGetNumConvFails

Call `flag = IDASpilsGetNumConvFails(ida_mem, &nlcfails);`

Description The function `IDASpilsGetNumConvFails` returns the cumulative number of linear convergence failures.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`nlcfails` (`long int`) the current number of linear convergence failures.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDASPILS_SUCCESS`	The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDASPILS_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDASPILS_LMEM_NULL`	The IDASPILS linear solver has not been initialized.

IDASpilsGetNumPrecEvals

Call `flag = IDASpilsGetNumPrecEvals(ida_mem, &npevals);`

Description The function `IDASpilsGetNumPrecEvals` returns the cumulative number of preconditioner evaluations, i.e., the number of calls made to `psetup`.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`npevals` (`long int`) the cumulative number of calls to `psetup`.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDASPILS_SUCCESS`	The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDASPILS_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDASPILS_LMEM_NULL`	The IDASPILS linear solver has not been initialized.

IDASpilsGetNumPrecSolves

Call `flag = IDASpilsGetNumPrecSolves(ida_mem, &npsolves);`

Description The function `IDASpilsGetNumPrecSolves` returns the cumulative number of calls made to the preconditioner solve function, `psolve`.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`npsolves` (`long int`) the cumulative number of calls to `psolve`.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDASPILS_SUCCESS`	The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDASPILS_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDASPILS_LMEM_NULL`	The IDASPILS linear solver has not been initialized.

IDASpilsGetNumJTSetupEvals

Call `flag = IDASpilsGetNumJTSetupEvals(ida_mem, &njtsetup);`

Description The function `IDASpilsGetNumJTSetupEvals` returns the cumulative number of calls made to the Jacobian-vector setup function `jtsetup`.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`njtsetup` (`long int`) the current number of calls to `jtsetup`.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDASPILS_SUCCESS`	The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDASPILS_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDASPILS_LMEM_NULL`	The IDASPILS linear solver has not been initialized.

`IDASpilsGetNumJtimesEvals`

Call `flag = IDASpilsGetNumJtimesEvals(ida_mem, &njvevals);`

Description The function `IDASpilsGetNumJtimesEvals` returns the cumulative number of calls made to the Jacobian-vector function, `jtimes`.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`njvevals` (`long int`) the cumulative number of calls to `jtimes`.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDASPILS_SUCCESS`	The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDASPILS_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDASPILS_LMEM_NULL`	The IDASPILS linear solver has not been initialized.

`IDASpilsGetNumResEvals`

Call `flag = IDASpilsGetNumResEvals(ida_mem, &nrevalsLS);`

Description The function `IDASpilsGetNumResEvals` returns the cumulative number of calls to the user residual function for finite difference Jacobian-vector product approximation.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`nrevalsLS` (`long int`) the cumulative number of calls to the user residual function.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDASPILS_SUCCESS`	The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDASPILS_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDASPILS_LMEM_NULL`	The IDASPILS linear solver has not been initialized.

Notes The value `nrevalsLS` is incremented only if the default `IDASpilsDQJtimes` difference quotient function is used.

`IDASpilsGetLastFlag`

Call `flag = IDASpilsGetLastFlag(ida_mem, &lsflag);`

Description The function `IDASpilsGetLastFlag` returns the last return value from an IDASPILS routine.

Arguments `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`lsflag` (`long int`) the value of the last return flag from an IDASPILS function.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDASPILS_SUCCESS`	The optional output value has been successfully set.
`IDASPILS_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` pointer is `NULL`.
`IDASPILS_LMEM_NULL`	The IDASPILS linear solver has not been initialized.

Notes If the IDASPILS setup function failed (`IDASolve` returned `IDA_LSETUP_FAIL`), `lsflag` will be `SUNLS_PSET_FAIL_UNREC`, `SUNLS_ASET_FAIL_UNREC`, or `SUNLS_PACKAGE_FAIL_UNREC`.

If the IDASPILS solve function failed (`IDA` returned `IDA_LSOLVE_FAIL`), `lsflag` contains the error return flag from the SUNLINSOL object, which will be one of: `SUNLS_MEM_NULL`, indicating that the SUNLINSOL memory is `NULL`; `SUNLS_ATIMES_FAIL_UNREC`, indicating an unrecoverable failure in the $J*v$ function; `SUNLS_PSOLVE_FAIL_UNREC`, indicating that the preconditioner solve function `psolve` failed unrecoverably; `SUNLS_GS_FAIL`, indicating a failure in the Gram-Schmidt procedure (generated only in SPGMR or SPFGMR); `SUNLS_QRSOL_FAIL`, indicating that the matrix R was found to be singular during the QR solve phase (SPGMR and SPFGMR only); or `SUNLS_PACKAGE_FAIL_UNREC`, indicating an unrecoverable failure in an external iterative linear solver package.

`IDASpilsGetReturnFlagName`

Call `name = IDASpilsGetReturnFlagName(lsflag);`

Description The function `IDASpilsGetReturnFlagName` returns the name of the IDASPILS constant corresponding to `lsflag`.

Arguments The only argument, of type `long int`, is a return flag from an IDASPILS function.

Return value The return value is a string containing the name of the corresponding constant.

4.5.10 IDA reinitialization function

The function `IDAReInit` reinitializes the main IDA solver for the solution of a new problem, where a prior call to `IDAInit` has been made. The new problem must have the same size as the previous one. `IDAReInit` performs the same input checking and initializations that `IDAInit` does, but does no memory allocation, as it assumes that the existing internal memory is sufficient for the new problem. A call to `IDAReInit` deletes the solution history that was stored internally during the previous integration. Following a successful call to `IDAReInit`, call `IDASolve` again for the solution of the new problem.

The use of `IDAReInit` requires that the maximum method order, `maxord`, is no larger for the new problem than for the problem specified in the last call to `IDAInit`. In addition, the same NVECTOR module set for the previous problem will be reused for the new problem.

If there are changes to the linear solver specifications, make the appropriate calls to either the linear solver objects themselves, or to the IDADLS or IDASPILS interface routines, as described in §4.5.3.

If there are changes to any optional inputs, make the appropriate `IDASet***` calls, as described in §4.5.7. Otherwise, all solver inputs set previously remain in effect.

One important use of the `IDAReInit` function is in the treating of jump discontinuities in the residual function. Except in cases of fairly small jumps, it is usually more efficient to stop at each point of discontinuity and restart the integrator with a readjusted DAE model, using a call to `IDAReInit`. To stop when the location of the discontinuity is known, simply make that location a value of tout. To stop when the location of the discontinuity is determined by the solution, use the rootfinding feature. In either case, it is critical that the residual function *not* incorporate the discontinuity, but rather have a smooth extention over the discontinuity, so that the step across it (and subsequent rootfinding, if used) can be done efficiently. Then use a switch within the residual function (communicated through `user_data`) that can be flipped between the stopping of the integration and the restart, so that the restarted problem uses the new values (which have jumped). Similar comments apply if there is to be a jump in the dependent variable vector.

`IDAReInit`

Call `flag = IDAReInit(ida_mem, t0, y0, yp0);`

Description The function `IDAReInit` provides required problem specifications and reinitializes IDA.

Arguments
- `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
- `t0` (`realtype`) is the initial value of t.
- `y0` (`N_Vector`) is the initial value of y.
- `yp0` (`N_Vector`) is the initial value of $\dot{y}$.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) will be one of the following:
- `IDA_SUCCESS` The call to `IDAReInit` was successful.
- `IDA_MEM_NULL` The IDA memory block was not initialized through a previous call to `IDACreate`.
- `IDA_NO_MALLOC` Memory space for the IDA memory block was not allocated through a previous call to `IDAInit`.
- `IDA_ILL_INPUT` An input argument to `IDAReInit` has an illegal value.

Notes If an error occurred, `IDAReInit` also sends an error message to the error handler function.

4.6 User-supplied functions

The user-supplied functions consist of one function defining the DAE residual, (optionally) a function that handles error and warning messages, (optionally) a function that provides the error weight vector, (optionally) one or two functions that provide Jacobian-related information for the linear solver (if Newton iteration is chosen), and (optionally) one or two functions that define the preconditioner for use in any of the Krylov iteration algorithms.

4.6.1 Residual function

The user must provide a function of type `IDAResFn` defined as follows:

`IDAResFn`

Definition
```
typedef int (*IDAResFn)(realtype tt, N_Vector yy, N_Vector yp,
                        N_Vector rr, void *user_data);
```

Purpose This function computes the problem residual for given values of the independent variable t, state vector y, and derivative $\dot{y}$.

Arguments
- `tt` is the current value of the independent variable.
- `yy` is the current value of the dependent variable vector, $y(t)$.
- `yp` is the current value of $\dot{y}(t)$.
- `rr` is the output residual vector $F(t, y, \dot{y})$.
- `user_data` is a pointer to user data, the same as the `user_data` parameter passed to `IDASetUserData`.

Return value An `IDAResFn` function type should return a value of 0 if successful, a positive value if a recoverable error occurred (e.g. `yy` has an illegal value), or a negative value if a nonrecoverable error occurred. In the last case, the integrator halts. If a recoverable error occurred, the integrator will attempt to correct and retry.

Notes A recoverable failure error return from the `IDAResFn` is typically used to flag a value of the dependent variable `y` that is "illegal" in some way (e.g., negative where only a non-negative value is physically meaningful). If such a return is made, IDA will attempt to recover (possibly repeating the Newton iteration, or reducing the step size) in order to avoid this recoverable error return.

For efficiency reasons, the DAE residual function is not evaluated at the converged solution of the nonlinear solver. Therefore, in general, a recoverable error in that converged value cannot be corrected. (It may be detected when the right-hand side function is called the first time during the following integration step, but a successful step cannot be undone.)

Allocation of memory for `yp` is handled within IDA.

4.6.2 Error message handler function

As an alternative to the default behavior of directing error and warning messages to the file pointed to by `errfp` (see `IDASetErrFile`), the user may provide a function of type `IDAErrHandlerFn` to process any such messages. The function type `IDAErrHandlerFn` is defined as follows:

IDAErrHandlerFn

Definition
```
typedef void (*IDAErrHandlerFn)(int error_code, const char *module,
                                const char *function, char *msg,
                                void *eh_data);
```

Purpose This function processes error and warning messages from IDA and its sub-modules.

Arguments
- `error_code` is the error code.
- `module` is the name of the IDA module reporting the error.
- `function` is the name of the function in which the error occurred.
- `msg` is the error message.
- `eh_data` is a pointer to user data, the same as the `eh_data` parameter passed to `IDASetErrHandlerFn`.

Return value A `IDAErrHandlerFn` function has no return value.

Notes `error_code` is negative for errors and positive (`IDA_WARNING`) for warnings. If a function that returns a pointer to memory encounters an error, it sets `error_code` to 0.

4.6.3 Error weight function

As an alternative to providing the relative and absolute tolerances, the user may provide a function of type `IDAEwtFn` to compute a vector `ewt` containing the multiplicative weights W_i used in the WRMS norm $\| v\|_{\text{WRMS}} = \sqrt{(1/N)\sum_1^N (W_i \cdot v_i)^2}$. These weights will used in place of those defined by Eq. (2.6). The function type `IDAEwtFn` is defined as follows:

IDAEwtFn

Definition
```
typedef int (*IDAEwtFn)(N_Vector y, N_Vector ewt, void *user_data);
```

Purpose This function computes the WRMS error weights for the vector y.

Arguments
- `y` is the value of the dependent variable vector at which the weight vector is to be computed.
- `ewt` is the output vector containing the error weights.
- `user_data` is a pointer to user data, the same as the `user_data` parameter passed to `IDASetUserData`.

Return value An `IDAEwtFn` function type must return 0 if it successfully set the error weights and -1 otherwise.

Notes Allocation of memory for `ewt` is handled within IDA.

The error weight vector must have all components positive. It is the user's responsiblity to perform this test and return -1 if it is not satisfied.

4.6.4 Rootfinding function

If a rootfinding problem is to be solved during the integration of the DAE system, the user must supply a C function of type `IDARootFn`, defined as follows:

IDARootFn

Definition
```
typedef int (*IDARootFn)(realtype t, N_Vector y, N_Vector yp,
                         realtype *gout, void *user_data);
```

Purpose This function computes a vector-valued function $g(t, y, \dot{y})$ such that the roots of the `nrtfn` components $g_i(t, y, \dot{y})$ are to be found during the integration.

Arguments
- `t` is the current value of the independent variable.
- `y` is the current value of the dependent variable vector, $y(t)$.

`yp`	is the current value of $\dot{y}(t)$, the $t-$derivative of y.
`gout`	is the output array, of length `nrtfn`, with components $g_i(t, y, \dot{y})$.
`user_data`	is a pointer to user data, the same as the `user_data` parameter passed to `IDASetUserData`.

Return value An `IDARootFn` should return 0 if successful or a non-zero value if an error occurred (in which case the integration is halted and `IDASolve` returns `IDA_RTFUNC_FAIL`).

Notes Allocation of memory for `gout` is handled within IDA.

4.6.5 Jacobian information (direct method Jacobian)

If the direct linear solver interface is used (i.e. `IDADlsSetLinearSolver` is called in the step described in §4.4), the user may provide a function of type `IDADlsJacFn` defined as follows:

`IDADlsJacFn`

Definition
```
typedef int (*IDADlsJacFn)(realtype tt, realtype cj,
                           N_Vector yy, N_Vector yp, N_Vector rr,
                           SUNMatrix Jac, void *user_data,
                           N_Vector tmp1, N_Vector tmp2, N_Vector tmp3);
```

Purpose This function computes the Jacobian matrix J of the DAE system (or an approximation to it), defined by Eq. (2.5).

Arguments

`tt`	is the current value of the independent variable t.
`cj`	is the scalar in the system Jacobian, proportional to the inverse of the step size (α in Eq. (2.5)).
`yy`	is the current value of the dependent variable vector, $y(t)$.
`yp`	is the current value of $\dot{y}(t)$.
`rr`	is the current value of the residual vector $F(t, y, \dot{y})$.
`Jac`	is the output (approximate) Jacobian matrix (of type `SUNMatrix`), $J = \partial F/\partial y + cj\ \partial F/\partial \dot{y}$.
`user_data`	is a pointer to user data, the same as the `user_data` parameter passed to `IDASetUserData`.
`tmp1`	
`tmp2`	
`tmp3`	are pointers to memory allocated for variables of type `N_Vector` which can be used by `IDADlsJacFn` function as temporary storage or work space.

Return value An `IDADlsJacFn` should return 0 if successful, a positive value if a recoverable error occurred, or a negative value if a nonrecoverable error occurred.

In the case of a recoverable eror return, the integrator will attempt to recover by reducing the stepsize, and hence changing α in (2.5).

Notes Information regarding the structure of the specific SUNMATRIX structure (e.g. number of rows, upper/lower bandwidth, sparsity type) may be obtained through using the implementation-specific SUNMATRIX interface functions (see Chapter 7 for details).

Prior to calling the user-supplied Jacobian function, the Jacobian matrix $J(t, y)$ is zeroed out, so only nonzero elements need to be loaded into `Jac`.

If the user's `IDADlsJacFn` function uses difference quotient approximations, it may need to access quantities not in the call list. These quantities may include the current stepsize, the error weights, etc. To obtain these, the user will need to add a pointer to `ida_mem` to `user_data` and then use the `IDAGet*` functions described in §4.5.9.2. The unit roundoff can be accessed as `UNIT_ROUNDOFF` defined in `sundials_types.h`.

dense:
A user-supplied dense Jacobian function must load the `Neq` × `Neq` dense matrix `Jac` with an approximation to the Jacobian matrix $J(t, y, \dot{y})$ at the point (`tt`, `yy`, `yp`). The accessor macros `SM_ELEMENT_D` and `SM_COLUMN_D` allow the user to read and write dense matrix elements without making explicit references to the underlying representation of the SUNMATRIX_DENSE type. `SM_ELEMENT_D(J, i, j)` references the (`i`, `j`)-th element of the dense matrix `Jac` (with `i`, `j` $= 0 \ldots$ `N` $- 1$). This macro is meant for small problems for which efficiency of access is not a major concern. Thus, in terms of the indices m and n ranging from 1 to N, the Jacobian element $J_{m,n}$ can be set using the statement `SM_ELEMENT_D(J, m-1, n-1)` = $J_{m,n}$. Alternatively, `SM_COLUMN_D(J, j)` returns a pointer to the first element of the `j`-th column of `Jac` (with `j` $= 0 \ldots$ `N` $- 1$), and the elements of the `j`-th column can then be accessed using ordinary array indexing. Consequently, $J_{m,n}$ can be loaded using the statements `col_n = SM_COLUMN_D(J, n-1);` `col_n[m-1]` = $J_{m,n}$. For large problems, it is more efficient to use `SM_COLUMN_D` than to use `SM_ELEMENT_D`. Note that both of these macros number rows and columns starting from 0. The SUNMATRIX_DENSE type and accessor macros are documented in §7.1.

banded:
A user-supplied banded Jacobian function must load the `Neq` × `Neq` banded matrix `Jac` with an approximation to the Jacobian matrix $J(t, y, \dot{y})$ at the point (`tt`, `yy`, `yp`). The accessor macros `SM_ELEMENT_B`, `SM_COLUMN_B`, and `SM_COLUMN_ELEMENT_B` allow the user to read and write banded matrix elements without making specific references to the underlying representation of the SUNMATRIX_BAND type. `SM_ELEMENT_B(J, i, j)` references the (`i`, `j`)-th element of the banded matrix `Jac`, counting from 0. This macro is meant for use in small problems for which efficiency of access is not a major concern. Thus, in terms of the indices m and n ranging from 1 to `N` with (m, n) within the band defined by `mupper` and `mlower`, the Jacobian element $J_{m,n}$ can be loaded using the statement `SM_ELEMENT_B(J, m-1, n-1)` = $J_{m,n}$. The elements within the band are those with `-mupper` $\leq$ `m-n` $\leq$ `mlower`. Alternatively, `SM_COLUMN_B(J, j)` returns a pointer to the diagonal element of the `j`-th column of `Jac`, and if we assign this address to `realtype *col_j`, then the `i`-th element of the `j`-th column is given by `SM_COLUMN_ELEMENT_B(col_j, i, j)`, counting from 0. Thus, for (m, n) within the band, $J_{m,n}$ can be loaded by setting `col_n = SM_COLUMN_B(J, n-1);` and `SM_COLUMN_ELEMENT_B(col_n, m-1, n-1)` = $J_{m,n}$. The elements of the `j`-th column can also be accessed via ordinary array indexing, but this approach requires knowledge of the underlying storage for a band matrix of type SUNMATRIX_BAND. The array `col_n` can be indexed from $-$`mupper` to `mlower`. For large problems, it is more efficient to use `SM_COLUMN_B` and `SM_COLUMN_ELEMENT_B` than to use the `SM_ELEMENT_B` macro. As in the dense case, these macros all number rows and columns starting from 0. The SUNMATRIX_BAND type and accessor macros are documented in §7.2.

sparse:
A user-supplied sparse Jacobian function must load the `Neq` × `Neq` compressed-sparse-column or compressed-sparse-row matrix `Jac` with an approximation to the Jacobian matrix $J(t, y, \dot{y})$ at the point (`tt`, `yy`, `yp`). Storage for `Jac` already exists on entry to this function, although the user should ensure that sufficient space is allocated in `Jac` to hold the nonzero values to be set; if the existing space is insufficient the user may reallocate the data and index arrays as needed. The amount of allocated space in a SUNMATRIX_SPARSE object may be accessed using the macro `SM_NNZ_S` or the routine `SUNSparseMatrix_NNZ`. The SUNMATRIX_SPARSE type and accessor macros are documented in §7.3.

4.6.6 Jacobian information (matrix-vector product)

If the IDASPILS solver interface is selected (i.e., `IDASpilsSetLinearSolver` is called in the steps described in §4.4), the user may provide a function of type `IDASpilsJacTimesVecFn` in the following form, to compute matrix-vector products Jv. If such a function is not supplied, the default is a difference quotient approximation to these products.

`IDASpilsJacTimesVecFn`

Definition
```
typedef int (*IDASpilsJacTimesVecFn)(realtype tt, N_Vector yy,
                                     N_Vector yp, N_Vector rr,
                                     N_Vector v, N_Vector Jv,
                                     realtype cj, void *user_data,
                                     N_Vector tmp1, N_Vector tmp2);
```

Purpose This function computes the product Jv of the DAE system Jacobian J (or an approximation to it) and a given vector `v`, where J is defined by Eq. (2.5).

Arguments
- `tt` is the current value of the independent variable.
- `yy` is the current value of the dependent variable vector, $y(t)$.
- `yp` is the current value of $\dot{y}(t)$.
- `rr` is the current value of the residual vector $F(t, y, \dot{y})$.
- `v` is the vector by which the Jacobian must be multiplied to the right.
- `Jv` is the computed output vector.
- `cj` is the scalar in the system Jacobian, proportional to the inverse of the step size (α in Eq. (2.5)).
- `user_data` is a pointer to user data, the same as the `user_data` parameter passed to `IDASetUserData`.
- `tmp1`, `tmp2` are pointers to memory allocated for variables of type `N_Vector` which can be used by `IDASpilsJacTimesVecFn` as temporary storage or work space.

Return value The value returned by the Jacobian-times-vector function should be 0 if successful. A nonzero value indicates that a nonrecoverable error occurred.

Notes This function must return a value of $J * v$ that uses the *current* value of J, i.e. as evaluated at the current $(t, y, \dot{y})$.
If the user's `IDASpilsJacTimesVecFn` function uses difference quotient approximations, it may need to access quantities not in the call list. These include the current stepsize, the error weights, etc. To obtain these, the user will need to add a pointer to `ida_mem` to `user_data` and then use the `IDAGet*` functions described in §4.5.9.2. The unit roundoff can be accessed as `UNIT_ROUNDOFF` defined in `sundials_types.h`.

4.6.7 Jacobian information (matrix-vector setup)

If the user's Jacobian-times-vector requires that any Jacobian-related data be preprocessed or evaluated, then this needs to be done in a user-supplied function of type `IDASpilsJacTimesSetupFn`, defined as follows:

`IDASpilsJacTimesSetupFn`

Definition
```
typedef int (*IDASpilsJacTimesSetupFn)(realtype tt, N_Vector yy,
                                       N_Vector yp, N_Vector rr,
                                       realtype cj, void *user_data);
```

Purpose This function preprocesses and/or evaluates Jacobian data needed by the Jacobian-times-vector routine.

Arguments
- `tt` is the current value of the independent variable.
- `yy` is the current value of the dependent variable vector, $y(t)$.
- `yp` is the current value of $\dot{y}(t)$.
- `rr` is the current value of the residual vector $F(t, y, \dot{y})$.
- `cj` is the scalar in the system Jacobian, proportional to the inverse of the step size (α in Eq. (2.5)).
- `user_data` is a pointer to user data, the same as the `user_data` parameter passed to `IDASetUserData`.

Return value The value returned by the Jacobian-vector setup function should be 0 if successful, positive for a recoverable error (in which case the step will be retried), or negative for an unrecoverable error (in which case the integration is halted).

Notes Each call to the Jacobian-vector setup function is preceded by a call to the `IDARhsFn` user function with the same `(t,y, yp)` arguments. Thus, the setup function can use any auxiliary data that is computed and saved during the evaluation of the DAE residual.

If the user's `IDASpilsJacTimesVecFn` function uses difference quotient approximations, it may need to access quantities not in the call list. These include the current stepsize, the error weights, etc. To obtain these, the user will need to add a pointer to `ida_mem` to `user_data` and then use the `IDAGet*` functions described in §4.5.9.2. The unit roundoff can be accessed as `UNIT_ROUNDOFF` defined in `sundials_types.h`.

4.6.8 Preconditioning (linear system solution)

If preconditioning is used, then the user must provide a function to solve the linear system $Pz = r$ where P is a left preconditioner matrix which approximates (at least crudely) the Jacobian matrix $J = \partial F/\partial y + cj\ \partial F/\partial \dot{y}$. This function must be of type `IDASpilsPrecSolveFn`, defined as follows:

`IDASpilsPrecSolveFn`

Definition
```
typedef int (*IDASpilsPrecSolveFn)(realtype tt, N_Vector yy,
                                   N_Vector yp, N_Vector rr,
                                   N_Vector rvec, N_Vector zvec,
                                   realtype cj, realtype delta,
                                   void *user_data);
```

Purpose This function solves the preconditioning system $Pz = r$.

Arguments
- `tt` is the current value of the independent variable.
- `yy` is the current value of the dependent variable vector, $y(t)$.
- `yp` is the current value of $\dot{y}(t)$.
- `rr` is the current value of the residual vector $F(t, y, \dot{y})$.
- `rvec` is the right-hand side vector r of the linear system to be solved.
- `zvec` is the computed output vector.
- `cj` is the scalar in the system Jacobian, proportional to the inverse of the step size (α in Eq. (2.5)).
- `delta` is an input tolerance to be used if an iterative method is employed in the solution. In that case, the residual vector $Res = r - Pz$ of the system should be made less than `delta` in weighted l_2 norm, i.e., $\sqrt{\sum_i (Res_i \cdot ewt_i)^2} <$ `delta`. To obtain the `N_Vector ewt`, call `IDAGetErrWeights` (see §4.5.9.2).
- `user_data` is a pointer to user data, the same as the `user_data` parameter passed to the function `IDASetUserData`.

Return value The value to be returned by the preconditioner solve function is a flag indicating whether it was successful. This value should be 0 if successful, positive for a recoverable error

(in which case the step will be retried), negative for an unrecoverable error (in which case the integration is halted).

4.6.9 Preconditioning (Jacobian data)

If the user's preconditioner requires that any Jacobian-related data be evaluated or preprocessed, then this needs to be done in a user-supplied function of type `IDASpilsPrecSetupFn`, defined as follows:

`IDASpilsPrecSetupFn`

Definition
```
typedef int (*IDASpilsPrecSetupFn)(realtype tt, N_Vector yy,
                                   N_Vector yp, N_Vector rr,
                                   realtype cj, void *user_data);
```

Purpose This function evaluates and/or preprocesses Jacobian-related data needed by the preconditioner.

Arguments
- `tt` is the current value of the independent variable.
- `yy` is the current value of the dependent variable vector, $y(t)$.
- `yp` is the current value of $\dot{y}(t)$.
- `rr` is the current value of the residual vector $F(t, y, \dot{y})$.
- `cj` is the scalar in the system Jacobian, proportional to the inverse of the step size (α in Eq. (2.5)).
- `user_data` is a pointer to user data, the same as the `user_data` parameter passed to the function `IDASetUserData`.

Return value The value returned by the preconditioner setup function is a flag indicating whether it was successful. This value should be 0 if successful, positive for a recoverable error (in which case the step will be retried), negative for an unrecoverable error (in which case the integration is halted).

Notes The operations performed by this function might include forming a crude approximate Jacobian, and performing an LU factorization on the resulting approximation.

Each call to the preconditioner setup function is preceded by a call to the `IDAResFn` user function with the same (`tt`, `yy`, `yp`) arguments. Thus the preconditioner setup function can use any auxiliary data that is computed and saved during the evaluation of the DAE residual.

This function is not called in advance of every call to the preconditioner solve function, but rather is called only as often as needed to achieve convergence in the Newton iteration.

If the user's `IDASpilsPrecSetupFn` function uses difference quotient approximations, it may need to access quantities not in the call list. These include the current stepsize, the error weights, etc. To obtain these, the user will need to add a pointer to `ida_mem` to `user_data` and then use the `IDAGet*` functions described in §4.5.9.2. The unit roundoff can be accessed as `UNIT_ROUNDOFF` defined in `sundials_types.h`.

4.7 A parallel band-block-diagonal preconditioner module

A principal reason for using a parallel DAE solver such as IDA lies in the solution of partial differential equations (PDEs). Moreover, the use of a Krylov iterative method for the solution of many such problems is motivated by the nature of the underlying linear system of equations (2.4) that must be solved at each time step. The linear algebraic system is large, sparse, and structured. However, if a Krylov iterative method is to be effective in this setting, then a nontrivial preconditioner needs to be used. Otherwise, the rate of convergence of the Krylov iterative method is usually unacceptably slow. Unfortunately, an effective preconditioner tends to be problem-specific.

However, we have developed one type of preconditioner that treats a rather broad class of PDE-based problems. It has been successfully used for several realistic, large-scale problems [21] and is included in a software module within the IDA package. This module works with the parallel vector module NVECTOR_PARALLEL and generates a preconditioner that is a block-diagonal matrix with each block being a band matrix. The blocks need not have the same number of super- and sub-diagonals, and these numbers may vary from block to block. This Band-Block-Diagonal Preconditioner module is called IDABBDPRE.

One way to envision these preconditioners is to think of the domain of the computational PDE problem as being subdivided into M non-overlapping sub-domains. Each of these sub-domains is then assigned to one of the M processors to be used to solve the DAE system. The basic idea is to isolate the preconditioning so that it is local to each processor, and also to use a (possibly cheaper) approximate residual function. This requires the definition of a new function $G(t, y, \dot{y})$ which approximates the function $F(t, y, \dot{y})$ in the definition of the DAE system (2.1). However, the user may set $G = F$. Corresponding to the domain decomposition, there is a decomposition of the solution vectors y and $\dot{y}$ into M disjoint blocks y_m and $\dot{y}_m$, and a decomposition of G into blocks G_m. The block G_m depends on y_m and $\dot{y}_m$, and also on components of $y_{m'}$ and $\dot{y}_{m'}$ associated with neighboring sub-domains (so-called ghost-cell data). Let $\bar{y}_m$ and $\bar{\dot{y}}_m$ denote y_m and $\dot{y}_m$ (respectively) augmented with those other components on which G_m depends. Then we have

$$G(t, y, \dot{y}) = [G_1(t, \bar{y}_1, \bar{\dot{y}}_1), G_2(t, \bar{y}_2, \bar{\dot{y}}_2), \ldots, G_M(t, \bar{y}_M, \bar{\dot{y}}_M)]^T \ , \tag{4.1}$$

and each of the blocks $G_m(t, \bar{y}_m, \bar{\dot{y}}_m)$ is uncoupled from the others.

The preconditioner associated with this decomposition has the form

$$P = diag[P_1, P_2, \ldots, P_M] \tag{4.2}$$

where

$$P_m \approx \partial G_m / \partial y_m + \alpha \partial G_m / \partial \dot{y}_m \tag{4.3}$$

This matrix is taken to be banded, with upper and lower half-bandwidths `mudq` and `mldq` defined as the number of non-zero diagonals above and below the main diagonal, respectively. The difference quotient approximation is computed using `mudq` + `mldq` +2 evaluations of G_m, but only a matrix of bandwidth `mukeep` + `mlkeep` +1 is retained.

Neither pair of parameters need be the true half-bandwidths of the Jacobians of the local block of G, if smaller values provide a more efficient preconditioner. Such an efficiency gain may occur if the couplings in the DAE system outside a certain bandwidth are considerably weaker than those within the band. Reducing `mukeep` and `mlkeep` while keeping `mudq` and `mldq` at their true values, discards the elements outside the narrower band. Reducing both pairs has the additional effect of lumping the outer Jacobian elements into the computed elements within the band, and requires more caution and experimentation.

The solution of the complete linear system

$$Px = b \tag{4.4}$$

reduces to solving each of the equations

$$P_m x_m = b_m \tag{4.5}$$

and this is done by banded LU factorization of P_m followed by a banded backsolve.

Similar block-diagonal preconditioners could be considered with different treatment of the blocks P_m. For example, incomplete LU factorization or an iterative method could be used instead of banded LU factorization.

The IDABBDPRE module calls two user-provided functions to construct P: a required function `Gres` (of type `IDABBDLocalFn`) which approximates the residual function $G(t, y, \dot{y}) \approx F(t, y, \dot{y})$ and which is computed locally, and an optional function `Gcomm` (of type `IDABBDCommFn`) which performs all inter-process communication necessary to evaluate the approximate residual G. These are in addition to the user-supplied residual function `res`. Both functions take as input the same pointer

`user_data` as passed by the user to `IDASetUserData` and passed to the user's function `res`. The user is responsible for providing space (presumably within `user_data`) for components of `yy` and `yp` that are communicated by `Gcomm` from the other processors, and that are then used by `Gres`, which should not do any communication.

`IDABBDLocalFn`

Definition
```
typedef int (*IDABBDLocalFn)(sunindextype Nlocal, realtype tt,
                             N_Vector yy, N_Vector yp, N_Vector gval,
                             void *user_data);
```

Purpose This `Gres` function computes $G(t, y, \dot{y})$. It loads the vector `gval` as a function of `tt`, `yy`, and `yp`.

Arguments
- `Nlocal` is the local vector length.
- `tt` is the value of the independent variable.
- `yy` is the dependent variable.
- `yp` is the derivative of the dependent variable.
- `gval` is the output vector.
- `user_data` is a pointer to user data, the same as the `user_data` parameter passed to `IDASetUserData`.

Return value An `IDABBDLocalFn` function type should return 0 to indicate success, 1 for a recoverable error, or -1 for a non-recoverable error.

Notes This function must assume that all inter-processor communication of data needed to calculate `gval` has already been done, and this data is accessible within `user_data`.

The case where G is mathematically identical to F is allowed.

`IDABBDCommFn`

Definition
```
typedef int (*IDABBDCommFn)(sunindextype Nlocal, realtype tt,
                            N_Vector yy, N_Vector yp, void *user_data);
```

Purpose This `Gcomm` function performs all inter-processor communications necessary for the execution of the `Gres` function above, using the input vectors `yy` and `yp`.

Arguments
- `Nlocal` is the local vector length.
- `tt` is the value of the independent variable.
- `yy` is the dependent variable.
- `yp` is the derivative of the dependent variable.
- `user_data` is a pointer to user data, the same as the `user_data` parameter passed to `IDASetUserData`.

Return value An `IDABBDCommFn` function type should return 0 to indicate success, 1 for a recoverable error, or -1 for a non-recoverable error.

Notes The `Gcomm` function is expected to save communicated data in space defined within the structure `user_data`.

Each call to the `Gcomm` function is preceded by a call to the residual function `res` with the same (`tt`, `yy`, `yp`) arguments. Thus `Gcomm` can omit any communications done by `res` if relevant to the evaluation of `Gres`. If all necessary communication was done in `res`, then `Gcomm` = `NULL` can be passed in the call to `IDABBDPrecInit` (see below).

Besides the header files required for the integration of the DAE problem (see §4.3), to use the IDABBDPRE module, the main program must include the header file `ida_bbdpre.h` which declares the needed function prototypes.

The following is a summary of the usage of this module and describes the sequence of calls in the user main program. Steps that are unchanged from the user main program presented in §4.4 are grayed-out.

1. **Initialize MPI**
2. **Set problem dimensions**
3. **Set vector of initial values**
4. **Create IDA object**
5. **Initialize IDA solver**
6. **Specify integration tolerances**
7. **Set optional inputs**
8. **Create linear solver object**

   When creating the iterative linear solver object, specify the use of left preconditioning (`PREC_LEFT`) as IDA only supports left preconditioning.
9. **Set linear solver optional inputs**
10. **Attach iterative linear solver module**
11. **Initialize the IDABBDPRE preconditioner module**

    Specify the upper and lower bandwidths `mudq`, `mldq` and `mukeep`, `mlkeep` and call

    ```
    flag = IDABBDPrecInit(ida_mem, Nlocal, mudq, mldq,
                          mukeep, mlkeep, dq_rel_yy, Gres, Gcomm);
    ```

    to allocate memory and initialize the internal preconditioner data. The last two arguments of `IDABBDPrecInit` are the two user-supplied functions described above.
12. **Set linear solver interface optional inputs**

    Note that the user should not overwrite the preconditioner setup function or solve function through calls to idIDASpilsSetPreconditioner optional input function.
13. **Correct initial values**
14. **Specify rootfinding problem**
15. **Advance solution in time**
16. **Get optional outputs**

    Additional optional outputs associated with IDABBDPRE are available by way of two routines described below, `IDABBDPrecGetWorkSpace` and `IDABBDPrecGetNumGfnEvals`.
17. **Deallocate memory for solution vector**
18. **Free solver memory**
19. **Free linear solver memory**
20. **Finalize MPI**

The user-callable functions that initialize (step 11 above) or re-initialize the IDABBDPRE preconditioner module are described next.

`IDABBDPrecInit`

Call
```
flag = IDABBDPrecInit(ida_mem, Nlocal, mudq, mldq,
                      mukeep, mlkeep, dq_rel_yy, Gres, Gcomm);
```

Description The function `IDABBDPrecInit` initializes and allocates (internal) memory for the IDABBDPRE preconditioner.

Arguments

`ida_mem`	(`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
`Nlocal`	(`sunindextype`) local vector dimension.
`mudq`	(`sunindextype`) upper half-bandwidth to be used in the difference-quotient Jacobian approximation.
`mldq`	(`sunindextype`) lower half-bandwidth to be used in the difference-quotient Jacobian approximation.
`mukeep`	(`sunindextype`) upper half-bandwidth of the retained banded approximate Jacobian block.
`mlkeep`	(`sunindextype`) lower half-bandwidth of the retained banded approximate Jacobian block.
`dq_rel_yy`	(`realtype`) the relative increment in components of `y` used in the difference quotient approximations. The default is `dq_rel_yy`$= \sqrt{\text{unit roundoff}}$, which can be specified by passing `dq_rel_yy`$= 0.0$.
`Gres`	(`IDABBDLocalFn`) the C function which computes the local residual approximation $G(t, y, \dot{y})$.
`Gcomm`	(`IDABBDCommFn`) the optional C function which performs all inter-process communication required for the computation of $G(t, y, \dot{y})$.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of

`IDASPILS_SUCCESS`	The call to `IDABBDPrecInit` was successful.
`IDASPILS_MEM_NULL`	The `ida_mem` pointer was `NULL`.
`IDASPILS_MEM_FAIL`	A memory allocation request has failed.
`IDASPILS_LMEM_NULL`	An IDASPILS linear solver memory was not attached.
`IDASPILS_ILL_INPUT`	The supplied vector implementation was not compatible with the block band preconditioner.

Notes If one of the half-bandwidths `mudq` or `mldq` to be used in the difference-quotient calculation of the approximate Jacobian is negative or exceeds the value `Nlocal`-1, it is replaced by 0 or `Nlocal`-1 accordingly.

The half-bandwidths `mudq` and `mldq` need not be the true half-bandwidths of the Jacobian of the local block of G, when smaller values may provide a greater efficiency.

Also, the half-bandwidths `mukeep` and `mlkeep` of the retained banded approximate Jacobian block may be even smaller, to reduce storage and computation costs further.

For all four half-bandwidths, the values need not be the same on every processor.

The IDABBDPRE module also provides a reinitialization function to allow for a sequence of problems of the same size, with the same linear solver choice, provided there is no change in `local_N`, `mukeep`, or `mlkeep`. After solving one problem, and after calling `IDAReInit` to re-initialize IDA for a subsequent problem, a call to `IDABBDPrecReInit` can be made to change any of the following: the half-bandwidths `mudq` and `mldq` used in the difference-quotient Jacobian approximations, the relative increment `dq_rel_yy`, or one of the user-supplied functions `Gres` and `Gcomm`. If there is a change in any of the linear solver inputs, an additional call to the "Set" routines provided by the SUNLINSOL module, and/or one or more of the corresponding `IDASpilsSet***` functions, must also be made (in the proper order).

`IDABBDPrecReInit`

Call `flag = IDABBDPrecReInit(ida_mem, mudq, mldq, dq_rel_yy);`

Description The function `IDABBDPrecReInit` reinitializes the IDABBDPRE preconditioner.

Arguments
- `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
- `mudq` (`sunindextype`) upper half-bandwidth to be used in the difference-quotient Jacobian approximation.
- `mldq` (`sunindextype`) lower half-bandwidth to be used in the difference-quotient Jacobian approximation.
- `dq_rel_yy` (`realtype`) the relative increment in components of `y` used in the difference quotient approximations. The default is `dq_rel_yy` $= \sqrt{\text{unit roundoff}}$, which can be specified by passing `dq_rel_yy` $= 0.0$.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
- `IDASPILS_SUCCESS` The call to `IDABBDPrecReInit` was successful.
- `IDASPILS_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer was `NULL`.
- `IDASPILS_LMEM_NULL` An IDASPILS linear solver memory was not attached.
- `IDASPILS_PMEM_NULL` The function `IDABBDPrecInit` was not previously called.

Notes If one of the half-bandwidths `mudq` or `mldq` is negative or exceeds the value `Nlocal`-1, it is replaced by 0 or `Nlocal`-1, accordingly.

The following two optional output functions are available for use with the IDABBDPRE module:

`IDABBDPrecGetWorkSpace`

Call `flag = IDABBDPrecGetWorkSpace(ida_mem, &lenrwBBDP, &leniwBBDP);`

Description The function `IDABBDPrecGetWorkSpace` returns the local sizes of the IDABBDPRE real and integer workspaces.

Arguments
- `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
- `lenrwBBDP` (`long int`) local number of real values in the IDABBDPRE workspace.
- `leniwBBDP` (`long int`) local number of integer values in the IDABBDPRE workspace.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
- `IDASPILS_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.
- `IDASPILS_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer was `NULL`.
- `IDASPILS_PMEM_NULL` The IDABBDPRE preconditioner has not been initialized.

Notes The workspace requirements reported by this routine correspond only to memory allocated within the IDABBDPRE module (the banded matrix approximation, banded SUNLINSOL object, temporary vectors). These values are local to each process.

The workspaces referred to here exist in addition to those given by the corresponding function `IDASpilsGetWorkSpace`.

`IDABBDPrecGetNumGfnEvals`

Call `flag = IDABBDPrecGetNumGfnEvals(ida_mem, &ngevalsBBDP);`

Description The function `IDABBDPrecGetNumGfnEvals` returns the cumulative number of calls to the user `Gres` function due to the finite difference approximation of the Jacobian blocks used within IDABBDPRE's preconditioner setup function.

Arguments
- `ida_mem` (`void *`) pointer to the IDA memory block.
- `ngevalsBBDP` (`long int`) the cumulative number of calls to the user `Gres` function.

Return value The return value `flag` (of type `int`) is one of
- `IDASPILS_SUCCESS` The optional output value has been successfully set.

`IDASPILS_MEM_NULL` The `ida_mem` pointer was `NULL`.

`IDASPILS_PMEM_NULL` The IDABBDPRE preconditioner has not been initialized.

In addition to the `ngevalsBBDP` `Gres` evaluations, the costs associated with IDABBDPRE also include `nlinsetups` LU factorizations, `nlinsetups` calls to `Gcomm`, `npsolves` banded backsolve calls, and `nrevalsLS` residual function evaluations, where `nlinsetups` is an optional IDA output (see §4.5.9.2), and `npsolves` and `nrevalsLS` are linear solver optional outputs (see §4.5.9.6).

Chapter 5

FIDA, an Interface Module for FORTRAN Applications

The FIDA interface module is a package of C functions which support the use of the IDA solver, for the solution of DAE systems, in a mixed FORTRAN/C setting. While IDA is written in C, it is assumed here that the user's calling program and user-supplied problem-defining routines are written in FORTRAN. This package provides the necessary interface to IDA for all supplied serial and parallel NVECTOR implementations.

5.1 Important note on portability

In this package, the names of the interface functions, and the names of the FORTRAN user routines called by them, appear as dummy names which are mapped to actual values by a series of definitions in the header files. By default, those mapping definitions depend in turn on the C macro `F77_FUNC` defined in the header file `sundials_config.h`. The mapping defined by `F77_FUNC` in turn transforms the C interface names to match the name-mangling approach used by the supplied Fortran compiler.

By "name-mangling", we mean that due to the case-independent nature of the FORTRAN language, FORTRAN compilers convert all subroutine and object names to use either all lower-case or all upper-case characters, and append either zero, one or two underscores as a prefix or suffix to the name. For example, the FORTRAN subroutine `MyFunction()` will be changed to one of `myfunction`, `MYFUNCTION`, `myfunction__`, `MYFUNCTION_`, and so on, depending on the FORTRAN compiler used.

SUNDIALS determines this name-mangling scheme at configuration time (see Appendix A).

5.2 Fortran Data Types

Throughout this documentation, we will refer to data types according to their usage in C. The equivalent types to these may vary, depending on your computer architecture and on how SUNDIALS was compiled (see Appendix A). A FORTRAN user should first determine the equivalent types for their architecture and compiler, and then take care that all arguments passed through this FORTRAN/C interface are declared of the appropriate type.

Integers: While SUNDIALS uses the configurable `sunindextype` type as the integer type for vector and matrix indices for its C code, the FORTRAN interfaces are more restricted. The `sunindextype` is only used for index values and pointers when filling sparse matrices. As for C, the `sunindextype` can be configured to be a 32- or 64-bit signed integer by setting the variable `SUNDIALS_INDEX_TYPE` at compile time (See Appendix A). The default value is `int64_t`. A FORTRAN user should set this variable based on the integer type used for vector and matrix indices in their FORTRAN code. The corresponding FORTRAN types are:

- `int32_t` – equivalent to an `INTEGER` or `INTEGER*4` in FORTRAN

- `int64_t` – equivalent to an `INTEGER*8` in FORTRAN

In general, for the FORTRAN interfaces in SUNDIALS, flags of type `int`, vector and matrix lengths, counters, and arguments to `*SETIN()` functions all have `long int` type, and `sunindextype` is only used for index values and pointers when filling sparse matrices. Note that if an F90 (or higher) user wants to find out the value of `sunindextype`, they can include `sundials_fconfig.h`.

Real numbers: As discussed in Appendix A, at compilation SUNDIALS allows the configuration option `SUNDIALS_PRECISION`, that accepts values of `single`, `double` or `extended` (the default is `double`). This choice dictates the size of a `realtype` variable. The corresponding FORTRAN types for these `realtype` sizes are:

- `single` – equivalent to a `REAL` or `REAL*4` in FORTRAN
- `double` – equivalent to a `DOUBLE PRECISION` or `REAL*8` in FORTRAN
- `extended` – equivalent to a `REAL*16` in FORTRAN

5.3 FIDA routines

The user-callable functions, with the corresponding IDA functions, are as follows:

- Interface to the NVECTOR modules
  - `FNVINITS` (defined by NVECTOR_SERIAL) interfaces to `N_VNewEmpty_Serial`.
  - `FNVINITP` (defined by NVECTOR_PARALLEL) interfaces to `N_VNewEmpty_Parallel`.
  - `FNVINITOMP` (defined by NVECTOR_OPENMP) interfaces to `N_VNewEmpty_OpenMP`.
  - `FNVINITPTS` (defined by NVECTOR_PTHREADS) interfaces to `N_VNewEmpty_Pthreads`.
- Interface to the SUNMATRIX modules
  - `FSUNBANDMATINIT` (defined by SUNMATRIX_BAND) interfaces to `SUNBandMatrix`.
  - `FSUNDENSEMATINIT` (defined by SUNMATRIX_DENSE) interfaces to `SUNDenseMatrix`.
  - `FSUNSPARSEMATINIT` (defined by SUNMATRIX_SPARSE) interfaces to `SUNSparseMatrix`.
- Interface to the SUNLINSOL modules
  - `FSUNBANDLINSOLINIT` (defined by SUNLINSOL_BAND) interfaces to `SUNBandLinearSolver`.
  - `FSUNDENSELINSOLINIT` (defined by SUNLINSOL_DENSE) interfaces to `SUNDenseLinearSolver`.
  - `FSUNKLUINIT` (defined by SUNLINSOL_KLU) interfaces to `SUNKLU`.
  - `FSUNKLUREINIT` (defined by SUNLINSOL_KLU) interfaces to `SUNKLUReinit`.
  - `FSUNLAPACKBANDINIT` (defined by SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND) interfaces to `SUNLapackBand`.
  - `FSUNLAPACKDENSEINIT` (defined by SUNLINSOL_LAPACKDENSE) interfaces to `SUNLapackDense`.
  - `FSUNPCGINIT` (defined by SUNLINSOL_PCG) interfaces to `SUNPCG`.
  - `FSUNSPBCGSINIT` (defined by SUNLINSOL_SPBCGS) interfaces to `SUNSPBCGS`.
  - `FSUNSPFGMRINIT` (defined by SUNLINSOL_SPFGMR) interfaces to `SUNSPFGMR`.
  - `FSUNSPGMRINIT` (defined by SUNLINSOL_SPGMR) interfaces to `SUNSPGMR`.
  - `FSUNSPTFQMRINIT` (defined by SUNLINSOL_SPTFQMR) interfaces to `SUNSPTFQMR`.
  - `FSUNSUPERLUMTINIT` (defined by SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT) interfaces to `SUNSuperLUMT`.
- Interface to the main IDA module
  - `FIDAMALLOC` interfaces to `IDACreate`, `IDASetUserData`, `IDAInit`, `IDASStolerances`, and `IDASVtolerances`.

  - FIDAREINIT interfaces to IDAReInit and IDASStolerances/IDASVtolerances.
  - FIDASETIIN, FIDASETVIN, and FIDASETRIN interface to IDASet* functions.
  - FIDATOLREINIT interfaces to IDASStolerances/IDASVtolerances.
  - FIDACALCIC interfaces to IDACalcIC.
  - FIDAEWTSET interfaces to IDAWFtolerances.
  - FIDASOLVE interfaces to IDASolve, IDAGet* functions, and to the optional output functions for the selected linear solver module.
  - FIDAGETDKY interfaces to IDAGetDky.
  - FIDAGETERRWEIGHTS interfaces to IDAGetErrWeights.
  - FIDAGETESTLOCALERR interfaces to IDAGetEstLocalErrors.
  - FIDAFREE interfaces to IDAFree.

- Interface to the linear solver interfaces
  - FIDADLSINIT interfaces to IDADlsSetLinearSolver.
  - FIDADENSESETJAC interfaces to IDADlsSetJacFn.
  - FIDABANDSETJAC interfaces to IDADlsSetJacFn.
  - FIDASPARSESETJAC interfaces to IDASlsSetJacFn.
  - FIDASPILSINIT interfaces to IDASpilsSetLinearSolver
  - FIDASPILSSETEPSLIN interfaces to IDASpilsSetEpsLin
  - FIDASPILSSETJAC interfaces to IDASpilsSetJacTimes.
  - FIDASPILSSETPREC interfaces to IDASpilsSetPreconditioner.

The user-supplied functions, each listed with the corresponding internal interface function which calls it (and its type within IDA), are as follows:

FIDA routine (FORTRAN, user-supplied)	IDA function (C, interface)	IDA type of interface function
FIDARESFUN	FIDAresfn	IDAResFn
FIDAEWT	FIDAEwtSet	IDAEwtFn
FIDADJAC	FIDADenseJac	IDADlsJacFn
FIDABJAC	FIDABandJac	IDADlsJacFn
FIDASPJAC	FIDASparseJac	IDADlsJacFn
FIDAPSOL	FIDAPSol	IDASpilsPrecSolveFn
FIDAPSET	FIDAPSet	IDASpilsPrecSetupFn
FIDAJTIMES	FIDAJtimes	IDASpilsJacTimesVecFn
FIDAJTSETUP	FIDAJTSetup	IDASpilsJacTimesSetupFn

In contrast to the case of direct use of IDA, and of most FORTRAN DAE solvers, the names of all user-supplied routines here are fixed, in order to maximize portability for the resulting mixed-language program.

5.4 Usage of the FIDA interface module

The usage of FIDA requires calls to a variety of interface functions, depending on the method options selected, and one or more user-supplied routines which define the problem to be solved. These function calls and user routines are summarized separately below. Some details are omitted, and the user is referred to the description of the corresponding IDA functions for information on the arguments of any given user-callable interface routine, or of a given user-supplied function called by an interface function. The usage of FIDA for rootfinding, and usage of FIDA with preconditioner modules, are each described in later sections.

1. **Residual function specification**

   The user must, in all cases, supply the following FORTRAN routine

   ```
   SUBROUTINE FIDARESFUN (T, Y, YP, R, IPAR, RPAR, IER)
   DIMENSION Y(*), YP(*), R(*), IPAR(*), RPAR(*)
   ```

   It must set the R array to $F(t, y, \dot{y})$, the residual function of the DAE system, as a function of T $= t$ and the arrays Y $= y$ and YP $= \dot{y}$. The arrays IPAR (of integers) and RPAR (of reals) contain user data and are the same as those passed to FIDAMALLOC. It should return IER $= 0$ if it was successful, IER $= 1$ if it had a recoverable failure, or IER $=$ -1 if it had a non-recoverable failure.

2. NVECTOR **module initialization**

   If using one of the NVECTOR modules supplied with SUNDIALS, the user must make a call of the form

   ```
   CALL FNVINIT***(...)
   ```

   in which the name and call sequence are as described in the appropriate section of Chapter 6.

3. SUNMATRIX **module initialization**

   In the case of a stiff system, the implicit BDF method involves the solution of linear systems related to the Jacobian of the DAE system. If using a Newton iteration with the direct SUNLINSOL linear solver module and one of the SUNMATRIX modules supplied with SUNDIALS, the user must make a call of the form

   ```
   CALL FSUN***MATINIT(...)
   ```

   in which the name and call sequence are as described in the appropriate section of Chapter 7. Note that the dense, band, or sparse matrix options are usable only in a serial or multi-threaded environment.

4. SUNLINSOL **module initialization**

   If using a Newton iteration with one of the SUNLINSOL linear solver modules supplied with SUNDIALS, the user must make a call of the form

   ```
   CALL FSUNBANDLINSOLINIT(...)
   CALL FSUNDENSELINSOLINIT(...)
   CALL FSUNKLUINIT(...)
   CALL FSUNLAPACKBANDINIT(...)
   CALL FSUNLAPACKDENSEINIT(...)
   CALL FSUNPCGINIT(...)
   CALL FSUNSPBCGSINIT(...)
   CALL FSUNSPFGMRINIT(...)
   CALL FSUNSPGMRINIT(...)
   CALL FSUNSPTFQMRINIT(...)
   CALL FSUNSUPERLUMTINIT(...)
   ```

   in which the call sequence is as described in the appropriate section of Chapter 8. Note that the dense, band, or sparse solvers are usable only in a serial or multi-threaded environment.

   Once one of these solvers has been initialized, its solver parameters may be modified using a call to the functions

```
CALL FSUNKLUSETORDERING(...)
CALL FSUNSUPERLUMTSETORDERING(...)
CALL FSUNPCGSETPRECTYPE(...)
CALL FSUNPCGSETMAXL(...)
CALL FSUNSPBCGSSETPRECTYPE(...)
CALL FSUNSPBCGSSETMAXL(...)
CALL FSUNSPFGMRSETGSTYPE(...)
CALL FSUNSPFGMRSETPRECTYPE(...)
CALL FSUNSPGMRSETGSTYPE(...)
CALL FSUNSPGMRSETPRECTYPE(...)
CALL FSUNSPTFQMRSETPRECTYPE(...)
CALL FSUNSPTFQMRSETMAXL(...)
```

where again the call sequences are described in the appropriate sections of Chapter 8.

5. **Problem specification**

To set various problem and solution parameters and allocate internal memory, make the following call:

`FIDAMALLOC`

Call
```
 CALL FIDAMALLOC(T0, Y0, YP0, IATOL, RTOL, ATOL,
&                IOUT, ROUT, IPAR, RPAR, IER)
```

Description This function provides required problem and solution specifications, specifies optional inputs, allocates internal memory, and initializes IDA.

Arguments
- `T0` is the initial value of t.
- `Y0` is an array of initial conditions for y.
- `YP0` is an array of initial conditions for $\dot{y}$.
- `IATOL` specifies the type for absolute tolerance `ATOL`: 1 for scalar or 2 for array. If `IATOL`= 3, the arguments `RTOL` and `ATOL` are ignored and the user is expected to subsequently call `FIDAEWTSET` and provide the function `FIDAEWT`.
- `RTOL` is the relative tolerance (scalar).
- `ATOL` is the absolute tolerance (scalar or array).
- `IOUT` is an integer array of length at least 21 for integer optional outputs.
- `ROUT` is a real array of length at least 6 for real optional outputs.
- `IPAR` is an integer array of user data which will be passed unmodified to all user-provided routines.
- `RPAR` is a real array of user data which will be passed unmodified to all user-provided routines.

Return value `IER` is a return completion flag. Values are 0 for successful return and -1 otherwise. See printed message for details in case of failure.

Notes The user integer data arrays `IOUT` and `IPAR` must be declared as `INTEGER*4` or `INTEGER*8` according to the C type `long int`.

Modifications to the user data arrays `IPAR` and `RPAR` inside a user-provided routine will be propagated to all subsequent calls to such routines.

The optional outputs associated with the main IDA integrator are listed in Table 5.2.

As an alternative to providing tolerances in the call to `FIDAMALLOC`, the user may provide a routine to compute the error weights used in the WRMS norm evaluations. If supplied, it must have the following form:

```
SUBROUTINE FIDAEWT (Y, EWT, IPAR, RPAR, IER)
DIMENSION Y(*), EWT(*), IPAR(*), RPAR(*)
```

It must set the positive components of the error weight vector EWT for the calculation of the WRMS norm of Y. On return, set IER = 0 if FIDAEWT was successful, and nonzero otherwise. The arrays IPAR (of integers) and RPAR (of reals) contain user data and are the same as those passed to FIDAMALLOC.

If the FIDAEWT routine is provided, then, following the call to FIDAMALLOC, the user must make the call:

```
CALL FIDAEWTSET (FLAG, IER)
```

with FLAG $\neq 0$ to specify use of the user-supplied error weight routine. The argument IER is an error return flag, which is 0 for success or non-zero if an error occurred.

6. **Set optional inputs**

Call FIDASETIIN, FIDASETRIN, and/or FIDASETVIN to set desired optional inputs, if any. See §5.5 for details.

7. **Linear solver interface specification**

The variable-order, variable-coefficient BDF method used by IDA involves the solution of linear systems related to the system Jacobian $J = \partial F/\partial y + \alpha \partial F/\partial \dot{y}$. See Eq. (2.4). To attach the linear solver (and optionally the matrix) objects initialized in steps 3 and 4 above, the user of FIDA must initialize the IDADLS or IDASPILS linear solver interface.

IDADLS **direct linear solver interface**

To attach a direct SUNLINSOL object and corresponding SUNMATRIX object to the IDADLS interface, then following calls to initialize the SUNLINSOL and SUNMATRIX objects in steps 3 and 4 above, the user must make the call:

```
CALL FIDADLSINIT(IER)
```

IER is an error return flag set on 0 on success or -1 if a memory failure occurred.

Optional outputs specific to the IDADLS case are listed in Table 5.2.

IDADLS **with dense Jacobian matrix** As an option when using the IDADLS interface with SUNLINSOL_DENSE or SUNLINSOL_LAPACKDENSE linear solvers, the user may supply a routine that computes a dense approximation of the system Jacobian J. If supplied, it must have the following form:

```
 SUBROUTINE FIDADJAC (NEQ, T, Y, YP, R, DJAC, CJ, EWT, H,
&                     IPAR, RPAR, WK1, WK2, WK3, IER)
 DIMENSION Y(*), YP(*), R(*), EWT(*), DJAC(NEQ,*),
&          IPAR(*), RPAR(*), WK1(*), WK2(*), WK3(*)
```

This routine must compute the Jacobian and store it columnwise in DJAC. The vectors WK1, WK2, and WK3 of length NEQ are provided as work space for use in FIDADJAC. The input arguments T, Y, YP, R, and CJ are the current values of t, y, $\dot{y}$, $F(t, y, \dot{y})$, and α, respectively. The arrays IPAR (of integers) and RPAR (of reals) contain user data and are the same as those passed to FIDAMALLOC. NOTE: The argument NEQ has a type consistent with C type `long int` even in the case when the Lapack dense solver is to be used.

If the user's FIDADJAC uses difference quotient approximations, it may need to use the error weight array EWT and current stepsize H in the calculation of suitable increments. It may also need the unit roundoff, which can be obtained as the optional output ROUT(6), passed from the calling program to this routine using COMMON.

If the FIDADJAC routine is provided, then, following the call to FIDADLSINIT the user must make the call:

```
CALL FIDADENSESETJAC (FLAG, IER)
```

with FLAG $\neq 0$ to specify use of the user-supplied Jacobian approximation. The argument IER is an error return flag, which is 0 for success or non-zero if an error occurred.

IDADLS **with band Jacobian matrix** As an option when using the IDADLS interface with SUNLINSOL_BAND or SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND linear solvers, the user may supply a routine that computes a band approximation of the system Jacobian J. If supplied, it must have the following form:

```
 SUBROUTINE FIDABJAC(NEQ, MU, ML, MDIM, T, Y, YP, R, CJ, BJAC,
&                    EWT, H, IPAR, RPAR, WK1, WK2, WK3, IER)
 DIMENSION Y(*), YP(*), R(*), EWT(*), BJAC(MDIM,*),
&          IPAR(*), RPAR(*), WK1(*), WK2(*), WK3(*)
```

This routine must load the MDIM by NEQ array BJAC with the Jacobian matrix at the current $(t, y, \dot{y})$ in band form. Store in BJAC(k, j) the Jacobian element $J_{i,j}$ with $k = i - j$+MU+1 ($k = 1 \cdots$ ML + MU + 1) and $j = 1 \cdots N$. The vectors WK1, WK2, and WK3 of length NEQ are provided as work space for use in FIDABJAC. The input arguments T, Y, YP, R, and CJ are the current values of t, y, $\dot{y}$, $F(t, y, \dot{y})$, and α, respectively. The arrays IPAR (of integers) and RPAR (of reals) contain user data and are the same as those passed to FIDAMALLOC. NOTE: The arguments NEQ, MU, ML, and MDIM have a type consistent with C type `long int` even in the case when the Lapack band solver is to be used.

If the user's FIDABJAC uses difference quotient approximations, it may need to use the error weight array EWT and current stepsize H in the calculation of suitable increments. It may also need the unit roundoff, which can be obtained as the optional output ROUT(6), passed from the calling program to this routine using COMMON.

If the FIDABJAC routine is provided, then, following the call to FIDADLSINIT, the user must make the call:

```
CALL FIDABANDSETJAC (FLAG, IER)
```

with FLAG $\neq 0$ to specify use of the user-supplied Jacobian approximation. The argument IER is an error return flag, which is 0 for success or non-zero if an error occurred.

IDADLS **with sparse Jacobian matrix** When using the IDADLS interface with SUNLINSOL_KLU or SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT linear solvers, the user must supply the FIDASPJAC routine that computes a compressed-sparse-column or compressed-sparse-row if using KLU approximation of the system Jacobian $J = \partial F/\partial y + c_j \partial F/\partial \dot{y}$. If supplied, it must have the following form:

```
 SUBROUTINE FIDASPJAC(T, CJ, Y, YP, R, N, NNZ, JDATA, JINDEXVALS,
&                     JINDEXPTRS, H, IPAR, RPAR, WK1, WK2, WK3, IER)
```

It must load the N by N compressed sparse column [or compressed sparse row] matrix with storage for NNZ nonzeros, stored in the arrays JDATA (nonzero values), JINDEXVALS (row [or column] indices for each nonzero), JINDEXPTRS (indices for start of each column [or row]), with the Jacobian matrix at the current (t, y) in CSC [or CSR] form (see sunmatrix_sparse.h for more information). The arguments are T, the current time; CJ, scalar in the system proportional to the inverse step size; Y, an array containing state variables; YP, an array containing state derivatives; R, an array containing the system nonlinear residual; N, the number of matrix rows/columns in the Jacobian; NNZ, allocated length of nonzero storage; JDATA, nonzero values in the Jacobian (of length NNZ); JINDEXVALS, row [or column] indices for each nonzero in Jacobian (of length NNZ); JINDEXPTRS, pointers to each Jacobian column [or row] in the two preceding arrays (of length N+1); H, the current step size; IPAR, an array containing integer user data that was passed to FIDAMALLOC; RPAR, an array containing real user data that was passed to FIDAMALLOC; WK*, work arrays containing

temporary workspace of same size as Y; and IER, error return code (0 if successful, > 0 if a recoverable error occurred, or < 0 if an unrecoverable error occurred.)

To indicate that the FIDASPJAC routine has been provided, then following the call to FIDADLSINIT, the following call must be made

```
CALL FIDASPARSESETJAC (IER)
```

The int return flag IER is an error return flag which is 0 for success or nonzero for an error.

IDASPILS **iterative linear solver interface**

To attach an iterative SUNLINSOL object to the IDASPILS interface, then following the call to initialize the SUNLINSOL object in step 4 above, the user must make the call:

```
CALL FIDASPILSINIT(IER)
```

IER is an error return flag set on 0 on success or -1 if a memory failure occurred.

Optional outputs specific to the IDASPILS case are listed in Table 5.2.

Functions used by IDASPILS

Optional user-supplied routines FIDAJTIMES and FIDAJTSETUP (see below), can be provided for Jacobian-vector products. If they are, then, following the call to FIDASPILSINIT, the user must make the call:

```
CALL FIDASPILSSETJAC (FLAG, IER)
```

with FLAG $\neq 0$. The return flag IER is 0 if successful, or negative if a memory error occurred.

If preconditioning is to be done, then the user must call

```
CALL FIDASPILSSETPREC (FLAG, IER)
```

with FLAG $\neq 0$. The return flag IER is 0 if successful, or negative if a memory error occurred. In addition, the user must supply preconditioner routines FIDAPSET and FIDAPSOL.

User-supplied routines for IDASPILS

With treatment of the linear systems by any of the Krylov iterative solvers, there are four optional user-supplied routines — FIDAJTIMES, FIDAJTSETUP, FIDAPSOL, and FIDAPSET. The specifications for these routines are given below.

As an option when using the IDASPILS linear solver interface, the user may supply a routine that computes the product of the system Jacobian $J = \partial F/\partial y + \alpha \partial F/\partial \dot{y}$ and a given vector v. If supplied, it must have the following form:

```
 SUBROUTINE FIDAJTIMES(T, Y, YP, R, V, FJV, CJ, EWT, H,
&                      IPAR, RPAR, WK1, WK2, IER)
 DIMENSION Y(*), YP(*), R(*), V(*), FJV(*), EWT(*),
&          IPAR(*), RPAR(*), WK1(*), WK2(*)
```

This routine must compute the product vector Jv, where the vector v is stored in V, and store the product in FJV. On return, set IER = 0 if FIDAJTIMES was successful, and nonzero otherwise. The vectors W1K and WK2, of length NEQ, are provided as work space for use in FIDAJTIMES. The input arguments T, Y, YP, R, and CJ are the current values of t, y, $\dot{y}$, $F(t, y, \dot{y})$, and α, respectively. The arrays IPAR (of integers) and RPAR (of reals) contain user data and are the same as those passed to FIDAMALLOC.

If the user's FIDAJTIMES uses difference quotient approximations, it may need to use the error weight array EWT and current stepsize H in the calculation of suitable increments. It may also need the unit roundoff, which can be obtained as the optional output ROUT(6), passed from the calling program to this routine using COMMON.

If the user's Jacobian-times-vector product routine requires that any Jacobian related data be evaluated or preprocessed, then the following routine can be used for the evaluation and preprocessing of this data:

```
SUBROUTINE FIDAJTSETUP (T, Y, YP, R, CJ, EWT, H, IPAR, RPAR, IER)
DIMENSION Y(*), YP(*), R(*), EWT(*), IPAR(*), RPAR(*)
```

Typically this routine will use only T, Y, and IDAYP. It should compute any necessary data for subsequent calls to FIDAJTIMES. On return, set IER = 0 if FIDAJTSETUP was successful, and nonzero otherwise. The arrays IPAR (of integers) and RPAR (of reals) contain user data and are the same as those passed to FIDAMALLOC.

If the user calls FIDASPILSSETJAC, the routine FIDAJTSETUP must be provided, even if it is not needed, and it must return IER=0.

If preconditioning is to be included, the following routine must be supplied, for solution of the preconditioner linear system:

```
 SUBROUTINE FIDAPSOL(T, Y, YP, R, RV, ZV, CJ, DELTA, EWT,
&                    IPAR, RPAR, IER)
 DIMENSION Y(*), YP(*), R(*), RV(*), ZV(*), EWT(*),
&          IPAR(*), RPAR(*)
```

It must solve the preconditioner linear system $Pz = r$, where $r =$ RV is input, and store the solution z in ZV. Here P is the left preconditioner. The input arguments T, Y, YP, R, and CJ are the current values of t, y, $\dot{y}$, $F(t, y, \dot{y})$, and α, respectively. On return, set IER = 0 if FIDAPSOL was successful, set IER positive if a recoverable error occurred, and set IER negative if a non-recoverable error occurred.

The arguments EWT and DELTA are input and provide the error weight array and a scalar tolerance, respectively, for use by FIDAPSOL if it uses an iterative method in its solution. In that case, the residual vector $\rho = r - Pz$ of the system should be made less than DELTA in weighted ℓ_2 norm, i.e. $\sqrt{\sum(\rho_i * \texttt{EWT}[i])^2} <$ DELTA. The arrays IPAR (of integers) and RPAR (of reals) contain user data and are the same as those passed to FIDAMALLOC.

If the user's preconditioner requires that any Jacobian-related data be evaluated or preprocessed, then the following routine is to be used for the evaluation and preprocessing of the preconditioner:

```
 SUBROUTINE FIDAPSET(T, Y, YP, R, CJ, EWT, H,
&                    IPAR, RPAR, IER)
 DIMENSION Y(*), YP(*), R(*), EWT(*),
&          IPAR(*), RPAR(*)
```

It must perform any evaluation of Jacobian-related data and preprocessing needed for the solution of the preconditioner linear systems by FIDAPSOL. The input arguments T, Y, YP, R, and CJ are the current values of t, y, $\dot{y}$, $F(t, y, \dot{y})$, and α, respectively. On return, set IER = 0 if FIDAPSET was successful, set IER positive if a recoverable error occurred, and set IER negative if a non-recoverable error occurred. The arrays IPAR (of integers) and RPAR (of reals) contain user data and are the same as those passed to FIDAMALLOC.

If the user's FIDAPSET uses difference quotient approximations, it may need to use the error weight array EWT and current stepsize H in the calculation of suitable increments. It may also need the

unit roundoff, which can be obtained as the optional output ROUT(6), passed from the calling program to this routine using COMMON.

If the user calls FIDASPILSSETPREC, the subroutine FIDAPSET must be provided, even if it is not needed, and it must return IER = 0.

8. **Correct initial values**

   Optionally, to correct the initial values y and/or $\dot{y}$, make the call

   ```
   CALL FIDACALCIC (ICOPT, TOUT1, IER)
   ```

   (See §2.1 for details.) The arguments are as follows: ICOPT is 1 for initializing the algebraic components of y and differential components of $\dot{y}$, or 2 for initializing all of y. IER is an error return flag, which is 0 for success, or negative for a failure (see IDACalcIC return values).

9. **Problem solution**

   Carrying out the integration is accomplished by making calls as follows:

   ```
   CALL FIDASOLVE (TOUT, T, Y, YP, ITASK, IER)
   ```

   The arguments are as follows. TOUT specifies the next value of t at which a solution is desired (input). T is the value of t reached by the solver on output. Y is an array containing the computed solution vector y on output. YP is an array containing the computed solution vector $\dot{y}$ on output. ITASK is a task indicator and should be set to 1 for normal mode (overshoot TOUT and interpolate), or to 2 for one-step mode (return after each internal step taken). IER is a completion flag and will be set to a positive value upon successful return or to a negative value if an error occurred. These values correspond to the IDASolve returns (see §4.5.6 and §B.2). The current values of the optional outputs are available in IOUT and ROUT (see Table 5.2).

10. **Additional solution output**

    After a successful return from FIDASOLVE, the routine FIDAGETDKY may be called to get interpolated values of y or any derivative $d^k y/dt^k$ for k not exceeding the current method order, and for any value of t in the last internal step taken by IDA. The call is as follows:

    ```
    CALL FIDAGETDKY (T, K, DKY, IER)
    ```

    where T is the input value of t at which solution derivative is desired, K is the derivative order, and DKY is an array containing the computed vector $y^{(K)}(t)$ on return. The value of T must lie between TCUR - HLAST and TCUR. The value of K must satisfy $0 \leq K \leq$QLAST. (See the optional outputs for TCUR, HLAST, and QLAST.) The return flag IER is set to 0 upon successful return, or to a negative value to indicate an illegal input.

11. **Problem reinitialization**

    To re-initialize the IDA solver for the solution of a new problem of the same size as one already solved, make the following call:

    ```
    CALL FIDAREINIT (T0, Y0, YP0, IATOL, RTOL, ATOL, IER)
    ```

    The arguments have the same names and meanings as those of FIDAMALLOC. FIDAREINIT performs the same initializations as FIDAMALLOC, but does no memory allocation, using instead the existing internal memory created by the previous FIDAMALLOC call.

    Following this call, if the choice of linear solver is being changed then a user must make a call to create the alternate SUNLINSOL module and then attach it to the IDADLS or IDASPILS interface, as shown above. If only linear solver parameters are being modified, then these calls may be made without re-attaching to the IDADLS or IDASPILS interface.

12. **Memory deallocation**

To free the internal memory created by the call to FIDAMALLOC, FIDADLSINIT/FIDASPILSINIT, FNVINIT* and FSUN***MATINIT, make the call

```
CALL FIDAFREE
```

5.5 FIDA optional input and output

In order to keep the number of user-callable FIDA interface routines to a minimum, optional inputs to the IDA solver are passed through only three routines: FIDASETIIN for integer optional inputs, FIDASETRIN for real optional inputs, and FIDASETVIN for real vector (array) optional inputs. These functions should be called as follows:

```
CALL FIDASETIIN(KEY, IVAL, IER)
CALL FIDASETRIN(KEY, RVAL, IER)
CALL FIDASETVIN(KEY, VVAL, IER)
```

where KEY is a quoted string indicating which optional input is set (see Table 5.1), IVAL is the input integer value, RVAL is the input real value (scalar), VVAL is the input real array, and IER is an integer return flag which is set to 0 on success and a negative value if a failure occurred. IVAL should be declared so as to match C type long int.

When using FIDASETVIN to specify the variable types (KEY = 'ID_VEC') the components in the array VVAL must be 1.0 to indicate a differential variable, or 0.0 to indicate an algebraic variable. Note that this array is required only if FIDACALCIC is to be called with ICOPT = 1, or if algebraic variables are suppressed from the error test (indicated using FIDASETIIN with KEY = 'SUPPRESS_ALG'). When using FIDASETVIN to specify optional constraints on the solution vector (KEY = 'CONSTR_VEC') the components in the array VVAL should be one of -2.0, -1.0, 0.0, 1.0, or 2.0. See the description of IDASetConstraints (§4.5.7.1) for details.

The optional outputs from the IDA solver are accessed not through individual functions, but rather through a pair of arrays, IOUT (integer type) of dimension at least 21, and ROUT (real type) of dimension at least 6. These arrays are owned (and allocated) by the user and are passed as arguments to FIDAMALLOC. Table 5.2 lists the entries in these two arrays and specifies the optional variable as well as the IDA function which is actually called to extract the optional output.

For more details on the optional inputs and outputs, see §4.5.7 and §4.5.9.

In addition to the optional inputs communicated through FIDASET* calls and the optional outputs extracted from IOUT and ROUT, the following user-callable routines are available:

To reset the tolerances at any time, make the following call:

```
CALL FIDATOLREINIT (IATOL, RTOL, ATOL, IER)
```

The tolerance arguments have the same names and meanings as those of FIDAMALLOC. The error return flag IER is 0 if successful, and negative if there was a memory failure or illegal input.

To obtain the error weight array EWT, containing the multiplicative error weights used the WRMS norms, make the following call:

```
CALL FIDAGETERRWEIGHTS (EWT, IER)
```

This computes the EWT array, normally defined by Eq. (2.6). The array EWT, of length NEQ or NLOCAL, must already have been declared by the user. The error return flag IER is zero if successful, and negative if there was a memory error.

To obtain the estimated local errors, following a successful call to FIDASOLVE, make the following call:

```
CALL FIDAGETESTLOCALERR (ELE, IER)
```

This computes the ELE array of estimated local errors as of the last step taken. The array ELE must already have been declared by the user. The error return flag IER is zero if successful, and negative if there was a memory error.

Table 5.1: Keys for setting FIDA optional inputs

Integer optional inputs (FIDASETIIN)

Key	Optional input	Default value
MAX_ORD	Maximum LMM method order	5
MAX_NSTEPS	Maximum no. of internal steps before t_{out}	500
MAX_ERRFAIL	Maximum no. of error test failures	10
MAX_NITERS	Maximum no. of nonlinear iterations	4
MAX_CONVFAIL	Maximum no. of convergence failures	10
SUPPRESS_ALG	Suppress alg. vars. from error test (1 = SUNTRUE)	0 (= SUNFALSE)
MAX_NSTEPS_IC	Maximum no. of steps for IC calc.	5
MAX_NITERS_IC	Maximum no. of Newton iterations for IC calc.	10
MAX_NJE_IC	Maximum no. of Jac. evals fo IC calc.	4
LS_OFF_IC	Turn off line search (1 = SUNTRUE)	0 (= SUNFALSE)

Real optional inputs (FIDASETRIN)

Key	Optional input	Default value
INIT_STEP	Initial step size	estimated
MAX_STEP	Maximum absolute step size	∞
STOP_TIME	Value of t_{stop}	undefined
NLCONV_COEF	Coeff. in the nonlinear conv. test	0.33
NLCONV_COEF_IC	Coeff. in the nonlinear conv. test for IC calc.	0.0033
STEP_TOL_IC	Lower bound on Newton step for IC calc.	$\text{uround}^{2/3}$

Real vector optional inputs (FIDASETVIN)

Key	Optional input	Default value
ID_VEC	Differential/algebraic component types	undefined
CONSTR_VEC	Inequality constraints on solution	undefined

Table 5.2: Description of the FIDA optional output arrays IOUT and ROUT

Integer output array IOUT

Index	Optional output	IDA function
IDA main solver		
1	LENRW	IDAGetWorkSpace
2	LENIW	IDAGetWorkSpace
3	NST	IDAGetNumSteps
4	NRE	IDAGetNumResEvals
5	NETF	IDAGetNumErrTestFails
6	NNCFAILS	IDAGetNonlinSolvConvFails
7	NNI	IDAGetNumNonlinSolvIters
8	NSETUPS	IDAGetNumLinSolvSetups
9	QLAST	IDAGetLastOrder
10	QCUR	IDAGetCurrentOrder
11	NBCKTRKOPS	IDAGetNumBacktrackOps
12	NGE	IDAGetNumGEvals
IDADLS linear solver interface		
13	LENRWLS	IDADlsGetWorkSpace
14	LENIWLS	IDADlsGetWorkSpace
15	LS_FLAG	IDADlsGetLastFlag
16	NRELS	IDADlsGetNumResEvals
17	NJE	IDADlsGetNumJacEvals
IDASPILS linear solver interface		
13	LENRWLS	IDASpilsGetWorkSpace
14	LENIWLS	IDASpilsGetWorkSpace
15	LS_FLAG	IDASpilsGetLastFlag
16	NRELS	IDASpilsGetNumResEvals
17	NJE	IDASpilsGetNumJtimesEvals
18	NPE	IDASpilsGetNumPrecEvals
19	NPS	IDASpilsGetNumPrecSolves
20	NLI	IDASpilsGetNumLinIters
21	NCFL	IDASpilsGetNumConvFails

Real output array ROUT

Index	Optional output	IDA function
1	H0_USED	IDAGetActualInitStep
2	HLAST	IDAGetLastStep
3	HCUR	IDAGetCurrentStep
4	TCUR	IDAGetCurrentTime
5	TOLFACT	IDAGetTolScaleFactor
6	UROUND	unit roundoff

5.6 Usage of the FIDAROOT interface to rootfinding

The FIDAROOT interface package allows programs written in FORTRAN to use the rootfinding feature of the IDA solver module. The user-callable functions in FIDAROOT, with the corresponding IDA functions, are as follows:

- `FIDAROOTINIT` interfaces to `IDARootInit`.
- `FIDAROOTINFO` interfaces to `IDAGetRootInfo`.
- `FIDAROOTFREE` interfaces to `IDARootFree`.

Note that, at this time FIDAROOT does not provide support to specify the direction of zero-crossing that is to be monitored. Instead, all roots are considered. However, the actual direction of zero-crossing is reported (through the sign of the non-zero elements in the array `INFO` returned by `FIDAROTINFO`).

In order to use the rootfinding feature of IDA, the following call must be made, after calling `FIDAMALLOC` but prior to calling `FIDASOLVE`, to allocate and initialize memory for the `FIDAROOT` module:

```
CALL FIDAROOTINIT (NRTFN, IER)
```

The arguments are as follows: `NRTFN` is the number of root functions. `IER` is a return completion flag; its values are 0 for success, -1 if the `IDA` memory was `NULL`, and -14 if a memory allocation failed.

To specifiy the functions whose roots are to be found, the user must define the following routine:

```
SUBROUTINE FIDAROOTFN (T, Y, YP, G, IPAR, RPAR, IER)
DIMENSION Y(*), YP(*), G(*), IPAR(*), RPAR(*)
```

It must set the `G` array, of length `NRTFN`, with components $g_i(t, y, \dot{y})$, as a function of `T` $= t$ and the arrays `Y` $= y$ and `YP` $= \dot{y}$. The arrays `IPAR` (of integers) and `RPAR` (of reals) contain user data and are the same as those passed to `FIDAMALLOC`. Set `IER` on 0 if successful, or on a non-zero value if an error occurred.

When making calls to `FIDASOLVE` to solve the DAE system, the occurrence of a root is flagged by the return value `IER` $= 2$. In that case, if `NRTFN` > 1, the functions g_i which were found to have a root can be identified by making the following call:

```
CALL FIDAROOTINFO (NRTFN, INFO, IER)
```

The arguments are as follows: `NRTFN` is the number of root functions. `INFO` is an integer array of length `NRTFN` with root information. `IER` is a return completion flag; its values are 0 for success, negative if there was a memory failure. The returned values of `INFO(i)` (`i`$= 1, \ldots,$ `NRTFN`) are 0 or ± 1, such that `INFO(i)` $= +1$ if $g_{\mathtt{i}}$ was found to have a root and $g_{\mathtt{i}}$ is increasing, `INFO(i)` $= -1$ if $g_{\mathtt{i}}$ was found to have a root and $g_{\mathtt{i}}$ is dereasing, and `INFO(i)` $= 0$ otherwise.

The total number of calls made to the root function `FIDAROOTFN`, denoted `NGE`, can be obtained from `IOUT(12)`. If the FIDA/IDA memory block is reinitialized to solve a different problem via a call to `FIDAREINIT`, then the counter `NGE` is reset to zero.

To free the memory resources allocated by a prior call to `FIDAROOTINIT`, make the following call:

```
CALL FIDAROOTFREE
```

See §4.5.5 for additional information on the rootfinding feature.

5.7 Usage of the FIDABBD interface to IDABBDPRE

The FIDABBD interface sub-module is a package of C functions which, as part of the FIDA interface module, support the use of the IDA solver with the parallel NVECTOR_PARALLEL module, in a combination of any of the Krylov iterative solver modules with the IDABBDPRE preconditioner module (see §4.7).

The user-callable functions in this package, with the corresponding IDA and IDABBDPRE functions, are as follows:

- FIDABBDINIT interfaces to IDABBDPrecAlloc.
- FIDABBDREINIT interfaces to IDABBDPrecReInit.
- FIDABBDOPT interfaces to IDABBDPRE optional output functions.
- FIDABBDFREE interfaces to IDABBDPrecFree.

In addition to the FORTRAN residual function FIDARESFUN, the user-supplied functions used by this package, are listed below, each with the corresponding interface function which calls it (and its type within IDABBDPRE or IDA):

FIDABBD routine (FORTRAN)	IDA function (C)	IDA function type
FIDAGLOCFN	FIDAgloc	IDABBDLocalFn
FIDACOMMFN	FIDAcfn	IDABBDCommFn
FIDAJTIMES	FIDAJtimes	IDASpilsJacTimesVecFn
FIDAJTSETUP	FIDAJTSetup	IDASpilsJacTimesSetupFn

As with the rest of the FIDA routines, the names of all user-supplied routines here are fixed, in order to maximize portability for the resulting mixed-language program. Additionally, based on flags discussed above in §5.3, the names of the user-supplied routines are mapped to actual values through a series of definitions in the header file fidabbd.h.

The following is a summary of the usage of this module. Steps that are unchanged from the main program described in §5.4 are grayed-out.

1. **Residual function specification**
2. NVECTOR **module initialization**
3. SUNLINSOL **module initialization**

   Initialize one of the iterative SUNLINSOL modules, by calling one of FSUNPCGINIT, FSUNSPBCGSINIT, FSUNSPFGMRINIT, FSUNSPGMRINIT or FSUNSPTFQMRINIT.
4. **Problem specification**
5. **Set optional inputs**
6. **Iterative linear solver interface specification**

   Initialize the IDASPILS iterative linear solver interface by calling FIDASPILSINIT.
7. **BBD preconditioner initialization**

   To initialize the IDABBDPRE preconditioner, make the following call:

   ```
   CALL FIDABBDINIT (NLOCAL, MUDQ, MLDQ, MU, ML, DQRELY, IER)
   ```

   The arguments are as follows. NLOCAL is the local size of vectors on this processor. MUDQ and MLDQ are the upper and lower half-bandwidths to be used in the computation of the local Jacobian blocks by difference quotients. These may be smaller than the true half-bandwidths of the Jacobian of the local block of G, when smaller values may provide greater efficiency. MU and ML are the upper and lower half-bandwidths of the band matrix that is retained as an approximation of the local Jacobian block. These may be smaller than MUDQ and MLDQ. DQRELY is the relative increment factor in y for difference quotients (optional). A value of 0.0 indicates the default, $\sqrt{\text{unit roundoff}}$. IER is a return completion flag. A value of 0 indicates success, while a value of -1 indicates that a memory failure occurred or that an input had an illegal value.
8. **Problem solution**

9. **Additional solution output**

10. IDABBDPRE **Optional outputs**

    Optional outputs specific to the SPGMR, SPBCGS, or SPTFQMR solver are listed in Table 5.2. To obtain the optional outputs associated with the IDABBDPRE module, make the following call:

    ```
    CALL FIDABBDOPT (LENRWBBD, LENIWBBD, NGEBBD)
    ```

    The arguments should be consistent with C type `long int`. Their returned values are as follows: `LENRWBBD` is the length of real preconditioner work space, in `realtype` words. `LENIWBBD` is the length of integer preconditioner work space, in integer words. Both of these sizes are local to the current processor. `NGEBBD` is the number of $G(t, y, \dot{y})$ evaluations (calls to `FIDALOCFN`) so far.

11. **Problem reinitialization**

    If a sequence of problems of the same size is being solved using the same linear solver in combination with the IDABBDPRE preconditioner, then the IDA package can be re-initialized for the second and subsequent problems by calling `FIDAREINIT`, following which a call to `FIDABBDINIT` may or may not be needed. If the input arguments are the same, no `FIDABBDINIT` call is needed. If there is a change in input arguments other than `MU` or `ML`, then the user program should make the call

    ```
    CALL FIDABBDREINIT (NLOCAL, MUDQ, MLDQ, DQRELY, IER)
    ```

    This reinitializes the IDABBDPRE preconditioner, but without reallocating its memory. The arguments of the `FIDABBDREINIT` routine have the same names and meanings as those of `FIDABBDINIT`. If the value of `MU` or `ML` is being changed, then a call to `FIDABBDINIT` must be made. Finally, if there is a change in any of the linear solver inputs, then a call to one of `FSUN****INIT`, followed by a call to `FIDASPILSINIT` must also be made; in this case the linear solver memory is reallocated.

12. **Memory deallocation**

    (The memory allocated for the FIDABBD module is deallocated automatically by `FIDAFREE`.)

13. **User-supplied routines**

    The following two routines must be supplied for use with the IDABBDPRE module:

    ```
    SUBROUTINE FIDAGLOCFN (NLOC, T, YLOC, YPLOC, GLOC, IPAR, RPAR, IER)
    DIMENSION YLOC(*), YPLOC(*), GLOC(*), IPAR(*), RPAR(*)
    ```

    This routine is to evaluate the function $G(t, y, \dot{y})$ approximating F (possibly identical to F), in terms of `T` $= t$, and the arrays `YLOC` and `YPLOC` (of length `NLOC`), which are the sub-vectors of y and $\dot{y}$ local to this processor. The resulting (local) sub-vector is to be stored in the array `GLOC`. `IER` is a return flag that should be set to 0 if successful, to 1 (for a recoverable error), or to -1 (for a non-recoverable error). The arrays `IPAR` (of integers) and `RPAR` (of reals) contain user data and are the same as those passed to `FIDAMALLOC`.

    ```
    SUBROUTINE FIDACOMMFN (NLOC, T, YLOC, YPLOC, IPAR, RPAR, IER)
    DIMENSION YLOC(*), YPLOC(*), IPAR(*), RPAR(*)
    ```

    This routine is to perform the inter-processor communication necessary for the `FIDAGLOCFN` routine. Each call to `FIDACOMMFN` is preceded by a call to the residual routine `FIDARESFUN` with the same arguments `T`, `YLOC`, and `YPLOC`. Thus `FIDACOMMFN` can omit any communications done by `FIDARESFUN` if relevant to the evaluation of `GLOC`. The arrays `IPAR` (of integers) and `RPAR` (of reals) contain user data and are the same as those passed to `FIDAMALLOC`. `IER` is a return flag that should be set to 0 if successful, to 1 (for a recoverable error), or to -1 (for a non-recoverable error).

The subroutine `FIDACOMMFN` must be supplied even if it is empty, and it must return `IER = 0`.

Optionally, the user can supply routines `FIDAJTIMES` and `FIDAJTSETUP` for the evaluation of Jacobian-vector products, as described above in step 7 in §5.4.

Chapter 6

Description of the NVECTOR module

The SUNDIALS solvers are written in a data-independent manner. They all operate on generic vectors (of type `N_Vector`) through a set of operations defined by the particular NVECTOR implementation. Users can provide their own specific implementation of the NVECTOR module, or use one of the implementations provided with SUNDIALS. The generic operations are described below and the implementations provided with SUNDIALS are described in the following sections.

The generic `N_Vector` type is a pointer to a structure that has an implementation-dependent *content* field containing the description and actual data of the vector, and an *ops* field pointing to a structure with generic vector operations. The type `N_Vector` is defined as

```
typedef struct _generic_N_Vector *N_Vector;

struct _generic_N_Vector {
    void *content;
    struct _generic_N_Vector_Ops *ops;
};
```

The `_generic_N_Vector_Ops` structure is essentially a list of pointers to the various actual vector operations, and is defined as

```
struct _generic_N_Vector_Ops {
  N_Vector_ID (*nvgetvectorid)(N_Vector);
  N_Vector    (*nvclone)(N_Vector);
  N_Vector    (*nvcloneempty)(N_Vector);
  void        (*nvdestroy)(N_Vector);
  void        (*nvspace)(N_Vector, sunindextype *, sunindextype *);
  realtype*   (*nvgetarraypointer)(N_Vector);
  void        (*nvsetarraypointer)(realtype *, N_Vector);
  void        (*nvlinearsum)(realtype, N_Vector, realtype, N_Vector, N_Vector);
  void        (*nvconst)(realtype, N_Vector);
  void        (*nvprod)(N_Vector, N_Vector, N_Vector);
  void        (*nvdiv)(N_Vector, N_Vector, N_Vector);
  void        (*nvscale)(realtype, N_Vector, N_Vector);
  void        (*nvabs)(N_Vector, N_Vector);
  void        (*nvinv)(N_Vector, N_Vector);
  void        (*nvaddconst)(N_Vector, realtype, N_Vector);
  realtype    (*nvdotprod)(N_Vector, N_Vector);
  realtype    (*nvmaxnorm)(N_Vector);
  realtype    (*nvwrmsnorm)(N_Vector, N_Vector);
```

```
  realtype    (*nvwrmsnormmask)(N_Vector, N_Vector, N_Vector);
  realtype    (*nvmin)(N_Vector);
  realtype    (*nvwl2norm)(N_Vector, N_Vector);
  realtype    (*nvl1norm)(N_Vector);
  void        (*nvcompare)(realtype, N_Vector, N_Vector);
  booleantype (*nvinvtest)(N_Vector, N_Vector);
  booleantype (*nvconstrmask)(N_Vector, N_Vector, N_Vector);
  realtype    (*nvminquotient)(N_Vector, N_Vector);
  int         (*nvlinearcombination)(int, realtype*, N_Vector*, N_Vector);
  int         (*nvscaleaddmulti)(int, realtype*, N_Vector, N_Vector*, N_Vector*);
  int         (*nvdotprodmulti)(int, N_Vector, N_Vector*, realtype*);
  int         (*nvlinearsumvectorarray)(int, realtype, N_Vector*, realtype,
                                        N_Vector*, N_Vector*);
  int         (*nvscalevectorarray)(int, realtype*, N_Vector*, N_Vector*);
  int         (*nvconstvectorarray)(int, realtype, N_Vector*);
  int         (*nvwrmsnomrvectorarray)(int, N_Vector*, N_Vector*, realtype*);
  int         (*nvwrmsnomrmaskvectorarray)(int, N_Vector*, N_Vector, N_Vector,
                                           realtype*);
  int         (*nvscaleaddmultivectorarray)(int, int, realtype*, N_Vector*,
                                            N_Vector**, N_Vector**);
  int         (*nvlinearcombinationvectorarray)(int, int, realtype*, N_Vector**,
                                               N_Vector*);
};
```

The generic NVECTOR module defines and implements the vector operations acting on an `N_Vector`. These routines are nothing but wrappers for the vector operations defined by a particular NVECTOR implementation, which are accessed through the *ops* field of the `N_Vector` structure. To illustrate this point we show below the implementation of a typical vector operation from the generic NVECTOR module, namely `N_VScale`, which performs the scaling of a vector `x` by a scalar `c`:

```
void N_VScale(realtype c, N_Vector x, N_Vector z)
{
   z->ops->nvscale(c, x, z);
}
```

Table 6.2 contains a complete list of all standard vector operations defined by the generic NVECTOR module. Tables 6.3 and 6.4 list *optional* fused and vector array operations respectively. These operations are intended to increase data reuse, reduce parallel communication on distributed memory systems, and lower the number of kernel launches on systems with accelerators. If a particular NVECTOR implementation defines one of the fused or vector array operations as `NULL`, the NVECTOR interface will call one of the standard vector operations as necessary.

Finally, note that the generic NVECTOR module defines the functions `N_VCloneVectorArray` and `N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty`. Both functions create (by cloning) an array of `count` variables of type `N_Vector`, each of the same type as an existing `N_Vector`. Their prototypes are

```
N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArray(int count, N_Vector w);
N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty(int count, N_Vector w);
```

and their definitions are based on the implementation-specific `N_VClone` and `N_VCloneEmpty` operations, respectively.

An array of variables of type `N_Vector` can be destroyed by calling `N_VDestroyVectorArray`, whose prototype is

```
void N_VDestroyVectorArray(N_Vector *vs, int count);
```

and whose definition is based on the implementation-specific `N_VDestroy` operation.

A particular implementation of the NVECTOR module must:

Table 6.1: Vector Identifications associated with vector kernels supplied with SUNDIALS.

Vector ID	Vector type	ID Value
SUNDIALS_NVEC_SERIAL	Serial	0
SUNDIALS_NVEC_PARALLEL	Distributed memory parallel (MPI)	1
SUNDIALS_NVEC_OPENMP	OpenMP shared memory parallel	2
SUNDIALS_NVEC_PTHREADS	PThreads shared memory parallel	3
SUNDIALS_NVEC_PARHYP	*hypre* ParHyp parallel vector	4
SUNDIALS_NVEC_PETSC	PETSc parallel vector	5
SUNDIALS_NVEC_CUSTOM	User-provided custom vector	6

- Specify the *content* field of `N_Vector`.
- Define and implement the vector operations. Note that the names of these routines should be unique to that implementation in order to permit using more than one NVECTOR module (each with different `N_Vector` internal data representations) in the same code.
- Define and implement user-callable constructor and destructor routines to create and free an `N_Vector` with the new *content* field and with *ops* pointing to the new vector operations.
- Optionally, define and implement additional user-callable routines acting on the newly defined `N_Vector` (e.g., a routine to print the content for debugging purposes).
- Optionally, provide accessor macros as needed for that particular implementation to be used to access different parts in the *content* field of the newly defined `N_Vector`.

Each NVECTOR implementation included in SUNDIALS has a unique identifier specified in enumeration and shown in Table 6.1. It is recommended that a user-supplied NVECTOR implementation use the `SUNDIALS_NVEC_CUSTOM` identifier.

Table 6.2: Description of the NVECTOR operations

Name	Usage and Description
`N_VGetVectorID`	`id = N_VGetVectorID(w);` Returns the vector type identifier for the vector `w`. It is used to determine the vector implementation type (e.g. serial, parallel,...) from the abstract `N_Vector` interface. Returned values are given in Table 6.1.
`N_VClone`	`v = N_VClone(w);` Creates a new `N_Vector` of the same type as an existing vector `w` and sets the *ops* field. It does not copy the vector, but rather allocates storage for the new vector.

continued on next page

continued from last page

Name	Usage and Description
N_VCloneEmpty	`v = N_VCloneEmpty(w);` Creates a new `N_Vector` of the same type as an existing vector `w` and sets the *ops* field. It does not allocate storage for data.
N_VDestroy	`N_VDestroy(v);` Destroys the `N_Vector` `v` and frees memory allocated for its internal data.
N_VSpace	`N_VSpace(nvSpec, &lrw, &liw);` Returns storage requirements for one `N_Vector`. `lrw` contains the number of realtype words and `liw` contains the number of integer words. This function is advisory only, for use in determining a user's total space requirements; it could be a dummy function in a user-supplied NVECTOR module if that information is not of interest.
N_VGetArrayPointer	`vdata = N_VGetArrayPointer(v);` Returns a pointer to a `realtype` array from the `N_Vector` `v`. Note that this assumes that the internal data in `N_Vector` is a contiguous array of `realtype`. This routine is only used in the solver-specific interfaces to the dense and banded (serial) linear solvers, the sparse linear solvers (serial and threaded), and in the interfaces to the banded (serial) and band-block-diagonal (parallel) preconditioner modules provided with SUNDIALS.
N_VSetArrayPointer	`N_VSetArrayPointer(vdata, v);` Overwrites the data in an `N_Vector` with a given array of `realtype`. Note that this assumes that the internal data in `N_Vector` is a contiguous array of `realtype`. This routine is only used in the interfaces to the dense (serial) linear solver, hence need not exist in a user-supplied NVECTOR module for a parallel environment.
N_VLinearSum	`N_VLinearSum(a, x, b, y, z);` Performs the operation $z = ax + by$, where a and b are `realtype` scalars and x and y are of type `N_Vector`: $z_i = ax_i + by_i$, $i = 0, \ldots, n-1$.
N_VConst	`N_VConst(c, z);` Sets all components of the `N_Vector` `z` to `realtype` `c`: $z_i = c, i = 0, \ldots, n-1$.
N_VProd	`N_VProd(x, y, z);` Sets the `N_Vector` `z` to be the component-wise product of the `N_Vector` inputs `x` and `y`: $z_i = x_i y_i$, $i = 0, \ldots, n-1$.

continued on next page

continued from last page

Name	Usage and Description
N_VDiv	`N_VDiv(x, y, z);` Sets the `N_Vector z` to be the component-wise ratio of the `N_Vector` inputs `x` and `y`: $z_i = x_i/y_i$, $i = 0, \ldots, n-1$. The y_i may not be tested for 0 values. It should only be called with a `y` that is guaranteed to have all nonzero components.
N_VScale	`N_VScale(c, x, z);` Scales the `N_Vector x` by the `realtype` scalar `c` and returns the result in `z`: $z_i = cx_i$, $i = 0, \ldots, n-1$.
N_VAbs	`N_VAbs(x, z);` Sets the components of the `N_Vector z` to be the absolute values of the components of the `N_Vector x`: $y_i = \lvert x_i \rvert$, $i = 0, \ldots, n-1$.
N_VInv	`N_VInv(x, z);` Sets the components of the `N_Vector z` to be the inverses of the components of the `N_Vector x`: $z_i = 1.0/x_i$, $i = 0, \ldots, n-1$. This routine may not check for division by 0. It should be called only with an `x` which is guaranteed to have all nonzero components.
N_VAddConst	`N_VAddConst(x, b, z);` Adds the `realtype` scalar `b` to all components of `x` and returns the result in the `N_Vector z`: $z_i = x_i + b$, $i = 0, \ldots, n-1$.
N_VDotProd	`d = N_VDotProd(x, y);` Returns the value of the ordinary dot product of `x` and `y`: $d = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} x_i y_i$.
N_VMaxNorm	`m = N_VMaxNorm(x);` Returns the maximum norm of the `N_Vector x`: $m = \max_i \lvert x_i \rvert$.
N_VWrmsNorm	`m = N_VWrmsNorm(x, w)` Returns the weighted root-mean-square norm of the `N_Vector x` with `realtype` weight vector `w`: $m = \sqrt{\left(\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} (x_i w_i)^2\right)/n}$.
N_VWrmsNormMask	`m = N_VWrmsNormMask(x, w, id);` Returns the weighted root mean square norm of the `N_Vector x` with `realtype` weight vector `w` built using only the elements of `x` corresponding to positive elements of the `N_Vector id`: $m = \sqrt{\left(\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} (x_i w_i H(id_i))^2\right)/n}$, where $H(\alpha) = \begin{cases} 1 & \alpha > 0 \\ 0 & \alpha \leq 0 \end{cases}$

continued on next page

continued from last page	
Name	**Usage and Description**
N_VMin	`m = N_VMin(x);` Returns the smallest element of the `N_Vector x`: $m = \min_i x_i$.
N_VWL2Norm	`m = N_VWL2Norm(x, w);` Returns the weighted Euclidean ℓ_2 norm of the `N_Vector x` with `realtype` weight vector `w`: $m = \sqrt{\sum_{i=0}^{n-1}(x_i w_i)^2}$.
N_VL1Norm	`m = N_VL1Norm(x);` Returns the ℓ_1 norm of the `N_Vector x`: $m = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \|x_i\|$.
N_VCompare	`N_VCompare(c, x, z);` Compares the components of the `N_Vector x` to the `realtype` scalar `c` and returns an `N_Vector z` such that: $z_i = 1.0$ if $\|x_i\| \geq c$ and $z_i = 0.0$ otherwise.
N_VInvTest	`t = N_VInvTest(x, z);` Sets the components of the `N_Vector z` to be the inverses of the components of the `N_Vector x`, with prior testing for zero values: $z_i = 1.0/x_i, i = 0, \ldots, n-1$. This routine returns a boolean assigned to `SUNTRUE` if all components of `x` are nonzero (successful inversion) and returns `SUNFALSE` otherwise.
N_VConstrMask	`t = N_VConstrMask(c, x, m);` Performs the following constraint tests: $x_i > 0$ if $c_i = 2$, $x_i \geq 0$ if $c_i = 1$, $x_i \leq 0$ if $c_i = -1$, $x_i < 0$ if $c_i = -2$. There is no constraint on x_i if $c_i = 0$. This routine returns a boolean assigned to `SUNFALSE` if any element failed the constraint test and assigned to `SUNTRUE` if all passed. It also sets a mask vector `m`, with elements equal to 1.0 where the constraint test failed, and 0.0 where the test passed. This routine is used only for constraint checking.
N_VMinQuotient	`minq = N_VMinQuotient(num, denom);` This routine returns the minimum of the quotients obtained by term-wise dividing $\texttt{num}_i$ by $\texttt{denom}_i$. A zero element in `denom` will be skipped. If no such quotients are found, then the large value `BIG_REAL` (defined in the header file `sundials_types.h`) is returned.

Table 6.3: Description of the NVECTOR fused operations

Name	Usage and Description
N_VLinearCombination	`ier = N_VLinearCombination(nv, c, X, z);` This routine computes the linear combination of nv vectors with n elements: $$z_i = \sum_{j=1}^{nv} c_j x_{j,i}, \quad i = 1, \ldots, n,$$ where c is an array of nv scalars (type `realtype`*), X is an array of n vectors (type `N_Vector*`), and z is the output vector (type `N_Vector`). If the output vector z is one of the vectors in X, then it *must* be the first vector in the vector array. The operation returns `0` for success and a non-zero value otherwise.
N_VScaleAddMulti	`ier = N_VScaleAddMulti(nv, c, x, Y, Z);` This routine scales and adds one vector to nv vectors with n elements: $$z_{j,i} = c_j x_i + y_{j,i}, \quad j = 1, \ldots, nv \quad i = 1, \ldots, n,$$ where c is an array of nv scalars (type `realtype`*), x is the vector (type `N_Vector`) to be scaled and added to each vector in the vector array of nv vectors Y (type `N_Vector*`), and Z (type `N_Vector*`) is a vector array of nv output vectors. The operation returns `0` for success and a non-zero value otherwise.
N_VDotProdMulti	`ier = N_VDotProdMulti(nv, x, Y, d);` This routine computes the dot product of a vector with nv other vectors: $$d_j = \sum_{i}^{n} x_i y_{j,i}, \quad j = 1, \ldots, nv,$$ where d (type `realtype`*) is an array of nv scalars containing the dot products of the vector x (type `N_Vector`) with each of the nv vectors in the vector array Y (type `N_Vector*`). The operation returns `0` for success and a non-zero value otherwise.

continued on next page

continued from last page

Name	Usage and Description

Table 6.4: Description of the NVECTOR vector array operations

Name	Usage and Description
`N_VLinearSumVectorArray`	`ier = N_VLinearSumVectorArray(nv, a, X, b, Y, Z);` This routine comuptes the linear sum of two vector arrays containing nv vectors of n elements: $$z_{j,i} = ax_{j,i} + by_{j,i}, \quad i = 1, \ldots, n \quad j = 1, \ldots, nv,$$ where a and b are `realtype` scalars and X, Y, and Z are arrays of nv vectors (type `N_Vector*`). The operation returns `0` for success and a non-zero value otherwise.
`N_VScaleVectorArray`	`ier = N_VScaleVectorArray(nv, c, X, Z);` This routine scales each vector of n elements in a vector array of nv vectors by a potentially different constant: $$z_{j,i} = c_j x_{j,i}, \quad i = 1, \ldots, n \quad j = 1, \ldots, nv,$$ where c is an array of nv scalars (type `realtype`*) and X and Z are arrays of nv vectors (type `N_Vector*`). The operation returns `0` for success and a non-zero value otherwise.
`N_VConstVectorArray`	`ier = N_VConstVectorArray(nv, c, X);` This routine sets each element in a vector of n elements in a vector array of nv vectors to the same value: $$z_{j,i} = c, \quad i = 1, \ldots, n \quad j = 1, \ldots, nv,$$ where c is a `realtype` scalar and X is an array of nv vectors (type `N_Vector*`). The operation returns `0` for success and a non-zero value otherwise.

continued on next page

continued from last page

Name	Usage and Description
N_VWrmsNormVectorArray	`ier = N_VWrmsNormVectorArray(nv, X, W, m);` This routine computes the weighted root mean square norm of nv vectors with n elements: $$m_j = \left(\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} (x_{j,i} w_{j,i})^2 \right)^{1/2}, \quad j = 1, \ldots, nvec,$$ where m (type `realtype*`) contains the nv norms of the vectors in the vector array X (type `N_Vector*`) with corresponding weight vectors W (type `N_Vector*`). The operation returns `0` for success and a non-zero value otherwise.
N_VWrmsNormMaskVectorArray	`ier = N_VWrmsNormMaskVectorArray(nv, X, W, id, m);` This routine computes the masked weighted root mean square norm of nv vectors with n elements: $$m_j = \left(\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} (x_{j,i} w_{j,i} H(id_i))^2 \right)^{1/2}, \quad j = 1, \ldots, nvec,$$ $H(id_i) = 1$ for $id_i > 0$ and is zero otherwise, m (type `realtype*`) contains the nv norms of the vectors in the vector array X (type `N_Vector*`) with corresponding weight vectors W (type `N_Vector*`) and mask vector id (type `N_Vector`). The operation returns `0` for success and a non-zero value otherwise.
N_VScaleAddMultiVectorArray	`ier = N_VScaleAddMultiVectorArray(nv, ns, c, X, YY, ZZ);` This routine scales and adds a vector in a vector array of nv vectors to the corresponding vector in ns vector arrays: $$z_{j,i} = \sum_{k=1}^{ns} c_k x_{k,j,i}, \quad i = 1, \ldots, n \quad j = 1, \ldots, nv,$$ where c is an array of ns scalars (type `realtype*`), X is a vector array of nv vectors (type idN_Vector*) to be scaled and added to the corresponding vector in each of the ns vector arrays in the array of vector arrays YY (type `N_Vector**`) and stored in the output array of vector arrays ZZ (type `N_Vector**`). The operation returns `0` for success and a non-zero value otherwise.

continued on next page

continued from last page	
Name	**Usage and Description**
N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray	`ier = N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray(nv, ns, c, XX, Z);` This routine computes the linear combination of ns vector arrays containing nv vectors with n elements: $$z_{j,i} = \sum_{k=1}^{ns} c_k x_{k,j,i}, \quad i = 1, \ldots, n \quad j = 1, \ldots, nv,$$ where c is an array of ns scalars (type `realtype*`), XX (type `N_Vector**`) is an array of ns vector arrays each containing nv vectors to be summed into the output vector array of nv vectors ZZ (type `N_Vector*`). If the output vector array ZZ is one of the vector arrays in XX, then it *must* be the first vector array in XX. The operation returns `0` for success and a non-zero value otherwise.

6.1 The NVECTOR_SERIAL implementation

The serial implementation of the NVECTOR module provided with SUNDIALS, NVECTOR_SERIAL, defines the *content* field of `N_Vector` to be a structure containing the length of the vector, a pointer to the beginning of a contiguous data array, and a boolean flag *own_data* which specifies the ownership of *data*.

```
struct _N_VectorContent_Serial {
  sunindextype length;
  booleantype own_data;
  realtype *data;
};
```

The header file to include when using this module is `nvector_serial.h`. The installed module library to link to is `libsundials_nvecserial.`*`lib`* where *`.lib`* is typically `.so` for shared libraries and `.a` for static libraries.

The following macros are provided to access the content of an NVECTOR_SERIAL vector. The suffix `_S` in the names denotes the serial version.

- `NV_CONTENT_S`

  This routine gives access to the contents of the serial vector `N_Vector`.

  The assignment `v_cont = NV_CONTENT_S(v)` sets `v_cont` to be a pointer to the serial `N_Vector` content structure.

  Implementation:

  ```
  #define NV_CONTENT_S(v) ( (N_VectorContent_Serial)(v->content) )
  ```

- `NV_OWN_DATA_S`, `NV_DATA_S`, `NV_LENGTH_S`

  These macros give individual access to the parts of the content of a serial `N_Vector`.

  The assignment `v_data = NV_DATA_S(v)` sets `v_data` to be a pointer to the first component of the data for the `N_Vector` `v`. The assignment `NV_DATA_S(v) = v_data` sets the component array of `v` to be `v_data` by storing the pointer `v_data`.

  The assignment `v_len = NV_LENGTH_S(v)` sets `v_len` to be the length of `v`. On the other hand, the call `NV_LENGTH_S(v) = len_v` sets the length of `v` to be `len_v`.

Implementation:

```
#define NV_OWN_DATA_S(v) ( NV_CONTENT_S(v)->own_data )
#define NV_DATA_S(v) ( NV_CONTENT_S(v)->data )
#define NV_LENGTH_S(v) ( NV_CONTENT_S(v)->length )
```

- `NV_Ith_S`

  This macro gives access to the individual components of the data array of an `N_Vector`.

  The assignment `r = NV_Ith_S(v,i)` sets `r` to be the value of the `i`-th component of `v`. The assignment `NV_Ith_S(v,i) = r` sets the value of the `i`-th component of `v` to be `r`.

  Here i ranges from 0 to $n-1$ for a vector of length n.

  Implementation:

  ```
  #define NV_Ith_S(v,i) ( NV_DATA_S(v)[i] )
  ```

The NVECTOR_SERIAL module defines serial implementations of all vector operations listed in Tables 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4. Their names are obtained from those in Tables 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4. by appending the suffix `_Serial` (e.g. `N_VDestroy_Serial`). The module NVECTOR_SERIAL provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- `N_VNew_Serial`

  This function creates and allocates memory for a serial `N_Vector`. Its only argument is the vector length.

  ```
  N_Vector N_VNew_Serial(sunindextype vec_length);
  ```

- `N_VNewEmpty_Serial`

  This function creates a new serial `N_Vector` with an empty (`NULL`) data array.

  ```
  N_Vector N_VNewEmpty_Serial(sunindextype vec_length);
  ```

- `N_VMake_Serial`

  This function creates and allocates memory for a serial vector with user-provided data array.

  (This function does *not* allocate memory for `v_data` itself.)

  ```
  N_Vector N_VMake_Serial(sunindextype vec_length, realtype *v_data);
  ```

- `N_VCloneVectorArray_Serial`

  This function creates (by cloning) an array of `count` serial vectors.

  ```
  N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArray_Serial(int count, N_Vector w);
  ```

- `N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Serial`

  This function creates (by cloning) an array of `count` serial vectors, each with an empty (`NULL`) data array.

  ```
  N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Serial(int count, N_Vector w);
  ```

- `N_VDestroyVectorArray_Serial`

  This function frees memory allocated for the array of `count` variables of type `N_Vector` created with `N_VCloneVectorArray_Serial` or with `N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Serial`.

  ```
  void N_VDestroyVectorArray_Serial(N_Vector *vs, int count);
  ```

- `N_VGetLength_Serial`

  This function returns the number of vector elements.

  ```
  sunindextype N_VGetLength_Serial(N_Vector v);
  ```

- N_VPrint_Serial

  This function prints the content of a serial vector to stdout.

  ```
  void N_VPrint_Serial(N_Vector v);
  ```

- N_VPrintFile_Serial

  This function prints the content of a serial vector to outfile.

  ```
  void N_VPrintFile_Serial(N_Vector v, FILE *outfile);
  ```

Notes

- When looping over the components of an N_Vector v, it is more efficient to first obtain the component array via v_data = NV_DATA_S(v) and then access v_data[i] within the loop than it is to use NV_Ith_S(v,i) within the loop.

- N_VNewEmpty_Serial, N_VMake_Serial, and N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Serial set the field *own_data* = SUNFALSE. N_VDestroy_Serial and N_VDestroyVectorArray_Serial will not attempt to free the pointer *data* for any N_Vector with *own_data* set to SUNFALSE. In such a case, it is the user's responsibility to deallocate the *data* pointer.

- To maximize efficiency, vector operations in the NVECTOR_SERIAL implementation that have more than one N_Vector argument do not check for consistent internal representation of these vectors. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that such routines are called with N_Vector arguments that were all created with the same internal representations.

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the NVECTOR_SERIAL module also includes a Fortran-callable function FNVINITS(code, NEQ, IER), to initialize this NVECTOR_SERIAL module. Here code is an input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); NEQ is the problem size (declared so as to match C type long int); and IER is an error return flag equal 0 for success and -1 for failure.

6.2 The NVECTOR_PARALLEL implementation

The NVECTOR_PARALLEL implementation of the NVECTOR module provided with SUNDIALS is based on MPI. It defines the *content* field of N_Vector to be a structure containing the global and local lengths of the vector, a pointer to the beginning of a contiguous local data array, an MPI communicator, and a boolean flag *own_data* indicating ownership of the data array *data*.

```
struct _N_VectorContent_Parallel {
  sunindextype local_length;
  sunindextype global_length;
  booleantype own_data;
  realtype *data;
  MPI_Comm comm;
};
```

The header file to include when using this module is nvector_parallel.h. The installed module library to link to is libsundials_nvecparallel.*lib* where *.lib* is typically .so for shared libraries and .a for static libraries.

The following macros are provided to access the content of a NVECTOR_PARALLEL vector. The suffix _P in the names denotes the distributed memory parallel version.

- NV_CONTENT_P

  This macro gives access to the contents of the parallel vector N_Vector.

  The assignment v_cont = NV_CONTENT_P(v) sets v_cont to be a pointer to the N_Vector content structure of type struct _N_VectorContent_Parallel.

Implementation:

```
#define NV_CONTENT_P(v) ( (N_VectorContent_Parallel)(v->content) )
```

- NV_OWN_DATA_P, NV_DATA_P, NV_LOCLENGTH_P, NV_GLOBLENGTH_P

  These macros give individual access to the parts of the content of a parallel N_Vector.

  The assignment v_data = NV_DATA_P(v) sets v_data to be a pointer to the first component of the local data for the N_Vector v. The assignment NV_DATA_P(v) = v_data sets the component array of v to be v_data by storing the pointer v_data.

  The assignment v_llen = NV_LOCLENGTH_P(v) sets v_llen to be the length of the local part of v. The call NV_LENGTH_P(v) = llen_v sets the local length of v to be llen_v.

  The assignment v_glen = NV_GLOBLENGTH_P(v) sets v_glen to be the global length of the vector v. The call NV_GLOBLENGTH_P(v) = glen_v sets the global length of v to be glen_v.

  Implementation:

```
#define NV_OWN_DATA_P(v)    ( NV_CONTENT_P(v)->own_data )
#define NV_DATA_P(v)        ( NV_CONTENT_P(v)->data )
#define NV_LOCLENGTH_P(v)   ( NV_CONTENT_P(v)->local_length )
#define NV_GLOBLENGTH_P(v) ( NV_CONTENT_P(v)->global_length )
```

- NV_COMM_P

  This macro provides access to the MPI communicator used by the NVECTOR_PARALLEL vectors.

  Implementation:

```
#define NV_COMM_P(v) ( NV_CONTENT_P(v)->comm )
```

- NV_Ith_P

  This macro gives access to the individual components of the local data array of an N_Vector.

  The assignment r = NV_Ith_P(v,i) sets r to be the value of the i-th component of the local part of v. The assignment NV_Ith_P(v,i) = r sets the value of the i-th component of the local part of v to be r.

  Here i ranges from 0 to $n-1$, where n is the local length.

  Implementation:

```
#define NV_Ith_P(v,i) ( NV_DATA_P(v)[i] )
```

The NVECTOR_PARALLEL module defines parallel implementations of all vector operations listed in Tables 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4. Their names are obtained from those in Tables 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4 by appending the suffix _Parallel (e.g. N_VDestroy_Parallel). The module NVECTOR_PARALLEL provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- N_VNew_Parallel

  This function creates and allocates memory for a parallel vector.

```
N_Vector N_VNew_Parallel(MPI_Comm comm,
                         sunindextype local_length,
                         sunindextype global_length);
```

- N_VNewEmpty_Parallel

  This function creates a new parallel N_Vector with an empty (NULL) data array.

```
N_Vector N_VNewEmpty_Parallel(MPI_Comm comm,
                              sunindextype local_length,
                              sunindextype global_length);
```

- `N_VMake_Parallel`

  This function creates and allocates memory for a parallel vector with user-provided data array. (This function does *not* allocate memory for `v_data` itself.)

  ```
  N_Vector N_VMake_Parallel(MPI_Comm comm,
                            sunindextype local_length,
                            sunindextype global_length,
                            realtype *v_data);
  ```

- `N_VCloneVectorArray_Parallel`

  This function creates (by cloning) an array of `count` parallel vectors.

  ```
  N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArray_Parallel(int count, N_Vector w);
  ```

- `N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Parallel`

  This function creates (by cloning) an array of `count` parallel vectors, each with an empty (`NULL`) data array.

  ```
  N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Parallel(int count, N_Vector w);
  ```

- `N_VDestroyVectorArray_Parallel`

  This function frees memory allocated for the array of `count` variables of type `N_Vector` created with `N_VCloneVectorArray_Parallel` or with `N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Parallel`.

  ```
  void N_VDestroyVectorArray_Parallel(N_Vector *vs, int count);
  ```

- `N_VGetLength_Parallel`

  This function returns the number of vector elements (global vector length).

  ```
  sunindextype N_VGetLength_Parallel(N_Vector v);
  ```

- `N_VGetLocalLength_Parallel`

  This function returns the local vector length.

  ```
  sunindextype N_VGetLocalLength_Parallel(N_Vector v);
  ```

- `N_VPrint_Parallel`

  This function prints the local content of a parallel vector to `stdout`.

  ```
  void N_VPrint_Parallel(N_Vector v);
  ```

- `N_VPrintFile_Parallel`

  This function prints the local content of a parallel vector to `outfile`.

  ```
  void N_VPrintFile_Parallel(N_Vector v, FILE *outfile);
  ```

Notes

- When looping over the components of an `N_Vector v`, it is more efficient to first obtain the local component array via `v_data = NV_DATA_P(v)` and then access `v_data[i]` within the loop than it is to use `NV_Ith_P(v,i)` within the loop.

- `N_VNewEmpty_Parallel`, `N_VMake_Parallel`, and `N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Parallel` set the field *own_data* = `SUNFALSE`. `N_VDestroy_Parallel` and `N_VDestroyVectorArray_Parallel` will not attempt to free the pointer *data* for any `N_Vector` with *own_data* set to `SUNFALSE`. In such a case, it is the user's responsibility to deallocate the *data* pointer.

- To maximize efficiency, vector operations in the NVECTOR_PARALLEL implementation that have more than one N_Vector argument do not check for consistent internal representation of these vectors. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that such routines are called with N_Vector arguments that were all created with the same internal representations.

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the NVECTOR_PARALLEL module also includes a Fortran-callable function FNVINITP(COMM, code, NLOCAL, NGLOBAL, IER), to initialize this NVECTOR_PARALLEL module. Here COMM is the MPI communicator, code is an input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); NLOCAL and NGLOBAL are the local and global vector sizes, respectively (declared so as to match C type long int); and IER is an error return flag equal 0 for success and -1 for failure. NOTE: If the header file sundials_config.h defines SUNDIALS_MPI_COMM_F2C to be 1 (meaning the MPI implementation used to build SUNDIALS includes the MPI_Comm_f2c function), then COMM can be any valid MPI communicator. Otherwise, MPI_COMM_WORLD will be used, so just pass an integer value as a placeholder.

6.3 The NVECTOR_OPENMP implementation

In situations where a user has a multi-core processing unit capable of running multiple parallel threads with shared memory, SUNDIALS provides an implementation of NVECTOR using OpenMP, called NVECTOR_OPENMP, and an implementation using Pthreads, called NVECTOR_PTHREADS. Testing has shown that vectors should be of length at least 100,000 before the overhead associated with creating and using the threads is made up by the parallelism in the vector calculations.

The OpenMP NVECTOR implementation provided with SUNDIALS, NVECTOR_OPENMP, defines the *content* field of N_Vector to be a structure containing the length of the vector, a pointer to the beginning of a contiguous data array, a boolean flag *own_data* which specifies the ownership of *data*, and the number of threads. Operations on the vector are threaded using OpenMP.

```
struct _N_VectorContent_OpenMP {
  sunindextype length;
  booleantype own_data;
  realtype *data;
  int num_threads;
};
```

The header file to include when using this module is nvector_openmp.h. The installed module library to link to is libsundials_nvecopenmp.*lib* where *.lib* is typically .so for shared libraries and .a for static libraries.

The following macros are provided to access the content of an NVECTOR_OPENMP vector. The suffix _OMP in the names denotes the OpenMP version.

- NV_CONTENT_OMP

  This routine gives access to the contents of the OpenMP vector N_Vector.

  The assignment v_cont = NV_CONTENT_OMP(v) sets v_cont to be a pointer to the OpenMP N_Vector content structure.

  Implementation:

  ```
  #define NV_CONTENT_OMP(v) ( (N_VectorContent_OpenMP)(v->content) )
  ```

- NV_OWN_DATA_OMP, NV_DATA_OMP, NV_LENGTH_OMP, NV_NUM_THREADS_OMP

  These macros give individual access to the parts of the content of a OpenMP N_Vector.

  The assignment v_data = NV_DATA_OMP(v) sets v_data to be a pointer to the first component of the data for the N_Vector v. The assignment NV_DATA_OMP(v) = v_data sets the component array of v to be v_data by storing the pointer v_data.

  The assignment v_len = NV_LENGTH_OMP(v) sets v_len to be the length of v. On the other hand, the call NV_LENGTH_OMP(v) = len_v sets the length of v to be len_v.

The assignment `v_num_threads = NV_NUM_THREADS_OMP(v)` sets `v_num_threads` to be the number of threads from `v`. On the other hand, the call `NV_NUM_THREADS_OMP(v) = num_threads_v` sets the number of threads for `v` to be `num_threads_v`.

Implementation:

```
#define NV_OWN_DATA_OMP(v) ( NV_CONTENT_OMP(v)->own_data )
#define NV_DATA_OMP(v) ( NV_CONTENT_OMP(v)->data )
#define NV_LENGTH_OMP(v) ( NV_CONTENT_OMP(v)->length )
#define NV_NUM_THREADS_OMP(v) ( NV_CONTENT_OMP(v)->num_threads )
```

- `NV_Ith_OMP`

  This macro gives access to the individual components of the data array of an `N_Vector`.

  The assignment `r = NV_Ith_OMP(v,i)` sets `r` to be the value of the `i`-th component of `v`. The assignment `NV_Ith_OMP(v,i) = r` sets the value of the `i`-th component of `v` to be `r`.

  Here i ranges from 0 to $n-1$ for a vector of length n.

  Implementation:

  ```
  #define NV_Ith_OMP(v,i) ( NV_DATA_OMP(v)[i] )
  ```

The NVECTOR_OPENMP module defines OpenMP implementations of all vector operations listed in Tables 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4. Their names are obtained from those in Tables 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4 by appending the suffix `_OpenMP` (e.g. `N_VDestroy_OpenMP`). The module NVECTOR_OPENMP provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- `N_VNew_OpenMP`

  This function creates and allocates memory for a OpenMP `N_Vector`. Arguments are the vector length and number of threads.

  ```
  N_Vector N_VNew_OpenMP(sunindextype vec_length, int num_threads);
  ```

- `N_VNewEmpty_OpenMP`

  This function creates a new OpenMP `N_Vector` with an empty (`NULL`) data array.

  ```
  N_Vector N_VNewEmpty_OpenMP(sunindextype vec_length, int num_threads);
  ```

- `N_VMake_OpenMP`

  This function creates and allocates memory for a OpenMP vector with user-provided data array.

  (This function does *not* allocate memory for `v_data` itself.)

  ```
  N_Vector N_VMake_OpenMP(sunindextype vec_length, realtype *v_data, int num_threads);
  ```

- `N_VCloneVectorArray_OpenMP`

  This function creates (by cloning) an array of `count` OpenMP vectors.

  ```
  N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArray_OpenMP(int count, N_Vector w);
  ```

- `N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_OpenMP`

  This function creates (by cloning) an array of `count` OpenMP vectors, each with an empty (`NULL`) data array.

  ```
  N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_OpenMP(int count, N_Vector w);
  ```

- `N_VDestroyVectorArray_OpenMP`

  This function frees memory allocated for the array of `count` variables of type `N_Vector` created with `N_VCloneVectorArray_OpenMP` or with `N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_OpenMP`.

  ```
  void N_VDestroyVectorArray_OpenMP(N_Vector *vs, int count);
  ```

- N_VGetLength_OpenMP

  This function returns number of vector elements.

  ```
  sunindextype N_VGetLength_OpenMP(N_Vector v);
  ```

- N_VPrint_OpenMP

  This function prints the content of an OpenMP vector to stdout.

  ```
  void N_VPrint_OpenMP(N_Vector v);
  ```

- N_VPrintFile_OpenMP

  This function prints the content of an OpenMP vector to outfile.

  ```
  void N_VPrintFile_OpenMP(N_Vector v, FILE *outfile);
  ```

Notes

- When looping over the components of an N_Vector v, it is more efficient to first obtain the component array via v_data = NV_DATA_OMP(v) and then access v_data[i] within the loop than it is to use NV_Ith_OMP(v,i) within the loop.

- N_VNewEmpty_OpenMP, N_VMake_OpenMP, and N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_OpenMP set the field *own_data* = SUNFALSE. N_VDestroy_OpenMP and N_VDestroyVectorArray_OpenMP will not attempt to free the pointer *data* for any N_Vector with *own_data* set to SUNFALSE. In such a case, it is the user's responsibility to deallocate the *data* pointer.

- To maximize efficiency, vector operations in the NVECTOR_OPENMP implementation that have more than one N_Vector argument do not check for consistent internal representation of these vectors. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that such routines are called with N_Vector arguments that were all created with the same internal representations.

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the NVECTOR_OPENMP module also includes a Fortran-callable function FNVINITOMP(code, NEQ, NUMTHREADS, IER), to initialize this module. Here code is an input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); NEQ is the problem size (declared so as to match C type long int); NUMTHREADS is the number of threads; and IER is an error return flag equal 0 for success and -1 for failure.

6.4 The NVECTOR_PTHREADS implementation

In situations where a user has a multi-core processing unit capable of running multiple parallel threads with shared memory, SUNDIALS provides an implementation of NVECTOR using OpenMP, called NVECTOR_OPENMP, and an implementation using Pthreads, called NVECTOR_PTHREADS. Testing has shown that vectors should be of length at least 100,000 before the overhead associated with creating and using the threads is made up by the parallelism in the vector calculations.

The Pthreads NVECTOR implementation provided with SUNDIALS, denoted NVECTOR_PTHREADS, defines the *content* field of N_Vector to be a structure containing the length of the vector, a pointer to the beginning of a contiguous data array, a boolean flag *own_data* which specifies the ownership of *data*, and the number of threads. Operations on the vector are threaded using POSIX threads (Pthreads).

```
struct _N_VectorContent_Pthreads {
  sunindextype length;
  booleantype own_data;
  realtype *data;
  int num_threads;
};
```

The header file to include when using this module is `nvector_pthreads.h`. The installed module library to link to is `libsundials_nvecpthreads.`*`lib`* where *`.lib`* is typically `.so` for shared libraries and `.a` for static libraries.

The following macros are provided to access the content of an NVECTOR_PTHREADS vector. The suffix `_PT` in the names denotes the Pthreads version.

- `NV_CONTENT_PT`

  This routine gives access to the contents of the Pthreads vector `N_Vector`.

  The assignment `v_cont = NV_CONTENT_PT(v)` sets `v_cont` to be a pointer to the Pthreads `N_Vector` content structure.

  Implementation:

  ```
  #define NV_CONTENT_PT(v) ( (N_VectorContent_Pthreads)(v->content) )
  ```

- `NV_OWN_DATA_PT`, `NV_DATA_PT`, `NV_LENGTH_PT`, `NV_NUM_THREADS_PT`

  These macros give individual access to the parts of the content of a Pthreads `N_Vector`.

  The assignment `v_data = NV_DATA_PT(v)` sets `v_data` to be a pointer to the first component of the data for the `N_Vector v`. The assignment `NV_DATA_PT(v) = v_data` sets the component array of `v` to be `v_data` by storing the pointer `v_data`.

  The assignment `v_len = NV_LENGTH_PT(v)` sets `v_len` to be the length of `v`. On the other hand, the call `NV_LENGTH_PT(v) = len_v` sets the length of `v` to be `len_v`.

  The assignment `v_num_threads = NV_NUM_THREADS_PT(v)` sets `v_num_threads` to be the number of threads from `v`. On the other hand, the call `NV_NUM_THREADS_PT(v) = num_threads_v` sets the number of threads for `v` to be `num_threads_v`.

  Implementation:

  ```
  #define NV_OWN_DATA_PT(v) ( NV_CONTENT_PT(v)->own_data )
  #define NV_DATA_PT(v) ( NV_CONTENT_PT(v)->data )
  #define NV_LENGTH_PT(v) ( NV_CONTENT_PT(v)->length )
  #define NV_NUM_THREADS_PT(v) ( NV_CONTENT_PT(v)->num_threads )
  ```

- `NV_Ith_PT`

  This macro gives access to the individual components of the data array of an `N_Vector`.

  The assignment `r = NV_Ith_PT(v,i)` sets `r` to be the value of the `i`-th component of `v`. The assignment `NV_Ith_PT(v,i) = r` sets the value of the `i`-th component of `v` to be `r`.

  Here i ranges from 0 to $n-1$ for a vector of length n.

  Implementation:

  ```
  #define NV_Ith_PT(v,i) ( NV_DATA_PT(v)[i] )
  ```

The NVECTOR_PTHREADS module defines Pthreads implementations of all vector operations listed in Tables 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4. Their names are obtained from those in Tables 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4 by appending the suffix `_Pthreads` (e.g. `N_VDestroy_Pthreads`). The module NVECTOR_PTHREADS provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- `N_VNew_Pthreads`

  This function creates and allocates memory for a Pthreads `N_Vector`. Arguments are the vector length and number of threads.

  ```
  N_Vector N_VNew_Pthreads(sunindextype vec_length, int num_threads);
  ```

- `N_VNewEmpty_Pthreads`

  This function creates a new Pthreads `N_Vector` with an empty (`NULL`) data array.

  ```
  N_Vector N_VNewEmpty_Pthreads(sunindextype vec_length, int num_threads);
  ```

- N_VMake_Pthreads

  This function creates and allocates memory for a Pthreads vector with user-provided data array.

  (This function does *not* allocate memory for v_data itself.)

  ```
  N_Vector N_VMake_Pthreads(sunindextype vec_length, realtype *v_data, int num_threads);
  ```

- N_VCloneVectorArray_Pthreads

  This function creates (by cloning) an array of count Pthreads vectors.

  ```
  N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArray_Pthreads(int count, N_Vector w);
  ```

- N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Pthreads

  This function creates (by cloning) an array of count Pthreads vectors, each with an empty (NULL) data array.

  ```
  N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Pthreads(int count, N_Vector w);
  ```

- N_VDestroyVectorArray_Pthreads

  This function frees memory allocated for the array of count variables of type N_Vector created with N_VCloneVectorArray_Pthreads or with N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Pthreads.

  ```
  void N_VDestroyVectorArray_Pthreads(N_Vector *vs, int count);
  ```

- N_VGetLength_Pthreads

  This function returns the number of vector elements.

  ```
  sunindextype N_VGetLength_Pthreads(N_Vector v);
  ```

- N_VPrint_Pthreads

  This function prints the content of a Pthreads vector to stdout.

  ```
  void N_VPrint_Pthreads(N_Vector v);
  ```

- N_VPrintFile_Pthreads

  This function prints the content of a Pthreads vector to outfile.

  ```
  void N_VPrintFile_Pthreads(N_Vector v, FILE *outfile);
  ```

Notes

- When looping over the components of an N_Vector v, it is more efficient to first obtain the component array via v_data = NV_DATA_PT(v) and then access v_data[i] within the loop than it is to use NV_Ith_PT(v,i) within the loop.

- N_VNewEmpty_Pthreads, N_VMake_Pthreads, and N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Pthreads set the field *own_data* = SUNFALSE. N_VDestroy_Pthreads and N_VDestroyVectorArray_Pthreads will not attempt to free the pointer *data* for any N_Vector with *own_data* set to SUNFALSE. In such a case, it is the user's responsibility to deallocate the *data* pointer.

- To maximize efficiency, vector operations in the NVECTOR_PTHREADS implementation that have more than one N_Vector argument do not check for consistent internal representation of these vectors. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that such routines are called with N_Vector arguments that were all created with the same internal representations.

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the NVECTOR_PTHREADS module also includes a Fortran-callable function FNVINITPTS(code, NEQ, NUMTHREADS, IER), to initialize this module. Here code is an input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); NEQ is the problem size (declared so as to match C type long int); NUMTHREADS is the number of threads; and IER is an error return flag equal 0 for success and -1 for failure.

6.5 The NVECTOR_PARHYP implementation

The NVECTOR_PARHYP implementation of the NVECTOR module provided with SUNDIALS is a wrapper around *hypre*'s ParVector class. Most of the vector kernels simply call *hypre* vector operations. The implementation defines the *content* field of `N_Vector` to be a structure containing the global and local lengths of the vector, a pointer to an object of type `hypre_ParVector`, an MPI communicator, and a boolean flag *own_parvector* indicating ownership of the *hypre* parallel vector object x.

```
struct _N_VectorContent_ParHyp {
  sunindextype local_length;
  sunindextype global_length;
  booleantype own_parvector;
  MPI_Comm comm;
  hypre_ParVector *x;
};
```

The header file to include when using this module is `nvector_parhyp.h`. The installed module library to link to is `libsundials_nvecparhyp.`*`lib`* where *`.lib`* is typically `.so` for shared libraries and `.a` for static libraries.

Unlike native SUNDIALS vector types, NVECTOR_PARHYP does not provide macros to access its member variables. Note that NVECTOR_PARHYP requires SUNDIALS to be built with MPI support.

The NVECTOR_PARHYP module defines implementations of all vector operations listed in Tables 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4, except for `N_VSetArrayPointer` and `N_VGetArrayPointer`, because accessing raw vector data is handled by low-level *hypre* functions. As such, this vector is not available for use with SUNDIALS Fortran interfaces. When access to raw vector data is needed, one should extract the *hypre* vector first, and then use *hypre* methods to access the data. Usage examples of NVECTOR_PARHYP are provided in the `cvAdvDiff_non_ph.c` example program for CVODE [20] and the `ark_diurnal_kry_ph.c` example program for ARKODE [23].

The names of parhyp methods are obtained from those in Tables 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4 by appending the suffix `_ParHyp` (e.g. `N_VDestroy_ParHyp`). The module NVECTOR_PARHYP provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- `N_VNewEmpty_ParHyp`

  This function creates a new parhyp `N_Vector` with the pointer to the *hypre* vector set to `NULL`.

  ```
  N_Vector N_VNewEmpty_ParHyp(MPI_Comm comm,
                              sunindextype local_length,
                              sunindextype global_length);
  ```

- `N_VMake_ParHyp`

  This function creates an `N_Vector` wrapper around an existing *hypre* parallel vector. It does *not* allocate memory for `x` itself.

  ```
  N_Vector N_VMake_ParHyp(hypre_ParVector *x);
  ```

- `N_VGetVector_ParHyp`

  This function returns a pointer to the underlying *hypre* vector.

  ```
  hypre_ParVector *N_VGetVector_ParHyp(N_Vector v);
  ```

- `N_VCloneVectorArray_ParHyp`

  This function creates (by cloning) an array of `count` parallel vectors.

  ```
  N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArray_ParHyp(int count, N_Vector w);
  ```

- N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_ParHyp

  This function creates (by cloning) an array of count parallel vectors, each with an empty (NULL) data array.

  ```
  N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_ParHyp(int count, N_Vector w);
  ```

- N_VDestroyVectorArray_ParHyp

  This function frees memory allocated for the array of count variables of type N_Vector created with N_VCloneVectorArray_ParHyp or with N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_ParHyp.

  ```
  void N_VDestroyVectorArray_ParHyp(N_Vector *vs, int count);
  ```

- N_VPrint_ParHyp

  This function prints the local content of a parhyp vector to stdout.

  ```
  void N_VPrint_ParHyp(N_Vector v);
  ```

- N_VPrintFile_ParHyp

  This function prints the local content of a parhyp vector to outfile.

  ```
  void N_VPrintFile_ParHyp(N_Vector v, FILE *outfile);
  ```

Notes

- When there is a need to access components of an N_Vector_ParHyp, v, it is recommended to extract the *hypre* vector via x_vec = N_VGetVector_ParHyp(v) and then access components using appropriate *hypre* functions.
- N_VNewEmpty_ParHyp, N_VMake_ParHyp, and N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_ParHyp set the field *own_parvector* to SUNFALSE. N_VDestroy_ParHyp and N_VDestroyVectorArray_ParHyp will not attempt to delete an underlying *hypre* vector for any N_Vector with *own_parvector* set to SUNFALSE. In such a case, it is the user's responsibility to delete the underlying vector.

- To maximize efficiency, vector operations in the NVECTOR_PARHYP implementation that have more than one N_Vector argument do not check for consistent internal representations of these vectors. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that such routines are called with N_Vector arguments that were all created with the same internal representations.

6.6 The NVECTOR_PETSC implementation

The NVECTOR_PETSC module is an NVECTOR wrapper around the PETSc vector. It defines the *content* field of a N_Vector to be a structure containing the global and local lengths of the vector, a pointer to the PETSc vector, an MPI communicator, and a boolean flag *own_data* indicating ownership of the wrapped PETSc vector.

```
struct _N_VectorContent_Petsc {
  sunindextype local_length;
  sunindextype global_length;
  booleantype own_data;
  Vec *pvec;
  MPI_Comm comm;
};
```

The header file to include when using this module is nvector_petsc.h. The installed module library to link to is libsundials_nvecpetsc.*lib* where *.lib* is typically .so for shared libraries and .a for static libraries.

Unlike native SUNDIALS vector types, NVECTOR_PETSC does not provide macros to access its member variables. Note that NVECTOR_PETSC requires SUNDIALS to be built with MPI support.

The NVECTOR_PETSC module defines implementations of all vector operations listed in Tables 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4, except for `N_VGetArrayPointer` and `N_VSetArrayPointer`. As such, this vector cannot be used with SUNDIALS Fortran interfaces. When access to raw vector data is needed, it is recommended to extract the PETSc vector first, and then use PETSc methods to access the data. Usage examples of NVECTOR_PETSC are provided in example programs for IDA [19].

The names of vector operations are obtained from those in Tables 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4 by appending the suffix `_Petsc` (e.g. `N_VDestroy_Petsc`). The module NVECTOR_PETSC provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- `N_VNewEmpty_Petsc`

  This function creates a new NVECTOR wrapper with the pointer to the wrapped PETSc vector set to (`NULL`). It is used by the `N_VMake_Petsc` and `N_VClone_Petsc` implementations.

  ```
  N_Vector N_VNewEmpty_Petsc(MPI_Comm comm,
                             sunindextype local_length,
                             sunindextype global_length);
  ```

- `N_VMake_Petsc`

  This function creates and allocates memory for an NVECTOR_PETSC wrapper around a user-provided PETSc vector. It does *not* allocate memory for the vector `pvec` itself.

  ```
  N_Vector N_VMake_Petsc(Vec *pvec);
  ```

- `N_VGetVector_Petsc`

  This function returns a pointer to the underlying PETSc vector.

  ```
  Vec *N_VGetVector_Petsc(N_Vector v);
  ```

- `N_VCloneVectorArray_Petsc`

  This function creates (by cloning) an array of `count` NVECTOR_PETSC vectors.

  ```
  N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArray_Petsc(int count, N_Vector w);
  ```

- `N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Petsc`

  This function creates (by cloning) an array of `count` NVECTOR_PETSC vectors, each with pointers to PETSc vectors set to (`NULL`).

  ```
  N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Petsc(int count, N_Vector w);
  ```

- `N_VDestroyVectorArray_Petsc`

  This function frees memory allocated for the array of `count` variables of type `N_Vector` created with `N_VCloneVectorArray_Petsc` or with `N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Petsc`.

  ```
  void N_VDestroyVectorArray_Petsc(N_Vector *vs, int count);
  ```

- `N_VPrint_Petsc`

  This function prints the global content of a wrapped PETSc vector to `stdout`.

  ```
  void N_VPrint_Petsc(N_Vector v);
  ```

- `N_VPrintFile_Petsc`

  This function prints the global content of a wrapped PETSc vector to `fname`.

  ```
  void N_VPrintFile_Petsc(N_Vector v, const char fname[]);
  ```

Notes

- When there is a need to access components of an `N_Vector_Petsc`, `v`, it is recommeded to extract the PETSc vector via `x_vec = N_VGetVector_Petsc(v)` and then access components using appropriate PETSc functions.
- The functions `N_VNewEmpty_Petsc`, `N_VMake_Petsc`, and `N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Petsc` set the field *own_data* to `SUNFALSE`. `N_VDestroy_Petsc` and `N_VDestroyVectorArray_Petsc` will not attempt to free the pointer *pvec* for any `N_Vector` with *own_data* set to `SUNFALSE`. In such a case, it is the user's responsibility to deallocate the *pvec* pointer.
- To maximize efficiency, vector operations in the NVECTOR_PETSC implementation that have more than one `N_Vector` argument do not check for consistent internal representations of these vectors. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that such routines are called with `N_Vector` arguments that were all created with the same internal representations.

6.7 The NVECTOR_CUDA implementation

The NVECTOR_CUDA module is an experimental NVECTOR implementation in the CUDA language. The module allows for SUNDIALS vector kernels to run on GPU devices. It is intended for users who are already familiar with CUDA and GPU programming. Building this vector module requires a CUDA compiler and, by extension, a C++ compiler. The class `Vector` in namespace `suncudavec` manages vector data layout:

```
template <class T, class I>
class Vector {
  I size_;
  I mem_size_;
  T* h_vec_;
  T* d_vec_;
  StreamPartitioning<T, I>* partStream_;
  ReducePartitioning<T, I>* partReduce_;
  bool ownPartitioning_;

  ...
};
```

The class members are vector size (length), size of the vector data memory block, pointers to vector data on the host and the device, pointers to classes `StreamPartitioning` and `ReducePartitioning`, which handle thread partitioning for streaming and reduction vector kernels, respectively, and a boolean flag that signals if the vector owns the thread partitioning. The class `Vector` inherits from the empty structure

```
struct _N_VectorContent_Cuda {
};
```

to interface the C++ class with the NVECTOR C code. When instantiated, the class `Vector` will allocate memory on both the host and the device. Due to the rapid progress of CUDA development, we expect that the `suncudavec::Vector` class will change frequently in future SUNDIALS releases. The code is structured so that it can tolerate significant changes in the `suncudavec::Vector` class without requiring changes to the user API.

The header file to include when using this module is `nvector_cuda.h`. The installed module library to link to is `libsundials_nveccuda.`*`lib`* where *`.lib`* is typically `.so` for shared libraries and `.a` for static libraries.

Unlike other native SUNDIALS vector types, NVECTOR_CUDA does not provide macros to access its member variables.

The NVECTOR_CUDA module defines implementations of all vector operations listed in Tables 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4, except for `N_VGetArrayPointer` and `N_VSetArrayPointer`. As such, this vector cannot be used with SUNDIALS Fortran interfaces, nor with SUNDIALS direct solvers and preconditioners. This support will be added in subsequent SUNDIALS releases. The NVECTOR_CUDA module provides separate functions to access data on the host and on the device. It also provides methods for copying from the host to the device and vice versa. Usage examples of NVECTOR_CUDA are provided in some example programs for CVODE [20].

The names of vector operations are obtained from those in Tables 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4 by appending the suffix `_Cuda` (e.g. `N_VDestroy_Cuda`). The module NVECTOR_CUDA provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- `N_VNew_Cuda`

  This function creates and allocates memory for a CUDA `N_Vector`. The memory is allocated on both host and device. Its only argument is the vector length.

  ```
  N_Vector N_VNew_Cuda(sunindextype vec_length);
  ```

- `N_VNewEmpty_Cuda`

  This function creates a new NVECTOR wrapper with the pointer to the wrapped CUDA vector set to (`NULL`). It is used by the `N_VNew_Cuda`, `N_VMake_Cuda`, and `N_VClone_Cuda` implementations.

  ```
  N_Vector N_VNewEmpty_Cuda(sunindextype vec_length);
  ```

- `N_VMake_Cuda`

  This function creates and allocates memory for an NVECTOR_CUDA wrapper around a user-provided `suncudavec::Vector` class. Its only argument is of type `N_VectorContent_Cuda`, which is the pointer to the class.

  ```
  N_Vector N_VMake_Cuda(N_VectorContent_Cuda c);
  ```

- `N_VCloneVectorArray_Cuda`

  This function creates (by cloning) an array of `count` NVECTOR_CUDA vectors.

  ```
  N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArray_Cuda(int count, N_Vector w);
  ```

- `N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Cuda`

  This function creates (by cloning) an array of `count` NVECTOR_CUDA vectors, each with pointers to CUDA vectors set to (`NULL`).

  ```
  N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Cuda(int count, N_Vector w);
  ```

- `N_VDestroyVectorArray_Cuda`

  This function frees memory allocated for the array of `count` variables of type `N_Vector` created with `N_VCloneVectorArray_Cuda` or with `N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Cuda`.

  ```
  void N_VDestroyVectorArray_Cuda(N_Vector *vs, int count);
  ```

- `N_VGetLength_Cuda`

  This function returns the length of the vector.

  ```
  sunindextype N_VGetLength_Cuda(N_Vector v);
  ```

- `N_VGetHostArrayPointer_Cuda`

  This function returns a pointer to the vector data on the host.

  ```
  realtype *N_VGetHostArrayPointer_Cuda(N_Vector v);
  ```

- `N_VGetDeviceArrayPointer_Cuda`

  This function returns a pointer to the vector data on the device.

  ```
  realtype *N_VGetDeviceArrayPointer_Cuda(N_Vector v);
  ```

- `N_VCopyToDevice_Cuda`

  This function copies host vector data to the device.

  ```
  realtype *N_VCopyToDevice_Cuda(N_Vector v);
  ```

- `N_VCopyFromDevice_Cuda`

  This function copies vector data from the device to the host.

  ```
  realtype *N_VCopyFromDevice_Cuda(N_Vector v);
  ```

- `N_VPrint_Cuda`

  This function prints the content of a CUDA vector to `stdout`.

  ```
  void N_VPrint_Cuda(N_Vector v);
  ```

- `N_VPrintFile_Cuda`

  This function prints the content of a CUDA vector to `outfile`.

  ```
  void N_VPrintFile_Cuda(N_Vector v, FILE *outfile);
  ```

Notes

- When there is a need to access components of an `N_Vector_Cuda`, `v`, it is recommeded to use functions `N_VGetDeviceArrayPointer_Cuda` or `N_VGetHostArrayPointer_Cuda`.
- To maximize efficiency, vector operations in the NVECTOR_CUDA implementation that have more than one `N_Vector` argument do not check for consistent internal representations of these vectors. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that such routines are called with `N_Vector` arguments that were all created with the same internal representations.

6.8 The NVECTOR_RAJA implementation

The NVECTOR_RAJA module is an experimental NVECTOR implementation using the RAJA hardware abstraction layer, https://software.llnl.gov/RAJA/. In this implementation, RAJA allows for SUNDIALS vector kernels to run on GPU devices. The module is intended for users who are already familiar with RAJA and GPU programming. Building this vector module requires a C++11 compliant compiler and a CUDA software development toolkit. Besides the CUDA backend, RAJA has other backends such as serial, OpenMP, and OpenAC. These backends are not used in this SUNDIALS release. Class `Vector` in namespace `sunrajavec` manages the vector data layout:

```
template <class T, class I>
class Vector {
  I size_;
  I mem_size_;
  T* h_vec_;
  T* d_vec_;

  ...
};
```

The class members are: vector size (length), size of the vector data memory block, and pointers to vector data on the host and on the device. The class `Vector` inherits from an empty structure

```
struct _N_VectorContent_Raja {
};
```

to interface the C++ class with the NVECTOR C code. When instantiated, the class `Vector` will allocate memory on both the host and the device. Due to the rapid progress of RAJA development, we expect that the `sunrajavec::Vector` class will change frequently in future SUNDIALS releases. The code is structured so that it can tolerate significant changes in the `sunrajavec::Vector` class without requiring changes to the user API.

The header file to include when using this module is `nvector_raja.h`. The installed module library to link to is `libsundials_nvecraja.`*`lib`* where *`.lib`* is typically `.so` for shared libraries and `.a` for static libraries.

Unlike other native SUNDIALS vector types, NVECTOR_RAJA does not provide macros to access its member variables.

The NVECTOR_RAJA module defines the implementations of all vector operations listed in Tables 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4, except for `N_VDotProdMulti`, `N_VWrmsNormVectorArray`, and `N_VWrmsNormMaskVectorArray` as support for arrays of reduction vectors is not yet supported in RAJA. These function will be added to the NVECTOR_RAJA implementation in the futrue. Additionally vector `N_VGetArrayPointer` and `N_VSetArrayPointer` are not implemented by the RAJA vector. As such, this vector cannot be used with SUNDIALS Fortran interfaces, nor with SUNDIALS direct solvers and preconditioners. The NVECTOR_RAJA module provides separate functions to access data on the host and on the device. It also provides methods for copying data from the host to the device and vice versa. Usage examples of NVECTOR_RAJA are provided in some example programs for CVODE [20].

The names of vector operations are obtained from those in Tables 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4, by appending the suffix `_Raja` (e.g. `N_VDestroy_Raja`). The module NVECTOR_RAJA provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- `N_VNew_Raja`

  This function creates and allocates memory for a RAJA `N_Vector`. The memory is allocated on both the host and the device. Its only argument is the vector length.

  ```
  N_Vector N_VNew_Raja(sunindextype vec_length);
  ```

- `N_VNewEmpty_Raja`

  This function creates a new NVECTOR wrapper with the pointer to the wrapped RAJA vector set to (`NULL`). It is used by the `N_VNew_Raja`, `N_VMake_Raja`, and `N_VClone_Raja` implementations.

  ```
  N_Vector N_VNewEmpty_Raja(sunindextype vec_length);
  ```

- `N_VMake_Raja`

  This function creates and allocates memory for an NVECTOR_RAJA wrapper around a user-provided `sunrajavec::Vector` class. Its only argument is of type `N_VectorContent_Raja`, which is the pointer to the class.

  ```
  N_Vector N_VMake_Raja(N_VectorContent_Raja c);
  ```

- `N_VCloneVectorArray_Raja`

  This function creates (by cloning) an array of `count` NVECTOR_RAJA vectors.

  ```
  N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArray_Raja(int count, N_Vector w);
  ```

- N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Raja

  This function creates (by cloning) an array of count NVECTOR_RAJA vectors, each with pointers to RAJA vectors set to (NULL).

  ```
  N_Vector *N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Raja(int count, N_Vector w);
  ```

- N_VDestroyVectorArray_Raja

  This function frees memory allocated for the array of count variables of type N_Vector created with N_VCloneVectorArray_Raja or with N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Raja.

  ```
  void N_VDestroyVectorArray_Raja(N_Vector *vs, int count);
  ```

- N_VGetLength_Raja

  This function returns the length of the vector.

  ```
  sunindextype N_VGetLength_Raja(N_Vector v);
  ```

- N_VGetHostArrayPointer_Raja

  This function returns a pointer to the vector data on the host.

  ```
  realtype *N_VGetHostArrayPointer_Raja(N_Vector v);
  ```

- N_VGetDeviceArrayPointer_Raja

  This function returns a pointer to the vector data on the device.

  ```
  realtype *N_VGetDeviceArrayPointer_Raja(N_Vector v);
  ```

- N_VCopyToDevice_Raja

  This function copies host vector data to the device.

  ```
  realtype *N_VCopyToDevice_Raja(N_Vector v);
  ```

- N_VCopyFromDevice_Raja

  This function copies vector data from the device to the host.

  ```
  realtype *N_VCopyFromDevice_Raja(N_Vector v);
  ```

- N_VPrint_Raja

  This function prints the content of a RAJA vector to stdout.

  ```
  void N_VPrint_Raja(N_Vector v);
  ```

- N_VPrintFile_Raja

  This function prints the content of a RAJA vector to outfile.

  ```
  void N_VPrintFile_Raja(N_Vector v, FILE *outfile);
  ```

Notes

- When there is a need to access components of an N_Vector_Raja, v, it is recommeded to use functions N_VGetDeviceArrayPointer_Raja or N_VGetHostArrayPointer_Raja.

- To maximize efficiency, vector operations in the NVECTOR_RAJA implementation that have more than one N_Vector argument do not check for consistent internal representations of these vectors. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that such routines are called with N_Vector arguments that were all created with the same internal representations.

6.9 NVECTOR Examples

There are `NVector` examples that may be installed for the implementations provided with SUNDIALS. Each implementation makes use of the functions in `test_nvector.c`. These example functions show simple usage of the `NVector` family of functions. The input to the examples are the vector length, number of threads (if threaded implementation), and a print timing flag.
The following is a list of the example functions in `test_nvector.c`:

- `Test_N_VClone`: Creates clone of vector and checks validity of clone.
- `Test_N_VCloneEmpty`: Creates clone of empty vector and checks validity of clone.
- `Test_N_VCloneVectorArray`: Creates clone of vector array and checks validity of cloned array.
- `Test_N_VCloneVectorArray`: Creates clone of empty vector array and checks validity of cloned array.
- `Test_N_VGetArrayPointer`: Get array pointer.
- `Test_N_VSetArrayPointer`: Allocate new vector, set pointer to new vector array, and check values.
- `Test_N_VLinearSum` Case 1a: Test y = x + y
- `Test_N_VLinearSum` Case 1b: Test y = -x + y
- `Test_N_VLinearSum` Case 1c: Test y = ax + y
- `Test_N_VLinearSum` Case 2a: Test x = x + y
- `Test_N_VLinearSum` Case 2b: Test x = x - y
- `Test_N_VLinearSum` Case 2c: Test x = x + by
- `Test_N_VLinearSum` Case 3: Test z = x + y
- `Test_N_VLinearSum` Case 4a: Test z = x - y
- `Test_N_VLinearSum` Case 4b: Test z = -x + y
- `Test_N_VLinearSum` Case 5a: Test z = x + by
- `Test_N_VLinearSum` Case 5b: Test z = ax + y
- `Test_N_VLinearSum` Case 6a: Test z = -x + by
- `Test_N_VLinearSum` Case 6b: Test z = ax - y
- `Test_N_VLinearSum` Case 7: Test z = a(x + y)
- `Test_N_VLinearSum` Case 8: Test z = a(x - y)
- `Test_N_VLinearSum` Case 9: Test z = ax + by
- `Test_N_VConst`: Fill vector with constant and check result.
- `Test_N_VProd`: Test vector multiply: z = x * y
- `Test_N_VDiv`: Test vector division: z = x / y
- `Test_N_VScale`: Case 1: scale: x = cx
- `Test_N_VScale`: Case 2: copy: z = x

- `Test_N_VScale`: Case 3: negate: z = -x
- `Test_N_VScale`: Case 4: combination: z = cx
- `Test_N_VAbs`: Create absolute value of vector.
- `Test_N_VAddConst`: add constant vector: z = c + x
- `Test_N_VDotProd`: Calculate dot product of two vectors.
- `Test_N_VMaxNorm`: Create vector with known values, find and validate the max norm.
- `Test_N_VWrmsNorm`: Create vector of known values, find and validate the weighted root mean square.
- `Test_N_VWrmsNormMask`: Create vector of known values, find and validate the weighted root mean square using all elements except one.
- `Test_N_VMin`: Create vector, find and validate the min.
- `Test_N_VWL2Norm`: Create vector, find and validate the weighted Euclidean L2 norm.
- `Test_N_VL1Norm`: Create vector, find and validate the L1 norm.
- `Test_N_VCompare`: Compare vector with constant returning and validating comparison vector.
- `Test_N_VInvTest`: Test z[i] = 1 / x[i]
- `Test_N_VConstrMask`: Test mask of vector x with vector c.
- `Test_N_VMinQuotient`: Fill two vectors with known values. Calculate and validate minimum quotient.
- `Test_N_VLinearCombination` Case 1a: Test x = a x
- `Test_N_VLinearCombination` Case 1b: Test z = a x
- `Test_N_VLinearCombination` Case 2a: Test x = a x + b y
- `Test_N_VLinearCombination` Case 2b: Test z = a x + b y
- `Test_N_VLinearCombination` Case 3a: Test x = x + a y + b z
- `Test_N_VLinearCombination` Case 3b: Test x = a x + b y + c z
- `Test_N_VLinearCombination` Case 3c: Test w = a x + b y + c z
- `Test_N_VScaleAddMulti` Case 1a: y = a x + y
- `Test_N_VScaleAddMulti` Case 1b: z = a x + y
- `Test_N_VScaleAddMulti` Case 2a: Y[i] = c[i] x + Y[i], i = 1,2,3
- `Test_N_VScaleAddMulti` Case 2b: Z[i] = c[i] x + Y[i], i = 1,2,3
- `Test_N_VDotProdMulti` Case 1: Calculate the dot product of two vectors
- `Test_N_VDotProdMulti` Case 2: Calculate the dot product of one vector with three other vectors in a vector array.
- `Test_N_VLinearSumVectorArray` Case 1: z = a x + b y
- `Test_N_VLinearSumVectorArray` Case 2a: Z[i] = a X[i] + b Y[i]
- `Test_N_VLinearSumVectorArray` Case 2b: X[i] = a X[i] + b Y[i]

- `Test_N_VLinearSumVectorArray` Case 2c: Y[i] = a X[i] + b Y[i]
- `Test_N_VScaleVectorArray` Case 1a: y = c y
- `Test_N_VScaleVectorArray` Case 1b: z = c y
- `Test_N_VScaleVectorArray` Case 2a: Y[i] = c[i] Y[i]
- `Test_N_VScaleVectorArray` Case 2b: Z[i] = c[i] Y[i]
- `Test_N_VScaleVectorArray` Case 1a: z = c
- `Test_N_VScaleVectorArray` Case 1b: Z[i] = c
- `Test_N_VWrmsNormVectorArray` Case 1a: Create a vector of know values, find and validate the weighted root mean square norm.
- `Test_N_VWrmsNormVectorArray` Case 1b: Create a vector array of three vectors of know values, find and validate the weighted root mean square norm of each.
- `Test_N_VWrmsNormMaskVectorArray` Case 1a: Create a vector of know values, find and validate the weighted root mean square norm using all elements except one.
- `Test_N_VWrmsNormMaskVectorArray` Case 1b: Create a vector array of three vectors of know values, find and validate the weighted root mean square norm of each using all elements except one.
- `Test_N_VScaleAddMultiVectorArray` Case 1a: y = a x + y
- `Test_N_VScaleAddMultiVectorArray` Case 1b: z = a x + y
- `Test_N_VScaleAddMultiVectorArray` Case 2a: Y[j][0] = a[j] X[0] + Y[j][0]
- `Test_N_VScaleAddMultiVectorArray` Case 2b: Z[j][0] = a[j] X[0] + Y[j][0]
- `Test_N_VScaleAddMultiVectorArray` Case 3a: Y[0][i] = a[0] X[i] + Y[0][i]
- `Test_N_VScaleAddMultiVectorArray` Case 3b: Z[0][i] = a[0] X[i] + Y[0][i]
- `Test_N_VScaleAddMultiVectorArray` Case 4a: Y[j][i] = a[j] X[i] + Y[j][i]
- `Test_N_VScaleAddMultiVectorArray` Case 4b: Z[j][i] = a[j] X[i] + Y[j][i]
- `Test_N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray` Case 1a: x = a x
- `Test_N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray` Case 1b: z = a x
- `Test_N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray` Case 2a: x = a x + b y
- `Test_N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray` Case 2b: z = a x + b y
- `Test_N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray` Case 3a: x = a x + b y + c z
- `Test_N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray` Case 3b: w = a x + b y + c z
- `Test_N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray` Case 4a: X[0][i] = c[0] X[0][i]
- `Test_N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray` Case 4b: Z[i] = c[0] X[0][i]
- `Test_N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray` Case 5a: X[0][i] = c[0] X[0][i] + c[1] X[1][i]
- `Test_N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray` Case 5b: Z[i] = c[0] X[0][i] + c[1] X[1][i]
- `Test_N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray` Case 6a: X[0][i] = X[0][i] + c[1] X[1][i] + c[2] X[2][i]
- `Test_N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray` Case 6b: X[0][i] = c[0] X[0][i] + c[1] X[1][i] + c[2] X[2][i]
- `Test_N_VLinearCombinationVectorArray` Case 6c: Z[i] = c[0] X[0][i] + c[1] X[1][i] + c[2] X[2][i]

6.10 NVECTOR functions used by IDA

In Table 6.5 below, we list the vector functions used in the NVECTOR module used by the IDA package. The table also shows, for each function, which of the code modules uses the function. The IDA column shows function usage within the main integrator module, while the remaining columns show function usage within each of the IDA linear solvers interfaces, the IDABBDPRE preconditioner module, and the FIDA module. Here, IDADLS stands for the direct linear solver interface in IDA, and IDASPILS stands for the scaled, preconditioned, iterative linear solver interface in IDA.

Table 6.5: List of vector functions usage by IDA code modules

	IDA	IDADLS	IDASPILS	IDABBDPRE	FIDA
N_VGetVectorID					
N_VClone	✓		✓	✓	✓
N_VCloneEmpty					✓
N_VDestroy	✓		✓	✓	✓
N_VSpace	✓				
N_VGetArrayPointer		✓		✓	✓
N_VSetArrayPointer		✓			✓
N_VLinearSum	✓	✓	✓		
N_VConst	✓		✓		
N_VProd	✓		✓		
N_VDiv	✓		✓		
N_VScale	✓	✓	✓	✓	
N_VAbs	✓				
N_VInv	✓				
N_VAddConst	✓				
N_VDotProd			✓		
N_VMaxNorm	✓				
N_VWrmsNorm	✓		✓		
N_VMin	✓				
N_VMinQuotient	✓				
N_VConstrMask	✓				
N_VWrmsNormMask	✓				
N_VCompare	✓				
N_VLinearCombination	✓		✓		
N_VScaleAddMulti	✓				
N_VDotProdMulti			✓		
N_VLinearSumVectorArray	✓				
N_VScaleVectorArray	✓				

Of the functions listed in Table 6.2, N_VWL2Norm, N_VL1Norm, and N_VInvTest are *not* used by IDA. Therefore a user-supplied NVECTOR module for IDA could omit these three functions.

The optional function N_VDotProdMulti is only used when Classical Gram-Schmidt is enabled with SPGMR or SPFGMR. The remaining operations from Tables 6.3 and 6.4 not listed above are unused and a user-supplied NVECTOR module for IDA could omit these operations.

Chapter 7

Description of the SUNMatrix module

For problems that involve direct methods for solving linear systems, the SUNDIALS solvers not only operate on generic vectors, but also on generic matrices (of type `SUNMatrix`), through a set of operations defined by the particular SUNMATRIX implementation. Users can provide their own specific implementation of the SUNMATRIX module, particularly in cases where they provide their own NVECTOR and/or linear solver modules, and require matrices that are compatible with those implementations. Alternately, we provide three SUNMATRIX implementations: dense, banded, and sparse. The generic operations are described below, and descriptions of the implementations provided with SUNDIALS follow.

The generic `SUNMatrix` type has been modeled after the object-oriented style of the generic `N_Vector` type. Specifically, a generic `SUNMatrix` is a pointer to a structure that has an implementation-dependent *content* field containing the description and actual data of the matrix, and an *ops* field pointing to a structure with generic matrix operations. The type `SUNMatrix` is defined as

```
typedef struct _generic_SUNMatrix *SUNMatrix;

struct _generic_SUNMatrix {
    void *content;
    struct _generic_SUNMatrix_Ops *ops;
};
```

The `_generic_SUNMatrix_Ops` structure is essentially a list of pointers to the various actual matrix operations, and is defined as

```
struct _generic_SUNMatrix_Ops {
  SUNMatrix_ID (*getid)(SUNMatrix);
  SUNMatrix    (*clone)(SUNMatrix);
  void         (*destroy)(SUNMatrix);
  int          (*zero)(SUNMatrix);
  int          (*copy)(SUNMatrix, SUNMatrix);
  int          (*scaleadd)(realtype, SUNMatrix, SUNMatrix);
  int          (*scaleaddi)(realtype, SUNMatrix);
  int          (*matvec)(SUNMatrix, N_Vector, N_Vector);
  int          (*space)(SUNMatrix, long int*, long int*);
};
```

The generic SUNMATRIX module defines and implements the matrix operations acting on `SUNMatrix` objects. These routines are nothing but wrappers for the matrix operations defined by a particular SUNMATRIX implementation, which are accessed through the *ops* field of the `SUNMatrix` structure. To

Table 7.1: Identifiers associated with matrix kernels supplied with SUNDIALS.

Matrix ID	Matrix type	ID Value
SUNMATRIX_DENSE	Dense `M` $\times$ `N` matrix	0
SUNMATRIX_BAND	Band `M` $\times$ `M` matrix	1
SUNMATRIX_SPARSE	Sparse (CSR or CSC) `M` $\times$ `N` matrix	2
SUNMATRIX_CUSTOM	User-provided custom matrix	3

illustrate this point we show below the implementation of a typical matrix operation from the generic SUNMATRIX module, namely `SUNMatZero`, which sets all values of a matrix `A` to zero, returning a flag denoting a successful/failed operation:

```
int SUNMatZero(SUNMatrix A)
{
  return((int) A->ops->zero(A));
}
```

Table 7.2 contains a complete list of all matrix operations defined by the generic SUNMATRIX module. A particular implementation of the SUNMATRIX module must:

- Specify the *content* field of the `SUNMatrix` object.
- Define and implement a minimal subset of the matrix operations. See the documentation for each SUNDIALS solver to determine which SUNMATRIX operations they require.

  Note that the names of these routines should be unique to that implementation in order to permit using more than one SUNMATRIX module (each with different `SUNMatrix` internal data representations) in the same code.
- Define and implement user-callable constructor and destructor routines to create and free a `SUNMatrix` with the new *content* field and with *ops* pointing to the new matrix operations.
- Optionally, define and implement additional user-callable routines acting on the newly defined `SUNMatrix` (e.g., a routine to print the content for debugging purposes).
- Optionally, provide accessor macros or functions as needed for that particular implementation to access different parts of the *content* field of the newly defined `SUNMatrix`.

Each SUNMATRIX implementation included in SUNDIALS has a unique identifier specified in enumeration and shown in Table 7.1. It is recommended that a user-supplied SUNMATRIX implementation use the `SUNMATRIX_CUSTOM` identifier.

Table 7.2: Description of the `SUNMatrix` operations

Name	Usage and Description
`SUNMatGetID`	`id = SUNMatGetID(A);` Returns the type identifier for the matrix `A`. It is used to determine the matrix implementation type (e.g. dense, banded, sparse,...) from the abstract `SUNMatrix` interface. This is used to assess compatibility with SUNDIALS-provided linear solver implementations. Returned values are given in the Table 7.1.

continued on next page

Name	Usage and Description
SUNMatClone	`B = SUNMatClone(A);` Creates a new `SUNMatrix` of the same type as an existing matrix `A` and sets the *ops* field. It does not copy the matrix, but rather allocates storage for the new matrix.
SUNMatDestroy	`SUNMatDestroy(A);` Destroys the `SUNMatrix` `A` and frees memory allocated for its internal data.
SUNMatSpace	`ier = SUNMatSpace(A, &lrw, &liw);` Returns the storage requirements for the matrix `A`. `lrw` is a `long int` containing the number of realtype words and `liw` is a `long int` containing the number of integer words. The return value is an integer flag denoting success/failure of the operation. This function is advisory only, for use in determining a user's total space requirements; it could be a dummy function in a user-supplied SUNMATRIX module if that information is not of interest.
SUNMatZero	`ier = SUNMatZero(A);` Performs the operation $A_{ij} = 0$ for all entries of the matrix A. The return value is an integer flag denoting success/failure of the operation.
SUNMatCopy	`ier = SUNMatCopy(A,B);` Performs the operation $B_{ij} = A_{i,j}$ for all entries of the matrices A and B. The return value is an integer flag denoting success/failure of the operation.
SUNMatScaleAdd	`ier = SUNMatScaleAdd(c, A, B);` Performs the operation $A = cA + B$. The return value is an integer flag denoting success/failure of the operation.
SUNMatScaleAddI	`ier = SUNMatScaleAddI(c, A);` Performs the operation $A = cA + I$. The return value is an integer flag denoting success/failure of the operation.
SUNMatMatvec	`ier = SUNMatMatvec(A, x, y);` Performs the matrix-vector product operation, $y = Ax$. It should only be called with vectors `x` and `y` that are compatible with the matrix `A` – both in storage type and dimensions. The return value is an integer flag denoting success/failure of the operation.

We note that not all SUNMATRIX types are compatible with all NVECTOR types provided with SUNDIALS. This is primarily due to the need for compatibility within the `SUNMatMatvec` routine; however, compatibility between SUNMATRIX and NVECTOR implementations is more crucial when considering their interaction within SUNLINSOL objects, as will be described in more detail in Chapter 8. More specifically, in Table 7.3 we show the matrix interfaces available as SUNMATRIX modules, and the compatible vector implementations.

Table 7.3: SUNDIALS matrix interfaces and vector implementations that can be used for each.

Matrix Interface	Serial	Parallel (MPI)	OpenMP	pThreads	*hypre* Vec.	PETSc Vec.	CUDA	RAJA	User Suppl.
Dense	✓		✓	✓					✓

continued on next page

Matrix Interface	Serial	Parallel (MPI)	OpenMP	pThreads	*hypre* Vec.	PETSc Vec.	CUDA	RAJA	User Suppl.
Band	✓		✓	✓					✓
Sparse	✓		✓	✓					✓
User supplied	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

7.1 The SUNMatrix_Dense implementation

The dense implementation of the SUNMATRIX module provided with SUNDIALS, SUNMATRIX_DENSE, defines the *content* field of `SUNMatrix` to be the following structure:

```
struct _SUNMatrixContent_Dense {
  sunindextype M;
  sunindextype N;
  realtype *data;
  sunindextype ldata;
  realtype **cols;
};
```

These entries of the *content* field contain the following information:

M - number of rows

N - number of columns

data - pointer to a contiguous block of `realtype` variables. The elements of the dense matrix are stored columnwise, i.e. the (`i`,`j`)-th element of a dense SUNMATRIX `A` (with $0 \le$ `i` $<$ `M` and $0 \le$ `j` $<$ `N`) may be accessed via `data[j*M+i]`.

ldata - length of the data array (= `M`·`N`).

cols - array of pointers. `cols[j]` points to the first element of the j-th column of the matrix in the array `data`. The (`i`,`j`)-th element of a dense SUNMATRIX `A` (with $0 \le$ `i` $<$ `M` and $0 \le$ `j` $<$ `N`) may be accessed via `cols[j][i]`.

The header file to include when using this module is `sunmatrix/sunmatrix_dense.h`. The SUNMATRIX_DENSE module is accessible from all SUNDIALS solvers *without* linking to the `libsundials_sunmatrixdense` module library.

The following macros are provided to access the content of a SUNMATRIX_DENSE matrix. The prefix `SM_` in the names denotes that these macros are for *SUNMatrix* implementations, and the suffix `_D` denotes that these are specific to the *dense* version.

- `SM_CONTENT_D`

  This macro gives access to the contents of the dense `SUNMatrix`.

  The assignment `A_cont` = `SM_CONTENT_D(A)` sets `A_cont` to be a pointer to the dense `SUNMatrix` content structure.

  Implementation:

  ```
  #define SM_CONTENT_D(A)     ( (SUNMatrixContent_Dense)(A->content) )
  ```

- `SM_ROWS_D`, `SM_COLUMNS_D`, and `SM_LDATA_D`

  These macros give individual access to various lengths relevant to the content of a dense `SUNMatrix`.

These may be used either to retrieve or to set these values. For example, the assignment `A_rows = SM_ROWS_D(A)` sets `A_rows` to be the number of rows in the matrix `A`. Similarly, the assignment `SM_COLUMNS_D(A) = A_cols` sets the number of columns in `A` to equal `A_cols`.

Implementation:

```
#define SM_ROWS_D(A)        ( SM_CONTENT_D(A)->M )
#define SM_COLUMNS_D(A)     ( SM_CONTENT_D(A)->N )
#define SM_LDATA_D(A)       ( SM_CONTENT_D(A)->ldata )
```

- `SM_DATA_D` and `SM_COLS_D`

  These macros give access to the `data` and `cols` pointers for the matrix entries.

  The assignment `A_data = SM_DATA_D(A)` sets `A_data` to be a pointer to the first component of the data array for the dense `SUNMatrix` `A`. The assignment `SM_DATA_D(A) = A_data` sets the data array of `A` to be `A_data` by storing the pointer `A_data`.

  Similarly, the assignment `A_cols = SM_COLS_D(A)` sets `A_cols` to be a pointer to the array of column pointers for the dense `SUNMatrix` `A`. The assignment `SM_COLS_D(A) = A_cols` sets the column pointer array of `A` to be `A_cols` by storing the pointer `A_cols`.

  Implementation:

  ```
  #define SM_DATA_D(A)        ( SM_CONTENT_D(A)->data )
  #define SM_COLS_D(A)        ( SM_CONTENT_D(A)->cols )
  ```

- `SM_COLUMN_D` and `SM_ELEMENT_D`

  These macros give access to the individual columns and entries of the data array of a dense `SUNMatrix`.

  The assignment `col_j = SM_COLUMN_D(A,j)` sets `col_j` to be a pointer to the first entry of the `j`-th column of the $\mathtt{M} \times \mathtt{N}$ dense matrix `A` (with $0 \le \mathtt{j} < \mathtt{N}$). The type of the expression `SM_COLUMN_D(A,j)` is `realtype *`. The pointer returned by the call `SM_COLUMN_D(A,j)` can be treated as an array which is indexed from 0 to $\mathtt{M} - 1$.

  The assignments `SM_ELEMENT_D(A,i,j) = a_ij` and `a_ij = SM_ELEMENT_D(A,i,j)` reference the (`i`,`j`)-th element of the $\mathtt{M} \times \mathtt{N}$ dense matrix `A` (with $0 \le \mathtt{i} < \mathtt{M}$ and $0 \le \mathtt{j} < \mathtt{N}$).

  Implementation:

  ```
  #define SM_COLUMN_D(A,j)    ( (SM_CONTENT_D(A)->cols)[j] )
  #define SM_ELEMENT_D(A,i,j) ( (SM_CONTENT_D(A)->cols)[j][i] )
  ```

The SUNMATRIX_DENSE module defines dense implementations of all matrix operations listed in Table 7.2. Their names are obtained from those in Table 7.2 by appending the suffix `_Dense` (e.g. `SUNMatCopy_Dense`). The module SUNMATRIX_DENSE provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- `SUNDenseMatrix`

  This constructor function creates and allocates memory for a dense `SUNMatrix`. Its arguments are the number of rows, `M`, and columns, `N`, for the dense matrix.

  ```
  SUNMatrix SUNDenseMatrix(sunindextype M, sunindextype N);
  ```

- `SUNDenseMatrix_Print`

  This function prints the content of a dense `SUNMatrix` to the output stream specified by `outfile`. Note: `stdout` or `stderr` may be used as arguments for `outfile` to print directly to standard output or standard error, respectively.

  ```
  void SUNDenseMatrix_Print(SUNMatrix A, FILE* outfile);
  ```

- SUNDenseMatrix_Rows

  This function returns the number of rows in the dense SUNMatrix.

  ```
  sunindextype SUNDenseMatrix_Rows(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- SUNDenseMatrix_Columns

  This function returns the number of columns in the dense SUNMatrix.

  ```
  sunindextype SUNDenseMatrix_Columns(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- SUNDenseMatrix_LData

  This function returns the length of the data array for the dense SUNMatrix.

  ```
  sunindextype SUNDenseMatrix_LData(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- SUNDenseMatrix_Data

  This function returns a pointer to the data array for the dense SUNMatrix.

  ```
  realtype* SUNDenseMatrix_Data(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- SUNDenseMatrix_Cols

  This function returns a pointer to the cols array for the dense SUNMatrix.

  ```
  realtype** SUNDenseMatrix_Cols(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- SUNDenseMatrix_Column

  This function returns a pointer to the first entry of the jth column of the dense SUNMatrix. The resulting pointer should be indexed over the range 0 to $\texttt{M} - 1$.

  ```
  realtype* SUNDenseMatrix_Column(SUNMatrix A, sunindextype j);
  ```

Notes

- When looping over the components of a dense SUNMatrix A, the most efficient approaches are to:
  - First obtain the component array via `A_data = SM_DATA_D(A)` or `A_data = SUNDenseMatrix_Data(A)` and then access `A_data[i]` within the loop.
  - First obtain the array of column pointers via `A_cols = SM_COLS_D(A)` or `A_cols = SUNDenseMatrix_Cols(A)`, and then access `A_cols[j][i]` within the loop.
  - Within a loop over the columns, access the column pointer via `A_colj = SUNDenseMatrix_Column(A,j)` and then to access the entries within that column using `A_colj[i]` within the loop.

  All three of these are more efficient than using `SM_ELEMENT_D(A,i,j)` within a double loop.

- Within the SUNMatMatvec_Dense routine, internal consistency checks are performed to ensure that the matrix is called with consistent NVECTOR implementations. These are currently limited to: NVECTOR_SERIAL, NVECTOR_OPENMP, and NVECTOR_PTHREADS. As additional compatible vector implementations are added to SUNDIALS, these will be included within this compatibility check.

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the SUNMATRIX_DENSE module also includes the Fortran-callable function `FSUNDenseMatInit(code, M, N, ier)` to initialize this SUNMATRIX_DENSE module for a given SUNDIALS solver. Here `code` is an integer input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); `M` and `N` are the corresponding dense matrix construction arguments (declared to match C type `long int`); and `ier` is an error return flag equal to 0 for success and -1 for failure. Both `code` and `ier` are declared to match C type `int`. Additionally, when using ARKODE with a non-identity mass matrix, the Fortran-callable function `FSUNDenseMassMatInit(M, N, ier)` initializes this SUNMATRIX_DENSE module for storing the mass matrix.

7.2 The SUNMatrix_Band implementation

The banded implementation of the SUNMATRIX module provided with SUNDIALS, SUNMATRIX_BAND, defines the *content* field of `SUNMatrix` to be the following structure:

```
struct _SUNMatrixContent_Band {
  sunindextype M;
  sunindextype N;
  sunindextype mu;
  sunindextype ml;
  sunindextype s_mu;
  sunindextype ldim;
  realtype *data;
  sunindextype ldata;
  realtype **cols;
};
```

A diagram of the underlying data representation in a banded matrix is shown in Figure 7.1. A more complete description of the parts of this *content* field is given below:

M - number of rows

N - number of columns (`N` = `M`)

mu - upper half-bandwidth, 0 ≤ `mu` < `N`

ml - lower half-bandwidth, 0 ≤ `ml` < `N`

s_mu - storage upper bandwidth, `mu` ≤ `s_mu` < `N`. The LU decomposition routines in the associated SUNLINSOL_BAND and SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND modules write the LU factors into the storage for A. The upper triangular factor U, however, may have an upper bandwidth as big as min(`N`-1,`mu`+`ml`) because of partial pivoting. The `s_mu` field holds the upper half-bandwidth allocated for A.

ldim - leading dimension (`ldim` ≥ `s_mu`+`ml`+1)

data - pointer to a contiguous block of `realtype` variables. The elements of the banded matrix are stored columnwise (i.e. columns are stored one on top of the other in memory). Only elements within the specified half-bandwidths are stored. `data` is a pointer to `ldata` contiguous locations which hold the elements within the band of A.

ldata - length of the data array (= `ldim`·N)

cols - array of pointers. `cols[j]` is a pointer to the uppermost element within the band in the j-th column. This pointer may be treated as an array indexed from `s_mu`−`mu` (to access the uppermost element within the band in the j-th column) to `s_mu`+`ml` (to access the lowest element within the band in the j-th column). Indices from 0 to `s_mu`−`mu`−1 give access to extra storage elements required by the LU decomposition function. Finally, `cols[j][i-j+s_mu]` is the (i, j)-th element with j−`mu` ≤ i ≤ j+`ml`.

The header file to include when using this module is `sunmatrix/sunmatrix_band.h`. The SUNMATRIX_BAND module is accessible from all SUNDIALS solvers *without* linking to the `libsundials_sunmatrixband` module library.

The following macros are provided to access the content of a SUNMATRIX_BAND matrix. The prefix `SM_` in the names denotes that these macros are for *SUNMatrix* implementations, and the suffix `_B` denotes that these are specific to the *banded* version.

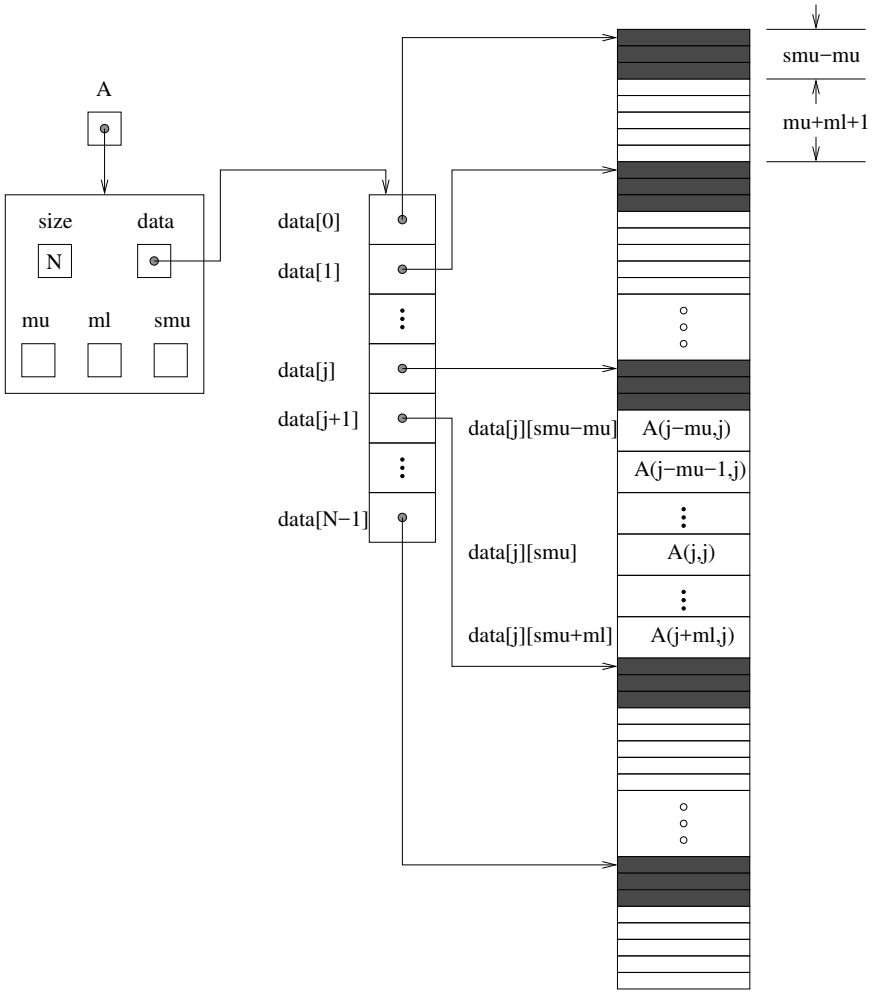


Figure 7.1: Diagram of the storage for the SUNMATRIX_BAND module. Here `A` is an `N` $\times$ `N` band matrix with upper and lower half-bandwidths `mu` and `ml`, respectively. The rows and columns of `A` are numbered from 0 to `N` $- 1$ and the (i, j)-th element of `A` is denoted `A(i,j)`. The greyed out areas of the underlying component storage are used by the associated SUNLINSOL_BAND linear solver.

- SM_CONTENT_B

  This routine gives access to the contents of the banded SUNMatrix.

  The assignment A_cont = SM_CONTENT_B(A) sets A_cont to be a pointer to the banded SUNMatrix content structure.

  Implementation:

  ```
  #define SM_CONTENT_B(A)     ( (SUNMatrixContent_Band)(A->content) )
  ```

- SM_ROWS_B, SM_COLUMNS_B, SM_UBAND_B, SM_LBAND_B, SM_SUBAND_B, SM_LDIM_B, and SM_LDATA_B

  These macros give individual access to various lengths relevant to the content of a banded SUNMatrix.

  These may be used either to retrieve or to set these values. For example, the assignment A_rows = SM_ROWS_B(A) sets A_rows to be the number of rows in the matrix A. Similarly, the assignment SM_COLUMNS_B(A) = A_cols sets the number of columns in A to equal A_cols.

  Implementation:

  ```
  #define SM_ROWS_B(A)        ( SM_CONTENT_B(A)->M )
  #define SM_COLUMNS_B(A)     ( SM_CONTENT_B(A)->N )
  #define SM_UBAND_B(A)       ( SM_CONTENT_B(A)->mu )
  #define SM_LBAND_B(A)       ( SM_CONTENT_B(A)->ml )
  #define SM_SUBAND_B(A)      ( SM_CONTENT_B(A)->s_mu )
  #define SM_LDIM_B(A)        ( SM_CONTENT_B(A)->ldim )
  #define SM_LDATA_B(A)       ( SM_CONTENT_B(A)->ldata )
  ```

- SM_DATA_B and SM_COLS_B

  These macros give access to the data and cols pointers for the matrix entries.

  The assignment A_data = SM_DATA_B(A) sets A_data to be a pointer to the first component of the data array for the banded SUNMatrix A. The assignment SM_DATA_B(A) = A_data sets the data array of A to be A_data by storing the pointer A_data.

  Similarly, the assignment A_cols = SM_COLS_B(A) sets A_cols to be a pointer to the array of column pointers for the banded SUNMatrix A. The assignment SM_COLS_B(A) = A_cols sets the column pointer array of A to be A_cols by storing the pointer A_cols.

  Implementation:

  ```
  #define SM_DATA_B(A)        ( SM_CONTENT_B(A)->data )
  #define SM_COLS_B(A)        ( SM_CONTENT_B(A)->cols )
  ```

- SM_COLUMN_B, SM_COLUMN_ELEMENT_B, and SM_ELEMENT_B

  These macros give access to the individual columns and entries of the data array of a banded SUNMatrix.

  The assignments SM_ELEMENT_B(A,i,j) = a_ij and a_ij = SM_ELEMENT_B(A,i,j) reference the (i,j)-th element of the N × N band matrix A, where $0 \le$ i, j $\le$ N − 1. The location (i,j) should further satisfy j−mu $\le$ i $\le$ j+ml.

  The assignment col_j = SM_COLUMN_B(A,j) sets col_j to be a pointer to the diagonal element of the j-th column of the N × N band matrix A, $0 \le$ j $\le$ N − 1. The type of the expression SM_COLUMN_B(A,j) is realtype *. The pointer returned by the call SM_COLUMN_B(A,j) can be treated as an array which is indexed from −mu to ml.

  The assignments SM_COLUMN_ELEMENT_B(col_j,i,j) = a_ij and a_ij = SM_COLUMN_ELEMENT_B(col_j,i,j) reference the (i,j)-th entry of the band matrix A when used in conjunction with SM_COLUMN_B to reference the j-th column through col_j. The index (i,j) should satisfy j−mu $\le$ i $\le$ j+ml.

Implementation:

```
#define SM_COLUMN_B(A,j)    ( ((SM_CONTENT_B(A)->cols)[j])+SM_SUBAND_B(A) )
#define SM_COLUMN_ELEMENT_B(col_j,i,j) (col_j[(i)-(j)])
#define SM_ELEMENT_B(A,i,j)
              ( (SM_CONTENT_B(A)->cols)[j][(i)-(j)+SM_SUBAND_B(A)] )
```

The SUNMATRIX_BAND module defines banded implementations of all matrix operations listed in Table 7.2. Their names are obtained from those in Table 7.2 by appending the suffix `_Band` (e.g. `SUNMatCopy_Band`). The module SUNMATRIX_BAND provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- `SUNBandMatrix`

  This constructor function creates and allocates memory for a banded `SUNMatrix`. Its arguments are the matrix size, `N`, the upper and lower half-bandwidths of the matrix, `mu` and `ml`, and the stored upper bandwidth, `smu`. When creating a band `SUNMatrix`, this value should be

  – at least min(`N`-1,`mu`+`ml`) if the matrix will be used by the SUNLINSOL_BAND module;
  – exactly equal to `mu`+`ml` if the matrix will be used by the SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND module;
  – at least `mu` if used in some other manner.

  ```
  SUNMatrix SUNBandMatrix(sunindextype N, sunindextype mu,
                          sunindextype ml, sunindextype smu);
  ```

- `SUNBandMatrix_Print`

  This function prints the content of a banded `SUNMatrix` to the output stream specified by `outfile`. Note: `stdout` or `stderr` may be used as arguments for `outfile` to print directly to standard output or standard error, respectively.

  ```
  void SUNBandMatrix_Print(SUNMatrix A, FILE* outfile);
  ```

- `SUNBandMatrix_Rows`

  This function returns the number of rows in the banded `SUNMatrix`.

  ```
  sunindextype SUNBandMatrix_Rows(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- `SUNBandMatrix_Columns`

  This function returns the number of columns in the banded `SUNMatrix`.

  ```
  sunindextype SUNBandMatrix_Columns(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- `SUNBandMatrix_LowerBandwidth`

  This function returns the lower half-bandwidth of the banded `SUNMatrix`.

  ```
  sunindextype SUNBandMatrix_LowerBandwidth(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- `SUNBandMatrix_UpperBandwidth`

  This function returns the upper half-bandwidth of the banded `SUNMatrix`.

  ```
  sunindextype SUNBandMatrix_UpperBandwidth(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- `SUNBandMatrix_StoredUpperBandwidth`

  This function returns the stored upper half-bandwidth of the banded `SUNMatrix`.

  ```
  sunindextype SUNBandMatrix_StoredUpperBandwidth(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- SUNBandMatrix_LDim

  This function returns the length of the leading dimension of the banded SUNMatrix.

  ```
  sunindextype SUNBandMatrix_LDim(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- SUNBandMatrix_Data

  This function returns a pointer to the data array for the banded SUNMatrix.

  ```
  realtype* SUNBandMatrix_Data(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- SUNBandMatrix_Cols

  This function returns a pointer to the cols array for the banded SUNMatrix.

  ```
  realtype** SUNBandMatrix_Cols(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- SUNBandMatrix_Column

  This function returns a pointer to the diagonal entry of the j-th column of the banded SUNMatrix. The resulting pointer should be indexed over the range $-$mu to ml.

  ```
  realtype* SUNBandMatrix_Column(SUNMatrix A, sunindextype j);
  ```

Notes

- When looping over the components of a banded SUNMatrix A, the most efficient approaches are to:
  - First obtain the component array via A_data = SM_DATA_B(A) or A_data = SUNBandMatrix_Data(A) and then access A_data[i] within the loop.
  - First obtain the array of column pointers via A_cols = SM_COLS_B(A) or A_cols = SUNBandMatrix_Cols(A), and then access A_cols[j][i] within the loop.
  - Within a loop over the columns, access the column pointer via A_colj = SUNBandMatrix_Column(A,j) and then to access the entries within that column using SM_COLUMN_ELEMENT_B(A_colj,i,j).

  All three of these are more efficient than using SM_ELEMENT_B(A,i,j) within a double loop.

- Within the SUNMatMatvec_Band routine, internal consistency checks are performed to ensure that the matrix is called with consistent NVECTOR implementations. These are currently limited to: NVECTOR_SERIAL, NVECTOR_OPENMP, and NVECTOR_PTHREADS. As additional compatible vector implementations are added to SUNDIALS, these will be included within this compatibility check.

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the SUNMATRIX_BAND module also includes the Fortran-callable function FSUNBandMatInit(code, N, mu, ml, smu, ier) to initialize this SUNMATRIX_BAND module for a given SUNDIALS solver. Here code is an integer input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); N, mu, ml and smu are the corresponding band matrix construction arguments (declared to match C type long int); and ier is an error return flag equal to 0 for success and -1 for failure. Both code and ier are declared to match C type int. Additionally, when using ARKODE with a non-identity mass matrix, the Fortran-callable function FSUNBandMassMatInit(N, mu, ml, smu, ier) initializes this SUNMATRIX_BAND module for storing the mass matrix.

7.3 The SUNMatrix_Sparse implementation

The sparse implementation of the SUNMATRIX module provided with SUNDIALS, SUNMATRIX_SPARSE, is designed to work with either *compressed-sparse-column* (CSC) or *compressed-sparse-row* (CSR) sparse matrix formats. To this end, it defines the *content* field of SUNMatrix to be the following structure:

```
struct _SUNMatrixContent_Sparse {
  sunindextype M;
  sunindextype N;
  sunindextype NNZ;
  sunindextype NP;
  realtype *data;
  int sparsetype;
  sunindextype *indexvals;
  sunindextype *indexptrs;
  /* CSC indices */
  sunindextype **rowvals;
  sunindextype **colptrs;
  /* CSR indices */
  sunindextype **colvals;
  sunindextype **rowptrs;
};
```

A diagram of the underlying data representation for a CSC matrix is shown in Figure 7.2 (the CSR format is similar). A more complete description of the parts of this *content* field is given below:

M - number of rows

N - number of columns

NNZ - maximum number of nonzero entries in the matrix (allocated length of `data` and `indexvals` arrays)

NP - number of index pointers (e.g. number of column pointers for CSC matrix). For CSC matrices `NP` = `N`, and for CSR matrices `NP` = `M`. This value is set automatically based the input for `sparsetype`.

data - pointer to a contiguous block of `realtype` variables (of length `NNZ`), containing the values of the nonzero entries in the matrix

sparsetype - type of the sparse matrix (`CSC_MAT` or `CSR_MAT`)

indexvals - pointer to a contiguous block of `int` variables (of length `NNZ`), containing the row indices (if CSC) or column indices (if CSR) of each nonzero matrix entry held in `data`

indexptrs - pointer to a contiguous block of `int` variables (of length `NP+1`). For CSC matrices each entry provides the index of the first column entry into the `data` and `indexvals` arrays, e.g. if `indexptr[3]=7`, then the first nonzero entry in the fourth column of the matrix is located in `data[7]`, and is located in row `indexvals[7]` of the matrix. The last entry contains the total number of nonzero values in the matrix and hence points one past the end of the active data in the `data` and `indexvals` arrays. For CSR matrices, each entry provides the index of the first row entry into the `data` and `indexvals` arrays.

The following pointers are added to the `SlsMat` type for user convenience, to provide a more intuitive interface to the CSC and CSR sparse matrix data structures. They are set automatically when creating a sparse SUNMATRIX, based on the sparse matrix storage type.

rowvals - pointer to `indexvals` when `sparsetype` is `CSC_MAT`, otherwise set to `NULL`.

colptrs - pointer to `indexptrs` when `sparsetype` is `CSC_MAT`, otherwise set to `NULL`.

colvals - pointer to `indexvals` when `sparsetype` is `CSR_MAT`, otherwise set to `NULL`.

rowptrs - pointer to `indexptrs` when `sparsetype` is `CSR_MAT`, otherwise set to `NULL`.

For example, the 5×4 CSC matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ 3 & 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 7 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 9 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

could be stored in this structure as either

```
M = 5;
N = 4;
NNZ = 8;
NP = N;
data = {3.0, 1.0, 3.0, 7.0, 1.0, 2.0, 9.0, 5.0};
sparsetype = CSC_MAT;
indexvals = {1, 3, 0, 2, 0, 1, 3, 4};
indexptrs = {0, 2, 4, 5, 8};
```

or

```
M = 5;
N = 4;
NNZ = 10;
NP = N;
data = {3.0, 1.0, 3.0, 7.0, 1.0, 2.0, 9.0, 5.0, *, *};
sparsetype = CSC_MAT;
indexvals = {1, 3, 0, 2, 0, 1, 3, 4, *, *};
indexptrs = {0, 2, 4, 5, 8};
```

where the first has no unused space, and the second has additional storage (the entries marked with * may contain any values). Note in both cases that the final value in `indexptrs` is 8, indicating the total number of nonzero entries in the matrix.

Similarly, in CSR format, the same matrix could be stored as

```
M = 5;
N = 4;
NNZ = 8;
NP = N;
data = {3.0, 1.0, 3.0, 2.0, 7.0, 1.0, 9.0, 5.0};
sparsetype = CSR_MAT;
indexvals = {1, 2, 0, 3, 1, 0, 3, 3};
indexptrs = {0, 2, 4, 5, 7, 8};
```

The header file to include when using this module is `sunmatrix/sunmatrix_sparse.h`. The SUNMATRIX_SPARSE module is accessible from all SUNDIALS solvers *without* linking to the `libsundials_sunmatrixsparse` module library.

The following macros are provided to access the content of a SUNMATRIX_SPARSE matrix. The prefix `SM_` in the names denotes that these macros are for *SUNMatrix* implementations, and the suffix `_S` denotes that these are specific to the *sparse* version.

- `SM_CONTENT_S`

  This routine gives access to the contents of the sparse `SUNMatrix`.

  The assignment `A_cont = SM_CONTENT_S(A)` sets `A_cont` to be a pointer to the sparse `SUNMatrix` content structure.

  Implementation:

  ```
  #define SM_CONTENT_S(A)     ( (SUNMatrixContent_Sparse)(A->content) )
  ```

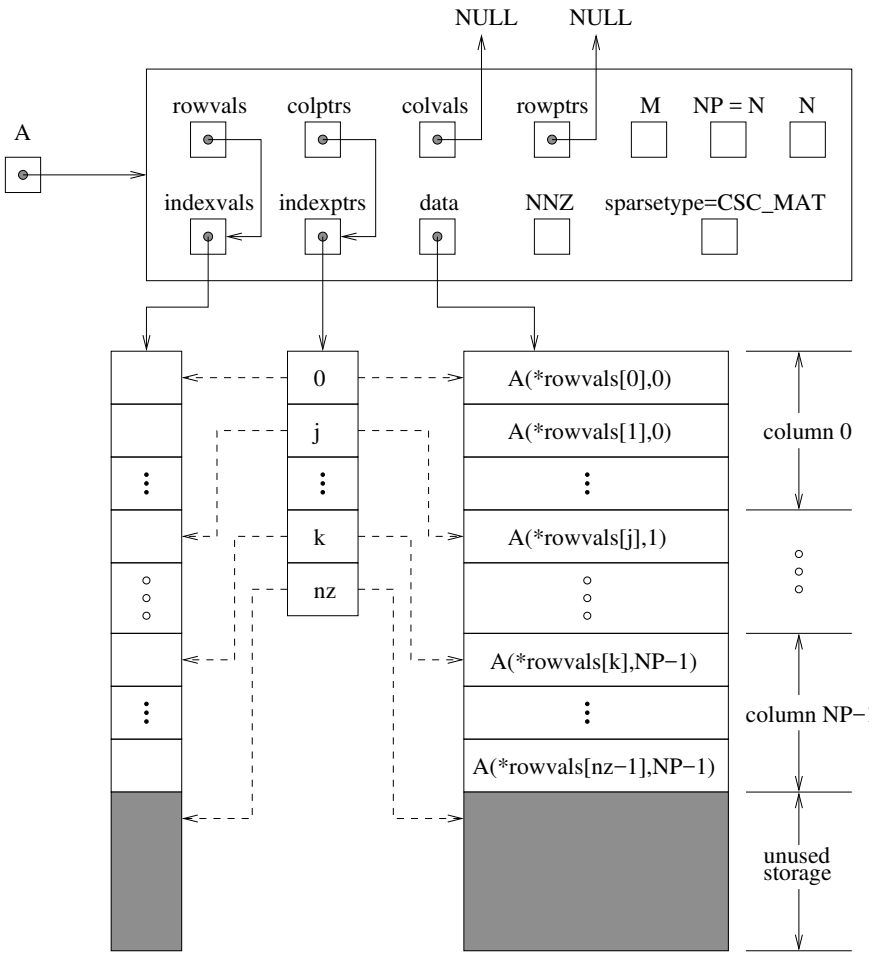


Figure 7.2: Diagram of the storage for a compressed-sparse-column matrix. Here `A` is an $\texttt{M} \times \texttt{N}$ sparse matrix with storage for up to `NNZ` nonzero entries (the allocated length of both `data` and `indexvals`). The entries in `indexvals` may assume values from 0 to $\texttt{M} - 1$, corresponding to the row index (zero-based) of each nonzero value. The entries in `data` contain the values of the nonzero entries, with the row i, column j entry of `A` (again, zero-based) denoted as `A(i,j)`. The `indexptrs` array contains $\texttt{N}+1$ entries; the first `N` denote the starting index of each column within the `indexvals` and `data` arrays, while the final entry points one past the final nonzero entry. Here, although `NNZ` values are allocated, only `nz` are actually filled in; the greyed-out portions of `data` and `indexvals` indicate extra allocated space.

- SM_ROWS_S, SM_COLUMNS_S, SM_NNZ_S, SM_NP_S, and SM_SPARSETYPE_S

  These macros give individual access to various lengths relevant to the content of a sparse SUNMatrix.

  These may be used either to retrieve or to set these values. For example, the assignment A_rows = SM_ROWS_S(A) sets A_rows to be the number of rows in the matrix A. Similarly, the assignment SM_COLUMNS_S(A) = A_cols sets the number of columns in A to equal A_cols.

  Implementation:

```
#define SM_ROWS_S(A)        ( SM_CONTENT_S(A)->M )
#define SM_COLUMNS_S(A)     ( SM_CONTENT_S(A)->N )
#define SM_NNZ_S(A)         ( SM_CONTENT_S(A)->NNZ )
#define SM_NP_S(A)          ( SM_CONTENT_S(A)->NP )
#define SM_SPARSETYPE_S(A)  ( SM_CONTENT_S(A)->sparsetype )
```

- SM_DATA_S, SM_INDEXVALS_S, and SM_INDEXPTRS_S

  These macros give access to the data and index arrays for the matrix entries.

  The assignment A_data = SM_DATA_S(A) sets A_data to be a pointer to the first component of the data array for the sparse SUNMatrix A. The assignment SM_DATA_S(A) = A_data sets the data array of A to be A_data by storing the pointer A_data.

  Similarly, the assignment A_indexvals = SM_INDEXVALS_S(A) sets A_indexvals to be a pointer to the array of index values (i.e. row indices for a CSC matrix, or column indices for a CSR matrix) for the sparse SUNMatrix A. The assignment A_indexptrs = SM_INDEXPTRS_S(A) sets A_indexptrs to be a pointer to the array of index pointers (i.e. the starting indices in the data/indexvals arrays for each row or column in CSR or CSC formats, respectively).

  Implementation:

```
#define SM_DATA_S(A)        ( SM_CONTENT_S(A)->data )
#define SM_INDEXVALS_S(A)   ( SM_CONTENT_S(A)->indexvals )
#define SM_INDEXPTRS_S(A)   ( SM_CONTENT_S(A)->indexptrs )
```

The SUNMATRIX_SPARSE module defines sparse implementations of all matrix operations listed in Table 7.2. Their names are obtained from those in Table 7.2 by appending the suffix _Sparse (e.g. SUNMatCopy_Sparse). The module SUNMATRIX_SPARSE provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- SUNSparseMatrix

  This function creates and allocates memory for a sparse SUNMatrix. Its arguments are the number of rows and columns of the matrix, M and N, the maximum number of nonzeros to be stored in the matrix, NNZ, and a flag sparsetype indicating whether to use CSR or CSC format (valid arguments are CSR_MAT or CSC_MAT).

```
SUNMatrix SUNSparseMatrix(sunindextype M, sunindextype N,
                          sunindextype NNZ, int sparsetype);
```

- SUNSparseFromDenseMatrix

  This function creates a new sparse matrix from an existing dense matrix by copying all values with magnitude larger than droptol into the sparse matrix structure.

  Requirements:

  – A must have type SUNMATRIX_DENSE;

- `droptol` must be non-negative;
- `sparsetype` must be either `CSC_MAT` or `CSR_MAT`.

The function returns NULL if any requirements are violated, or if the matrix storage request cannot be satisfied.

```
SUNMatrix SUNSparseFromDenseMatrix(SUNMatrix A, realtype droptol,
                                   int sparsetype);
```

- `SUNSparseFromBandMatrix`

  This function creates a new sparse matrix from an existing band matrix by copying all values with magnitude larger than `droptol` into the sparse matrix structure.

  Requirements:

  - `A` must have type `SUNMATRIX_BAND`;
  - `droptol` must be non-negative;
  - `sparsetype` must be either `CSC_MAT` or `CSR_MAT`.

  The function returns NULL if any requirements are violated, or if the matrix storage request cannot be satisfied.

  ```
  SUNMatrix SUNSparseFromBandMatrix(SUNMatrix A, realtype droptol,
                                    int sparsetype);
  ```

- `SUNSparseMatrix_Realloc`

  This function reallocates internal storage arrays in a sparse matrix so that the resulting sparse matrix has no wasted space (i.e. the space allocated for nonzero entries equals the actual number of nonzeros, `indexptrs[NP]`). Returns 0 on success and 1 on failure (e.g. if the input matrix is not sparse).

  ```
  int SUNSparseMatrix_Realloc(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- `SUNSparseMatrix_Print`

  This function prints the content of a sparse `SUNMatrix` to the output stream specified by `outfile`. Note: `stdout` or `stderr` may be used as arguments for `outfile` to print directly to standard output or standard error, respectively.

  ```
  void SUNSparseMatrix_Print(SUNMatrix A, FILE* outfile);
  ```

- `SUNSparseMatrix_Rows`

  This function returns the number of rows in the sparse `SUNMatrix`.

  ```
  sunindextype SUNSparseMatrix_Rows(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- `SUNSparseMatrix_Columns`

  This function returns the number of columns in the sparse `SUNMatrix`.

  ```
  sunindextype SUNSparseMatrix_Columns(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- `SUNSparseMatrix_NNZ`

  This function returns the number of entries allocated for nonzero storage for the sparse matrix `SUNMatrix`.

  ```
  sunindextype SUNSparseMatrix_NNZ(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- SUNSparseMatrix_NP

  This function returns the number of columns/rows for the sparse SUNMatrix, depending on whether the matrix uses CSC/CSR format, respectively. The indexptrs array has NP+1 entries.

  ```
  sunindextype SUNSparseMatrix_NP(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- SUNSparseMatrix_SparseType

  This function returns the storage type (CSR_MAT or CSC_MAT) for the sparse SUNMatrix.

  ```
  int SUNSparseMatrix_SparseType(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- SUNSparseMatrix_Data

  This function returns a pointer to the data array for the sparse SUNMatrix.

  ```
  realtype* SUNSparseMatrix_Data(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- SUNSparseMatrix_IndexValues

  This function returns a pointer to index value array for the sparse SUNMatrix: for CSR format this is the column index for each nonzero entry, for CSC format this is the row index for each nonzero entry.

  ```
  sunindextype* SUNSparseMatrix_IndexValues(SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- SUNSparseMatrix_IndexPointers

  This function returns a pointer to the index pointer array for the sparse SUNMatrix: for CSR format this is the location of the first entry of each row in the data and indexvalues arrays, for CSC format this is the location of the first entry of each column.

  ```
  sunindextype* SUNSparseMatrix_IndexPointers(SUNMatrix A);
  ```


Within the SUNMatMatvec_Sparse routine, internal consistency checks are performed to ensure that the matrix is called with consistent NVECTOR implementations. These are currently limited to: NVECTOR_SERIAL, NVECTOR_OPENMP, and NVECTOR_PTHREADS. As additional compatible vector implementations are added to SUNDIALS, these will be included within this compatibility check.

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the SUNMATRIX_SPARSE module also includes the Fortran-callable function FSUNSparseMatInit(code, M, N, NNZ, sparsetype, ier) to initialize this SUNMATRIX_SPARSE module for a given SUNDIALS solver. Here code is an integer input for the solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); M, N and NNZ are the corresponding sparse matrix construction arguments (declared to match C type long int); sparsetype is an integer flag indicating the sparse storage type (0 for CSC, 1 for CSR); and ier is an error return flag equal to 0 for success and -1 for failure. Each of code, sparsetype and ier are declared so as to match C type int. Additionally, when using ARKODE with a non-identity mass matrix, the Fortran-callable function FSUNSparseMassMatInit(M, N, NNZ, sparsetype, ier) initializes this SUNMATRIX_SPARSE module for storing the mass matrix.

7.4 SUNMatrix Examples

There are SUNMatrix examples that may be installed for each implementation: dense, banded, and sparse. Each implementation makes use of the functions in test_sunmatrix.c. These example functions show simple usage of the SUNMatrix family of functions. The inputs to the examples depend on the matrix type, and are output to stdout if the example is run without the appropriate number of command-line arguments.
The following is a list of the example functions in test_sunmatrix.c:

- Test_SUNMatGetID: Verifies the returned matrix ID against the value that should be returned.
- Test_SUNMatClone: Creates clone of an existing matrix, copies the data, and checks that their values match.

- `Test_SUNMatZero`: Zeros out an existing matrix and checks that each entry equals 0.0.
- `Test_SUNMatCopy`: Clones an input matrix, copies its data to a clone, and verifies that all values match.
- `Test_SUNMatScaleAdd`: Given an input matrix A and an input identity matrix I, this test clones and copies A to a new matrix B, computes $B = -B + B$, and verifies that the resulting matrix entries equal 0.0. Additionally, if the matrix is square, this test clones and copies A to a new matrix D, clones and copies I to a new matrix C, computes $D = D + I$ and $C = C + A$ using `SUNMatScaleAdd`, and then verifies that $C == D$.
- `Test_SUNMatScaleAddI`: Given an input matrix A and an input identity matrix I, this clones and copies I to a new matrix B, computes $B = -B + I$ using `SUNMatScaleAddI`, and verifies that the resulting matrix entries equal 0.0.
- `Test_SUNMatMatvec` Given an input matrix A and input vectors x and y such that $y = Ax$, this test has different behavior depending on whether A is square. If it is square, it clones and copies A to a new matrix B, computes $B = 3B + I$ using `SUNMatScaleAddI`, clones y to new vectors w and z, computes $z = Bx$ using `SUNMatMatvec`, computes $w = 3y + x$ using `N_VLinearSum`, and verifies that $w == z$. If A is not square, it just clones y to a new vector z, computes $z = Ax$ using `SUNMatMatvec`, and verifies that $y == z$.
- `Test_SUNMatSpace` verifies that `SUNMatSpace` can be called, and outputs the results to `stdout`.

7.5 SUNMatrix functions used by IDA

In Table 7.4 below, we list the matrix functions in the SUNMATRIX module used within the IDA package. The table also shows, for each function, which of the code modules uses the function. Neither the main IDA integrator nor the IDASPILS interface call SUNMATRIX functions directly, so the table columns are specific to the IDADLS direct solver interface and the IDABBDPRE preconditioner module.

At this point, we should emphasize that the IDA user does not need to know anything about the usage of matrix functions by the IDA code modules in order to use IDA. The information is presented as an implementation detail for the interested reader.

Table 7.4: List of matrix functions usage by IDA code modules

	IDADLS	IDABBDPRE
SUNMatGetID	✓	
SUNMatDestroy		✓
SUNMatZero	✓	✓
SUNMatSpace		†

The matrix functions listed in Table 7.2 with a † symbol are optionally used, in that these are only called if they are implemented in the SUNMATRIX module that is being used (i.e. their function pointers are non-`NULL`). The matrix functions listed in Table 7.2 that are *not* used by IDA are: `SUNMatCopy`, `SUNMatClone`, `SUNMatScaleAdd`, `SUNMatScaleAddI` and `SUNMatMatvec`. Therefore a user-supplied SUNMATRIX module for IDA could omit these functions.

Chapter 8

Description of the SUNLinearSolver module

For problems that involve the solution of linear systems of equations, the SUNDIALS solvers operate using generic linear solver modules (of type `SUNLinearSolver`), through a set of operations defined by the particular SUNLINSOL implementation. These work in coordination with the SUNDIALS generic NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX modules to provide a set of compatible data structures and solvers for the solution of linear systems using direct or iterative methods. Moreover, users can provide their own specific SUNLINSOL implementation to each SUNDIALS solver, particularly in cases where they provide their own NVECTOR and/or SUNMATRIX modules, and the customized linear solver leverages these additional data structures to create highly efficient and/or scalable solvers for their particular problem. Additionally, SUNDIALS provides native implementations SUNLINSOL modules, as well as SUNLINSOL modules that interface between SUNDIALS and external linear solver libraries.

The various SUNDIALS solvers have been designed to specifically leverage the use of either *direct linear solvers* or *scaled, preconditioned, iterative linear solvers*, through their "Dls" and "Spils" interfaces, respectively. Additionally, SUNDIALS solvers can make use of user-supplied custom linear solvers, whether these are problem-specific or come from external solver libraries.

For iterative (and possibly custom) linear solvers, the SUNDIALS solvers leverage scaling and preconditioning, as applicable, to balance error between solution components and to accelerate convergence of the linear solver. To this end, instead of solving the linear system $Ax = b$ directly, we apply the underlying iterative algorithm to the transformed system

$$\tilde{A}\tilde{x} = \tilde{b} \tag{8.1}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{A} &= S_1 P_1^{-1} A P_2^{-1} S_2^{-1}, \\ \tilde{b} &= S_1 P_1^{-1} b, \\ \tilde{x} &= S_2 P_2 x, \end{aligned} \tag{8.2}$$

and where

- P_1 is the left preconditioner,
- P_2 is the right preconditioner,
- S_1 is a diagonal matrix of scale factors for $P_1^{-1}b$,
- S_2 is a diagonal matrix of scale factors for $P_2 x$.

The SUNDIALS solvers request that iterative linear solvers stop based on the 2-norm of the scaled preconditioned residual meeting a prescribed tolerance

$$\left\| \tilde{b} - \tilde{A}\tilde{x} \right\|_2 < \text{tol}.$$

We note that not all of the iterative linear solvers implemented in SUNDIALS support the full range of the above options. Similarly, some of the SUNDIALS integrators only utilize a subset of these options. Exceptions to the operators shown above are described in the documentation for each SUNLINSOL implementation, or for each SUNDIALS solver "Spils" interface.

The generic `SUNLinearSolver` type has been modeled after the object-oriented style of the generic `N_Vector` type. Specifically, a generic `SUNLinearSolver` is a pointer to a structure that has an implementation-dependent *content* field containing the description and actual data of the linear solver, and an *ops* field pointing to a structure with generic linear solver operations. The type `SUNLinearSolver` is defined as

```
typedef struct _generic_SUNLinearSolver *SUNLinearSolver;

struct _generic_SUNLinearSolver {
  void *content;
  struct _generic_SUNLinearSolver_Ops *ops;
};
```

The `_generic_SUNLinearSolver_Ops` structure is essentially a list of pointers to the various actual linear solver operations, and is defined as

```
struct _generic_SUNLinearSolver_Ops {
  SUNLinearSolver_Type (*gettype)(SUNLinearSolver);
  int                  (*setatimes)(SUNLinearSolver, void*, ATimesFn);
  int                  (*setpreconditioner)(SUNLinearSolver, void*,
                                            PSetupFn, PSolveFn);
  int                  (*setscalingvectors)(SUNLinearSolver,
                                            N_Vector, N_Vector);
  int                  (*initialize)(SUNLinearSolver);
  int                  (*setup)(SUNLinearSolver, SUNMatrix);
  int                  (*solve)(SUNLinearSolver, SUNMatrix, N_Vector,
                                N_Vector, realtype);
  int                  (*numiters)(SUNLinearSolver);
  realtype             (*resnorm)(SUNLinearSolver);
  long int             (*lastflag)(SUNLinearSolver);
  int                  (*space)(SUNLinearSolver, long int*, long int*);
  N_Vector             (*resid)(SUNLinearSolver);
  int                  (*free)(SUNLinearSolver);
};
```

The generic SUNLINSOL module defines and implements the linear solver operations acting on `SUNLinearSolver` objects. These routines are in fact only wrappers for the linear solver operations defined by a particular SUNLINSOL implementation, which are accessed through the *ops* field of the `SUNLinearSolver` structure. To illustrate this point we show below the implementation of a typical linear solver operation from the generic SUNLINSOL module, namely `SUNLinSolInitialize`, which initializes a SUNLINSOL object for use after it has been created and configured, and returns a flag denoting a successful/failed operation:

```
int SUNLinSolInitialize(SUNLinearSolver S)
{
  return ((int) S->ops->initialize(S));
}
```

Table 8.2 contains a complete list of all linear solver operations defined by the generic SUNLINSOL module. In order to support both direct and iterative linear solver types, the generic SUNLINSOL module defines linear solver routines (or arguments) that may be specific to individual use cases. As such, for each routine we specify its intended use. If a custom SUNLINSOL module is provided, the function pointers for non-required routines may be set to `NULL` to indicate that they are not provided.

A particular implementation of the SUNLINSOL module must:

Table 8.1: Identifiers associated with linear solver kernels supplied with SUNDIALS.

Linear Solver ID	Solver type	ID Value
SUNLINEARSOLVER_DIRECT	Direct solvers	0
SUNLINEARSOLVER_ITERATIVE	Iterative solvers	1
SUNLINEARSOLVER_CUSTOM	Custom solvers	2

- Specify the *content* field of the `SUNLinearSolver` object.
- Define and implement a minimal subset of the linear solver operations. See the documentation for each SUNDIALS linear solver interface to determine which SUNLINSOL operations they require.

  Note that the names of these routines should be unique to that implementation in order to permit using more than one SUNLINSOL module (each with different `SUNLinearSolver` internal data representations) in the same code.
- Define and implement user-callable constructor and destructor routines to create and free a `SUNLinearSolver` with the new *content* field and with *ops* pointing to the new linear solver operations.
- Optionally, define and implement additional user-callable routines acting on the newly defined `SUNLinearSolver` (e.g., routines to set various configuration options for tuning the linear solver to a particular problem).
- Optionally, provide functions as needed for that particular implementation to access different parts in the *content* field of the newly defined `SUNLinearSolver` object (e.g., routines to return various statistics from the solver).

Each SUNLINSOL implementation included in SUNDIALS has a "type" identifier specified in enumeration and shown in Table 8.1. It is recommended that a user-supplied SUNLINSOL implementation set this identifier based on the SUNDIALS solver interface they intend to use: "Dls" interfaces require the `SUNLINEARSOLVER_DIRECT` SUNLINSOL objects and "Spils" interfaces require the `SUNLINEARSOLVER_ITERATIVE` objects.

Table 8.2: Description of the `SUNLinearSolver` operations

Name	Usage and Description
`SUNLinSolGetType`	`type = SUNLinSolGetType(LS);` Returns the type identifier for the linear solver `LS`. It is used to determine the solver type (direct, iterative, or custom) from the abstract `SUNLinearSolver` interface. This is used to assess compatibility with SUNDIALS-provided linear solver interfaces. Returned values are given in the Table 8.1.

continued on next page

Name	Usage and Description
SUNLinSolInitialize	`ier = SUNLinSolInitialize(LS);` Performs linear solver initialization (assumes that all solver-specific options have been set). This should return zero for a successful call, and a negative value for a failure, ideally returning one of the generic error codes listed in Table 8.4.
SUNLinSolSetup	`ier = SUNLinSolSetup(LS, A);` Performs any linear solver setup needed, based on an updated system SUNMATRIX `A`. This may be called frequently (e.g. with a full Newton method) or infrequently (for a modified Newton method), based on the type of integrator and/or nonlinear solver requesting the solves. This should return zero for a successful call, a positive value for a recoverable failure and a negative value for an unrecoverable failure, ideally returning one of the generic error codes listed in Table 8.4.
SUNLinSolSolve	`ier = SUNLinSolSolve(LS, A, x, b, tol);` Solves a linear system $Ax = b$. This should return zero for a successful call, a positive value for a recoverable failure and a negative value for an unrecoverable failure, ideally returning one of the generic error codes listed in Table 8.4. **Direct solvers:** can ignore the `realtype` argument `tol`. **Iterative solvers:** can ignore the SUNMATRIX input `A` since a `NULL` argument will be passed (these should instead rely on the matrix-vector product function supplied through the routine `SUNLinSolSetATimes`). These should attempt to solve to the specified `realtype` tolerance `tol` in a weighted 2-norm. If the solver does not support scaling then it should just use a 2-norm. **Custom solvers:** all arguments will be supplied, and if the solver is approximate then it should attempt to solve to the specified `realtype` tolerance `tol` in a weighted 2-norm. If the solver does not support scaling then it should just use a 2-norm.
SUNLinSolFree	`ier = SUNLinSolFree(LS);` Frees memory allocated by the linear solver. This should return zero for a successful call, and a negative value for a failure.
SUNLinSolSetATimes	`ier = SUNLinSolSetATimes(LS, A_data, ATimes);` (Iterative/Custom linear solvers only) Provides `ATimesFn` function pointer, as well as a `void *` pointer to a data structure used by this routine, to a linear solver object. SUNDIALS solvers will call this function to set the matrix-vector product function to either a solver-provided difference-quotient via vector operations or a user-supplied solver-specific routine. This routine should return zero for a successful call, and a negative value for a failure, ideally returning one of the generic error codes listed in Table 8.4.

continued on next page

Name	Usage and Description
SUNLinSolSetPreconditioner	`ier = SUNLinSolSetPreconditioner(LS, Pdata, Pset, Psol);` (Optional; Iterative/Custom linear solvers only) Provides `PSetupFn` and `PSolveFn` function pointers that implement the preconditioner solves P_1^{-1} and P_2^{-1} from equations (8.1)-(8.2). This routine will be called by a SUNDIALS solver, which will provide translation between the generic `Pset` and `Psol` calls and the integrator-specific and integrator- or user-supplied routines. This routine should return zero for a successful call, and a negative value for a failure, ideally returning one of the generic error codes listed in Table 8.4.
SUNLinSolSetScalingVectors	`ier = SUNLinSolSetScalingVectors(LS, s1, s2);` (Optional; Iterative/Custom linear solvers only) Sets pointers to left/right scaling vectors for the linear system solve. Here, `s1` is an NVECTOR of positive scale factors containing the diagonal of the matrix S_1 from equations (8.1)-(8.2). Similarly, `s2` is an NVECTOR containing the diagonal of S_2 from equations (8.1)-(8.2). Neither of these vectors are tested for positivity, and a `NULL` argument for either indicates that the corresponding scaling matrix is the identity. This routine should return zero for a successful call, and a negative value for a failure, ideally returning one of the generic error codes listed in Table 8.4.
SUNLinSolNumIters	`its = SUNLinSolNumIters(LS);` (Optional; Iterative/Custom linear solvers only) Should return the `int` number of linear iterations performed in the last 'solve' call.
SUNLinSolResNorm	`rnorm = SUNLinSolResNorm(LS);` (Optional; Iterative/Custom linear solvers only) Should return the `realtype` final residual norm from the last 'solve' call.
SUNLinSolResid	`rvec = SUNLinSolResid(LS);` (Optional; Iterative/Custom linear solvers only) If an iterative method computes the preconditioned initial residual and returns with a successful solve without performing any iterations (i.e. either the initial guess or the preconditioner is sufficiently accurate), then this function may be called by the SUNDIALS solver. This routine should return the NVECTOR containing the preconditioned initial residual vector.

continued on next page

Name	Usage and Description
SUNLinLastFlag	`lflag = SUNLinLastFlag(LS);` (Optional) Should return the last error flag encountered within the linear solver. This is not called by the SUNDIALS solvers directly; it allows the user to investigate linear solver issues after a failed solve.
SUNLinSolSpace	`ier = SUNLinSolSpace(LS, &lrw, &liw);` (Optional) Returns the storage requirements for the linear solver `LS`. `lrw` is a `long int` containing the number of realtype words and `liw` is a `long int` containing the number of integer words. The return value is an integer flag denoting success/failure of the operation. This function is advisory only, for use in determining a user's total space requirements.

8.1 Description of the client-supplied SUNLinearSolver routines

The SUNDIALS packages provide the `ATimes`, `Pset` and `Psol` routines utilized by the SUNLINSOL modules. These function types are defined in the header file `sundials/sundials_iterative.h`, and are described here in case a user wishes to interact directly with an iterative SUNLINSOL object.

`ATimesFn`

Definition `typedef int (*ATimesFn)(void *A_data, N_Vector v, N_Vector z);`

Purpose These functions compute the action of a matrix on a vector, performing the operation $z = Av$. Memory for `z` should already be allocted prior to calling this function. The vector `v` should be left unchanged.

Arguments `A_data` is a pointer to client data, the same as that supplied to `SUNLinSolSetATimes`.

`v` is the input vector to multiply.

`z` is the output vector computed.

Return value This routine should return 0 if successful and a non-zero value if unsuccessful.

Notes

`PSetupFn`

Definition `typedef int (*PSetupFn)(void *P_data)`

Purpose These functions set up any requisite problem data in preparation for calls to the corresponding `PSolveFn`.

Arguments `P_data` is a pointer to client data, the same pointer as that supplied to the routine `SUNLinSolSetPreconditioner`.

Return value This routine should return 0 if successful and a non-zero value if unsuccessful.

Notes

`PSolveFn`

Definition
```
typedef int (*PSolveFn)(void *P_data, N_Vector r, N_Vector z,
                        realtype tol, int lr)
```

Purpose These functions solve the preconditioner equation $Pz = r$ for the vector z. Memory for `z` should already be allocted prior to calling this function. The parameter `P_data` is a pointer to any information about P which the function needs in order to do its job (set up by the corresponding `PSetupFn`. The parameter `lr` is input, and indicates whether P is to be taken as the left preconditioner or the right preconditioner: `lr` $= 1$ for left and `lr` $= 2$ for right. If preconditioning is on one side only, `lr` can be ignored. If the preconditioner is iterative, then it should strive to solve the preconditioner equation so that

$$\|Pz - r\|_{\text{wrms}} < tol$$

where the weight vector for the WRMS norm may be accessed from the main package memory structure. The vector `r` should not be modified by the `PSolveFn`.

Arguments `P_data` is a pointer to client data, the same pointer as that supplied to the routine `SUNLinSolSetPreconditioner`.

`r` is the right-hand side vector for the preconditioner system

`z` is the solution vector for the preconditioner system

`tol` is the desired tolerance for an iterative preconditioner

`lr` is flag indicating whether the routine should perform left (1) or right (2) preconditioning.

Return value This routine should return 0 if successful and a non-zero value if unsuccessful. On a failure, a negative return value indicates an unrecoverable condition, while a positive value indicates a recoverable one, in which the calling routine may reattempt the solution after updating preconditioner data.

Notes

8.2 Compatibility of SUNLinearSolver modules

We note that not all SUNLINSOL types are compatible with all SUNMATRIX and NVECTOR types provided with SUNDIALS. In Table 8.3 we show the direct linear solvers available as SUNLINSOL modules, and the compatible matrix implementations. Recall that Table 4.1 shows the compatibility between all SUNLINSOL modules and vector implementations.

Table 8.3: SUNDIALS direct linear solvers and matrix implementations that can be used for each.

Linear Solver Interface	Dense Matrix	Banded Matrix	Sparse Matrix	User Supplied
Dense	✓			✓
Band		✓		✓
LapackDense	✓			✓
LapackBand		✓		✓
KLU			✓	✓
SUPERLUMT			✓	✓

continued on next page

Linear Solver Interface	Dense Matrix	Banded Matrix	Sparse Matrix	User Supplied
User supplied	✓	✓	✓	✓

The functions within the SUNDIALS-provided `SUNLinearSolver` implementations return a common set of error codes, shown below in the Table 8.4.

Table 8.4: Description of the `SUNLinearSolver` error codes

Name	Value	Description
SUNLS_SUCCESS	0	successful call or converged solve
SUNLS_MEM_NULL	-1	the memory argument to the function is `NULL`
SUNLS_ILL_INPUT	-2	an illegal input has been provided to the function
SUNLS_MEM_FAIL	-3	failed memory access or allocation
SUNLS_ATIMES_FAIL_UNREC	-4	an unrecoverable failure occurred in the `ATimes` routine
SUNLS_PSET_FAIL_UNREC	-5	an unrecoverable failure occurred in the `Pset` routine
SUNLS_PSOLVE_FAIL_UNREC	-6	an unrecoverable failure occurred in the `Psolve` routine
SUNLS_PACKAGE_FAIL_UNREC	-7	an unrecoverable failure occurred in an external linear solver package
SUNLS_GS_FAIL	-8	a failure occurred during Gram-Schmidt orthogonalization (SUNLINSOL_SPGMR/SUNLINSOL_SPFGMR)
SUNLS_QRSOL_FAIL	-9	a singular R matrix was encountered in a QR factorization (SUNLINSOL_SPGMR/SUNLINSOL_SPFGMR)
SUNLS_RES_REDUCED	1	an iterative solver reduced the residual, but did not converge to the desired tolerance
SUNLS_CONV_FAIL	2	an iterative solver did not converge (and the residual was not reduced)
SUNLS_ATIMES_FAIL_REC	3	a recoverable failure occurred in the `ATimes` routine
SUNLS_PSET_FAIL_REC	4	a recoverable failure occurred in the `Pset` routine
SUNLS_PSOLVE_FAIL_REC	5	a recoverable failure occurred in the `Psolve` routine
SUNLS_PACKAGE_FAIL_REC	6	a recoverable failure occurred in an external linear solver package
SUNLS_QRFACT_FAIL	7	a singular matrix was encountered during a QR factorization (SUNLINSOL_SPGMR/SUNLINSOL_SPFGMR)
SUNLS_LUFACT_FAIL	8	a singular matrix was encountered during a LU factorization (SUNLINSOL_DENSE/SUNLINSOL_BAND)

8.3 The SUNLinearSolver_Dense implementation

The dense implementation of the SUNLINSOL module provided with SUNDIALS, SUNLINSOL_DENSE, is designed to be used with the corresponding SUNMATRIX_DENSE matrix type, and one of the serial or shared-memory NVECTOR implementations (NVECTOR_SERIAL, NVECTOR_OPENMP or NVECTOR_PTHREADS). The SUNLINSOL_DENSE module defines the *content* field of a `SUNLinearSolver` to be the following structure:

```
struct _SUNLinearSolverContent_Dense {
  sunindextype N;
  sunindextype *pivots;
```

```
  long int last_flag;
};
```

These entries of the *content* field contain the following information:

N - size of the linear system,

pivots - index array for partial pivoting in LU factorization,

last_flag - last error return flag from internal function evaluations.

This solver is constructed to perform the following operations:

- The "setup" call performs a LU factorization with partial (row) pivoting ($\mathcal{O}(N^3)$ cost), $PA = LU$, where P is a permutation matrix, L is a lower triangular matrix with 1's on the diagonal, and U is an upper triangular matrix. This factorization is stored in-place on the input SUNMATRIX_DENSE object A, with pivoting information encoding P stored in the `pivots` array.
- The "solve" call performs pivoting and forward and backward substitution using the stored `pivots` array and the LU factors held in the SUNMATRIX_DENSE object ($\mathcal{O}(N^2)$ cost).

The header file to include when using this module is `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_dense.h`. The SUNLINSOL_DENSE module is accessible from all SUNDIALS solvers *without* linking to the `libsundials_sunlinsoldense` module library.

The SUNLINSOL_DENSE module defines dense implementations of all "direct" linear solver operations listed in Table 8.2:

- `SUNLinSolGetType_Dense`
- `SUNLinSolInitialize_Dense` – this does nothing, since all consistency checks are performed at solver creation.
- `SUNLinSolSetup_Dense` – this performs the LU factorization.
- `SUNLinSolSolve_Dense` – this uses the LU factors and `pivots` array to perform the solve.
- `SUNLinSolLastFlag_Dense`
- `SUNLinSolSpace_Dense` – this only returns information for the storage *within* the solver object, i.e. storage for `N`, `last_flag`, and `pivots`.
- `SUNLinSolFree_Dense`

The module SUNLINSOL_DENSE provides the following additional user-callable constructor routine:

- `SUNDenseLinearSolver`

  This function creates and allocates memory for a dense `SUNLinearSolver`. Its arguments are an NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX, that it uses to determine the linear system size and to assess compatibility with the linear solver implementation.

  This routine will perform consistency checks to ensure that it is called with consistent NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX implementations. These are currently limited to the SUNMATRIX_DENSE matrix type and the NVECTOR_SERIAL, NVECTOR_OPENMP, and NVECTOR_PTHREADS vector types. As additional compatible matrix and vector implementations are added to SUNDIALS, these will be included within this compatibility check.

  If either `A` or `y` are incompatible then this routine will return `NULL`.

  ```
  SUNLinearSolver SUNDenseLinearSolver(N_Vector y, SUNMatrix A);
  ```

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the SUNLINSOL_DENSE module also includes the Fortran-callable function `FSUNDenseLinSolInit(code, ier)` to initialize this SUNLINSOL_DENSE module for a given SUNDIALS solver. Here `code` is an integer input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); `ier` is an error return flag equal to 0 for success and -1 for failure. Both `code` and `ier` are declared to match C type `int`. This routine must be called *after* both the NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX objects have been initialized. Additionally, when using ARKODE with a non-identity mass matrix, the Fortran-callable function `FSUNMassDenseLinSolInit(ier)` initializes this SUNLINSOL_DENSE module for solving mass matrix linear systems.

8.4 The SUNLinearSolver_Band implementation

The band implementation of the SUNLINSOL module provided with SUNDIALS, SUNLINSOL_BAND, is designed to be used with the corresponding SUNMATRIX_BAND matrix type, and one of the serial or shared-memory NVECTOR implementations (NVECTOR_SERIAL, NVECTOR_OPENMP or NVECTOR_PTHREADS). The SUNLINSOL_BAND module defines the *content* field of a `SUNLinearSolver` to be the following structure:

```
struct _SUNLinearSolverContent_Band {
  sunindextype N;
  sunindextype *pivots;
  long int last_flag;
};
```

These entries of the *content* field contain the following information:

N - size of the linear system,

pivots - index array for partial pivoting in LU factorization,

last_flag - last error return flag from internal function evaluations.

This solver is constructed to perform the following operations:

- The "setup" call performs a LU factorization with partial (row) pivoting, $PA = LU$, where P is a permutation matrix, L is a lower triangular matrix with 1's on the diagonal, and U is an upper triangular matrix. This factorization is stored in-place on the input SUNMATRIX_BAND object A, with pivoting information encoding P stored in the `pivots` array.
- The "solve" call performs pivoting and forward and backward substitution using the stored `pivots` array and the LU factors held in the SUNMATRIX_BAND object.

- A must be allocated to accommodate the increase in upper bandwidth that occurs during factorization. More precisely, if A is a band matrix with upper bandwidth `mu` and lower bandwidth `ml`, then the upper triangular factor U can have upper bandwidth as big as `smu = MIN(N-1,mu+ml)`. The lower triangular factor L has lower bandwidth `ml`.

The header file to include when using this module is `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_band.h`. The SUNLINSOL_BAND module is accessible from all SUNDIALS solvers *without* linking to the `libsundials_sunlinsolband` module library.
The SUNLINSOL_BAND module defines band implementations of all "direct" linear solver operations listed in Table 8.2:

- `SUNLinSolGetType_Band`
- `SUNLinSolInitialize_Band` – this does nothing, since all consistency checks are performed at solver creation.
- `SUNLinSolSetup_Band` – this performs the LU factorization.

- SUNLinSolSolve_Band – this uses the *LU* factors and pivots array to perform the solve.
- SUNLinSolLastFlag_Band
- SUNLinSolSpace_Band – this only returns information for the storage *within* the solver object, i.e. storage for N, last_flag, and pivots.
- SUNLinSolFree_Band

The module SUNLINSOL_BAND provides the following additional user-callable constructor routine:

- SUNBandLinearSolver

  This function creates and allocates memory for a band SUNLinearSolver. Its arguments are an NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX, that it uses to determine the linear system size and to assess compatibility with the linear solver implementation.

  This routine will perform consistency checks to ensure that it is called with consistent NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX implementations. These are currently limited to the SUNMATRIX_BAND matrix type and the NVECTOR_SERIAL, NVECTOR_OPENMP, and NVECTOR_PTHREADS vector types. As additional compatible matrix and vector implementations are added to SUNDIALS, these will be included within this compatibility check.

  Additionally, this routine will verify that the input matrix A is allocated with appropriate upper bandwidth storage for the *LU* factorization.

  If either A or y are incompatible then this routine will return NULL.

  ```
  SUNLinearSolver SUNBandLinearSolver(N_Vector y, SUNMatrix A);
  ```

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the SUNLINSOL_BAND module also includes the Fortran-callable function FSUNBandLinSolInit(code, ier) to initialize this SUNLINSOL_BAND module for a given SUNDIALS solver. Here code is an integer input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); ier is an error return flag equal to 0 for success and -1 for failure. Both code and ier are declared to match C type int. This routine must be called *after* both the NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX objects have been initialized. Additionally, when using ARKODE with a non-identity mass matrix, the Fortran-callable function FSUNMassBandLinSolInit(ier) initializes this SUNLINSOL_BAND module for solving mass matrix linear systems.

8.5 The SUNLinearSolver_LapackDense implementation

The LAPACK dense implementation of the SUNLINSOL module provided with SUNDIALS, SUNLINSOL_LAPACKDENSE, is designed to be used with the corresponding SUNMATRIX_DENSE matrix type, and one of the serial or shared-memory NVECTOR implementations (NVECTOR_SERIAL, NVECTOR_OPENMP, or NVECTOR_PTHREADS). The SUNLINSOL_LAPACKDENSE module defines the *content* field of a SUNLinearSolver to be the following structure:

```
struct _SUNLinearSolverContent_Dense {
  sunindextype N;
  sunindextype *pivots;
  long int last_flag;
};
```

These entries of the *content* field contain the following information:

N - size of the linear system,

pivots - index array for partial pivoting in LU factorization,

last_flag - last error return flag from internal function evaluations.

The SUNLINSOL_LAPACKDENSE module is a SUNLINSOL wrapper for the LAPACK dense matrix factorization and solve routines, *GETRF and *GETRS, where * is either D or S, depending on whether SUNDIALS was configured to have realtype set to double or single, respectively (see Section 4.2). In order to use the SUNLINSOL_LAPACKDENSE module it is assumed that LAPACK has been installed on the system prior to installation of SUNDIALS, and that SUNDIALS has been configured appropriately to link with LAPACK (see Appendix A for details). We note that since there do not exist 128-bit floating-point factorization and solve routines in LAPACK, this interface cannot be compiled when using extended precision for realtype. Similarly, since there do not exist 64-bit integer LAPACK routines, the SUNLINSOL_LAPACKDENSE module also cannot be compiled when using int64_t for the sunindextype.

This solver is constructed to perform the following operations:

- The "setup" call performs a LU factorization with partial (row) pivoting ($\mathcal{O}(N^3)$ cost), $PA = LU$, where P is a permutation matrix, L is a lower triangular matrix with 1's on the diagonal, and U is an upper triangular matrix. This factorization is stored in-place on the input SUNMATRIX_DENSE object A, with pivoting information encoding P stored in the pivots array.
- The "solve" call performs pivoting and forward and backward substitution using the stored pivots array and the LU factors held in the SUNMATRIX_DENSE object ($\mathcal{O}(N^2)$ cost).

The header file to include when using this module is sunlinsol/sunlinsol_lapackdense.h. The installed module library to link to is libsundials_sunlinsollapackdense.*lib* where *.lib* is typically .so for shared libraries and .a for static libraries.

The SUNLINSOL_LAPACKDENSE module defines dense implementations of all "direct" linear solver operations listed in Table 8.2:

- SUNLinSolGetType_LapackDense
- SUNLinSolInitialize_LapackDense – this does nothing, since all consistency checks are performed at solver creation.
- SUNLinSolSetup_LapackDense – this calls either DGETRF or SGETRF to perform the LU factorization.
- SUNLinSolSolve_LapackDense – this calls either DGETRS or SGETRS to use the LU factors and pivots array to perform the solve.
- SUNLinSolLastFlag_LapackDense
- SUNLinSolSpace_LapackDense – this only returns information for the storage *within* the solver object, i.e. storage for N, last_flag, and pivots.
- SUNLinSolFree_LapackDense

The module SUNLINSOL_LAPACKDENSE provides the following additional user-callable constructor routine:

- SUNLapackDense

  This function creates and allocates memory for a LAPACK dense SUNLinearSolver. Its arguments are an NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX, that it uses to determine the linear system size and to assess compatibility with the linear solver implementation.

  This routine will perform consistency checks to ensure that it is called with consistent NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX implementations. These are currently limited to the SUNMATRIX_DENSE matrix type and the NVECTOR_SERIAL, NVECTOR_OPENMP, and NVECTOR_PTHREADS vector types. As additional compatible matrix and vector implementations are added to SUNDIALS, these will be included within this compatibility check.

  If either A or y are incompatible then this routine will return NULL.

  ```
  SUNLinearSolver SUNLapackDense(N_Vector y, SUNMatrix A);
  ```

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the SUNLINSOL_LAPACKDENSE module also includes the Fortran-callable function `FSUNLapackDenseInit(code, ier)` to initialize this SUNLINSOL_LAPACKDENSE module for a given SUNDIALS solver. Here `code` is an integer input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); `ier` is an error return flag equal to 0 for success and -1 for failure. Both `code` and `ier` are declared to match C type `int`. This routine must be called *after* both the NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX objects have been initialized. Additionally, when using ARKODE with a non-identity mass matrix, the Fortran-callable function `FSUNMassLapackDenseInit(ier)` initializes this SUNLINSOL_LAPACKDENSE module for solving mass matrix linear systems.

8.6 The SUNLinearSolver_LapackBand implementation

The LAPACK band implementation of the SUNLINSOL module provided with SUNDIALS, SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND, is designed to be used with the corresponding SUNMATRIX_BAND matrix type, and one of the serial or shared-memory NVECTOR implementations (NVECTOR_SERIAL, NVECTOR_OPENMP, or NVECTOR_PTHREADS). The SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND module defines the *content* field of a `SUNLinearSolver` to be the following structure:

```
struct _SUNLinearSolverContent_Band {
  sunindextype N;
  sunindextype *pivots;
  long int last_flag;
};
```

These entries of the *content* field contain the following information:

N - size of the linear system,

pivots - index array for partial pivoting in LU factorization,

last_flag - last error return flag from internal function evaluations.

The SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND module is a SUNLINSOL wrapper for the LAPACK band matrix factorization and solve routines, `*GBTRF` and `*GBTRS`, where `*` is either `D` or `S`, depending on whether SUNDIALS was configured to have `realtype` set to `double` or `single`, respectively (see Section 4.2). In order to use the SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND module it is assumed that LAPACK has been installed on the system prior to installation of SUNDIALS, and that SUNDIALS has been configured appropriately to link with LAPACK (see Appendix A for details). We note that since there do not exist 128-bit floating-point factorization and solve routines in LAPACK, this interface cannot be compiled when using `extended` precision for `realtype`. Similarly, since there do not exist 64-bit integer LAPACK routines, the SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND module also cannot be compiled when using `int64_t` for the `sunindextype`.

This solver is constructed to perform the following operations:

- The "setup" call performs a LU factorization with partial (row) pivoting, $PA = LU$, where P is a permutation matrix, L is a lower triangular matrix with 1's on the diagonal, and U is an upper triangular matrix. This factorization is stored in-place on the input SUNMATRIX_BAND object A, with pivoting information encoding P stored in the `pivots` array.

- The "solve" call performs pivoting and forward and backward substitution using the stored `pivots` array and the LU factors held in the SUNMATRIX_BAND object.

- A must be allocated to accommodate the increase in upper bandwidth that occurs during factorization. More precisely, if A is a band matrix with upper bandwidth `mu` and lower bandwidth `ml`, then the upper triangular factor U can have upper bandwidth as big as `smu = MIN(N-1,mu+ml)`. The lower triangular factor L has lower bandwidth `ml`.

The header file to include when using this module is `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_lapackband.h`. The installed module library to link to is `libsundials_sunlinsollapackband.`*lib* where `.`*lib* is typically `.so` for shared libraries and `.a` for static libraries.
The SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND module defines band implementations of all "direct" linear solver operations listed in Table 8.2:

- `SUNLinSolGetType_LapackBand`
- `SUNLinSolInitialize_LapackBand` – this does nothing, since all consistency checks are performed at solver creation.
- `SUNLinSolSetup_LapackBand` – this calls either `DGBTRF` or `SGBTRF` to perform the *LU* factorization.
- `SUNLinSolSolve_LapackBand` – this calls either `DGBTRS` or `SGBTRS` to use the *LU* factors and `pivots` array to perform the solve.
- `SUNLinSolLastFlag_LapackBand`
- `SUNLinSolSpace_LapackBand` – this only returns information for the storage *within* the solver object, i.e. storage for `N`, `last_flag`, and `pivots`.
- `SUNLinSolFree_LapackBand`

The module SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND provides the following additional user-callable routine:

- `SUNLapackBand`

  This function creates and allocates memory for a LAPACK band `SUNLinearSolver`. Its arguments are an NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX, that it uses to determine the linear system size and to assess compatibility with the linear solver implementation.

  This routine will perform consistency checks to ensure that it is called with consistent NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX implementations. These are currently limited to the SUNMATRIX_BAND matrix type and the NVECTOR_SERIAL, NVECTOR_OPENMP, and NVECTOR_PTHREADS vector types. As additional compatible matrix and vector implementations are added to SUNDIALS, these will be included within this compatibility check.

  Additionally, this routine will verify that the input matrix `A` is allocated with appropriate upper bandwidth storage for the *LU* factorization.

  If either `A` or `y` are incompatible then this routine will return `NULL`.

  ```
  SUNLinearSolver SUNLapackBand(N_Vector y, SUNMatrix A);
  ```

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND module also includes the Fortran-callable function `FSUNLapackBandInit(code, ier)` to initialize this SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND module for a given SUNDIALS solver. Here `code` is an integer input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); `ier` is an error return flag equal to 0 for success and -1 for failure. Both `code` and `ier` are declared to match C type `int`. This routine must be called *after* both the NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX objects have been initialized. Additionally, when using ARKODE with a non-identity mass matrix, the Fortran-callable function `FSUNMassLapackBandInit(ier)` initializes this SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND module for solving mass matrix linear systems.

8.7 The SUNLinearSolver_KLU implementation

The KLU implementation of the SUNLINSOL module provided with SUNDIALS, SUNLINSOL_KLU, is designed to be used with the corresponding SUNMATRIX_SPARSE matrix type, and one of the serial or shared-memory NVECTOR implementations (NVECTOR_SERIAL, NVECTOR_OPENMP, or NVECTOR_PTHREADS). The SUNLINSOL_KLU module defines the *content* field of a `SUNLinearSolver` to be the following structure:

```
struct _SUNLinearSolverContent_KLU {
  long int         last_flag;
  int              first_factorize;
  sun_klu_symbolic *symbolic;
  sun_klu_numeric  *numeric;
  sun_klu_common   common;
  sunindextype     (*klu_solver)(sun_klu_symbolic*, sun_klu_numeric*,
                                 sunindextype, sunindextype,
                                 double*, sun_klu_common*);
};
```

These entries of the *content* field contain the following information:

last_flag - last error return flag from internal function evaluations,

first_factorize - flag indicating whether the factorization has ever been performed,

Symbolic - KLU storage structure for symbolic factorization components,

Numeric - KLU storage structure for numeric factorization components,

Common - storage structure for common KLU solver components,

klu_solver – pointer to the appropriate KLU solver function (depending on whether it is using a CSR or CSC sparse matrix).

The SUNLINSOL_KLU module is a SUNLINSOL wrapper for the KLU sparse matrix factorization and solver library written by Tim Davis [1, 12]. In order to use the SUNLINSOL_KLU interface to KLU, it is assumed that KLU has been installed on the system prior to installation of SUNDIALS, and that SUNDIALS has been configured appropriately to link with KLU (see Appendix A for details). Additionally, this wrapper only supports double-precision calculations, and therefore cannot be compiled if SUNDIALS is configured to have `realtype` set to either `extended` or `single` (see Section 4.2). Since the KLU library supports both 32-bit and 64-bit integers, this interface will be compiled for either of the available `sunindextype` options.

The KLU library has a symbolic factorization routine that computes the permutation of the linear system matrix to block triangular form and the permutations that will pre-order the diagonal blocks (the only ones that need to be factored) to reduce fill-in (using AMD, COLAMD, CHOLAMD, natural, or an ordering given by the user). Of these ordering choices, the default value in the SUNLINSOL_KLU module is the COLAMD ordering.

KLU breaks the factorization into two separate parts. The first is a symbolic factorization and the second is a numeric factorization that returns the factored matrix along with final pivot information. KLU also has a refactor routine that can be called instead of the numeric factorization. This routine will reuse the pivot information. This routine also returns diagnostic information that a user can examine to determine if numerical stability is being lost and a full numerical factorization should be done instead of the refactor.

Since the linear systems that arise within the context of SUNDIALS calculations will typically have identical sparsity patterns, the SUNLINSOL_KLU module is constructed to perform the following operations:

- The first time that the "setup" routine is called, it performs the symbolic factorization, followed by an initial numerical factorization.
- On subsequent calls to the "setup" routine, it calls the appropriate KLU "refactor" routine, followed by estimates of the numerical conditioning using the relevant "rcond", and if necessary "condest", routine(s). If these estimates of the condition number are larger than $\varepsilon^{-2/3}$ (where ε is the double-precision unit roundoff), then a new factorization is performed.
- The module includes the routine `SUNKLUReInit`, that can be called by the user to force a full refactorization at the next "setup" call.

- The "solve" call performs pivoting and forward and backward substitution using the stored KLU data structures. We note that in this solve KLU operates on the native data arrays for the right-hand side and solution vectors, without requiring costly data copies.

The header file to include when using this module is `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_klu.h`. The installed module library to link to is `libsundials_sunlinsolklu.`*`lib`* where *`.lib`* is typically `.so` for shared libraries and `.a` for static libraries.
The SUNLINSOL_KLU module defines implementations of all "direct" linear solver operations listed in Table 8.2:

- `SUNLinSolGetType_KLU`
- `SUNLinSolInitialize_KLU` – this sets the `first_factorize` flag to 1, forcing both symbolic and numerical factorizations on the subsequent "setup" call.
- `SUNLinSolSetup_KLU` – this performs either a *LU* factorization or refactorization of the input matrix.
- `SUNLinSolSolve_KLU` – this calls the appropriate KLU solve routine to utilize the *LU* factors to solve the linear system.
- `SUNLinSolLastFlag_KLU`
- `SUNLinSolSpace_KLU` – this only returns information for the storage within the solver *interface*, i.e. storage for the integers `last_flag` and `first_factorize`. For additional space requirements, see the KLU documentation.
- `SUNLinSolFree_KLU`

The module SUNLINSOL_KLU provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- `SUNKLU`

  This constructor function creates and allocates memory for a SUNLINSOL_KLU object. Its arguments are an NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX, that it uses to determine the linear system size and to assess compatibility with the linear solver implementation.

  This routine will perform consistency checks to ensure that it is called with consistent NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX implementations. These are currently limited to the SUNMATRIX_SPARSE matrix type (using either CSR or CSC storage formats) and the NVECTOR_SERIAL, NVECTOR_OPENMP, and NVECTOR_PTHREADS vector types. As additional compatible matrix and vector implementations are added to SUNDIALS, these will be included within this compatibility check.

  If either `A` or `y` are incompatible then this routine will return `NULL`.

  ```
  SUNLinearSolver SUNKLU(N_Vector y, SUNMatrix A);
  ```

- `SUNKLUReInit`

  This function reinitializes memory and flags for a new factorization (symbolic and numeric) to be conducted at the next solver setup call. This routine is useful in the cases where the number of nonzeroes has changed or if the structure of the linear system has changed which would require a new symbolic (and numeric factorization).

  The `reinit_type` argument governs the level of reinitialization. The allowed values are:

  1 The Jacobian matrix will be destroyed and a new one will be allocated based on the `nnz` value passed to this call. New symbolic and numeric factorizations will be completed at the next solver setup.

  2 Only symbolic and numeric factorizations will be completed. It is assumed that the Jacobian size has not exceeded the size of `nnz` given in the sparse matrix provided to the original constructor routine (or the previous `SUNKLUReInit` call).

This routine assumes no other changes to solver use are necessary.

The return values from this function are SUNLS_MEM_NULL (either S or A are NULL), SUNLS_ILL_INPUT (A does not have type SUNMATRIX_SPARSE or reinit_type is invalid), SUNLS_MEM_FAIL (reallocation of the sparse matrix failed) or SUNLS_SUCCESS.

```
int SUNKLUReInit(SUNLinearSolver S, SUNMatrix A,
                 sunindextype nnz, int reinit_type);
```

- SUNKLUSetOrdering

  This function sets the ordering used by KLU for reducing fill in the linear solve. Options for ordering_choice are:

  0 AMD,

  1 COLAMD, and

  2 the natural ordering.

  The default is 1 for COLAMD.

  The return values from this function are SUNLS_MEM_NULL (S is NULL), SUNLS_ILL_INPUT (invalid ordering_choice), or SUNLS_SUCCESS.

  ```
  int SUNKLUSetOrdering(SUNLinearSolver S, int ordering_choice);
  ```

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the SUNLINSOL_KLU module also includes the Fortran-callable function FSUNKLUInit(code, ier) to initialize this SUNLINSOL_KLU module for a given SUNDIALS solver. Here code is an integer input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); ier is an error return flag equal to 0 for success and -1 for failure. Both code and ier are declared to match C type int. This routine must be called *after* both the NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX objects have been initialized. Additionally, when using ARKODE with a non-identity mass matrix, the Fortran-callable function FSUNMassKLUInit(ier) initializes this SUNLINSOL_KLU module for solving mass matrix linear systems.

The SUNKLUReInit and SUNKLUSetOrdering routines also support Fortran interfaces for the system and mass matrix solvers:

- FSUNKLUReInit(code, NNZ, reinit_type, ier) – NNZ should be commensurate with a C long int and reinit_type should be commensurate with a C int
- FSUNMassKLUReInit(NNZ, reinit_type, ier)
- FSUNKLUSetOrdering(code, ordering, ier) – ordering should be commensurate with a C int
- FSUNMassKLUSetOrdering(ordering, ier)

8.8 The SUNLinearSolver_SuperLUMT implementation

The SUPERLUMT implementation of the SUNLINSOL module provided with SUNDIALS, SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT, is designed to be used with the corresponding SUNMATRIX_SPARSE matrix type, and one of the serial or shared-memory NVECTOR implementations (NVECTOR_SERIAL, NVECTOR_OPENMP, or NVECTOR_PTHREADS). While these are compatible, it is not recommended to use a threaded vector module with SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT unless it is the NVECTOR_OPENMP module and the SUPERLUMT library has also been compiled with OpenMP. The SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT module defines the *content* field of a SUNLinearSolver to be the following structure:

```
struct _SUNLinearSolverContent_SuperLUMT {
  long int     last_flag;
  int          first_factorize;
  SuperMatrix  *A, *AC, *L, *U, *B;
  Gstat_t      *Gstat;
  sunindextype *perm_r, *perm_c;
  sunindextype N;
  int          num_threads;
  realtype     diag_pivot_thresh;
  int          ordering;
  superlumt_options_t *options;
};
```

These entries of the *content* field contain the following information:

last_flag - last error return flag from internal function evaluations,

first_factorize - flag indicating whether the factorization has ever been performed,

A, AC, L, U, B - `SuperMatrix` pointers used in solve,

Gstat - `GStat_t` object used in solve,

perm_r, perm_c - permutation arrays used in solve,

N - size of the linear system,

num_threads - number of OpenMP/Pthreads threads to use,

diag_pivot_thresh - threshold on diagonal pivoting,

ordering - flag for which reordering algorithm to use,

options - pointer to SUPERLUMT options structure.

The SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT module is a SUNLINSOL wrapper for the SUPERLUMT sparse matrix factorization and solver library written by X. Sherry Li [2, 22, 13]. The package performs matrix factorization using threads to enhance efficiency in shared memory parallel environments. It should be noted that threads are only used in the factorization step. In order to use the SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT interface to SUPERLUMT, it is assumed that SUPERLUMT has been installed on the system prior to installation of SUNDIALS, and that SUNDIALS has been configured appropriately to link with SUPERLUMT (see Appendix A for details). Additionally, this wrapper only supports single- and double-precision calculations, and therefore cannot be compiled if SUNDIALS is configured to have `realtype` set to `extended` (see Section 4.2). Moreover, since the SUPERLUMT library may be installed to support either 32-bit or 64-bit integers, it is assumed that the SUPERLUMT library is installed using the same integer precision as the SUNDIALS `sunindextype` option.

The SUPERLUMT library has a symbolic factorization routine that computes the permutation of the linear system matrix to reduce fill-in on subsequent LU factorizations (using COLAMD, minimal degree ordering on $A^T * A$, minimal degree ordering on $A^T + A$, or natural ordering). Of these ordering choices, the default value in the SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT module is the COLAMD ordering.

Since the linear systems that arise within the context of SUNDIALS calculations will typically have identical sparsity patterns, the SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT module is constructed to perform the following operations:

- The first time that the "setup" routine is called, it performs the symbolic factorization, followed by an initial numerical factorization.
- On subsequent calls to the "setup" routine, it skips the symbolic factorization, and only refactors the input matrix.

- The "solve" call performs pivoting and forward and backward substitution using the stored SUPERLUMT data structures. We note that in this solve SUPERLUMT operates on the native data arrays for the right-hand side and solution vectors, without requiring costly data copies.

The header file to include when using this module is `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_superlumt.h`. The installed module library to link to is `libsundials_sunlinsolsuperlumt.`*`lib`* where *`.lib`* is typically `.so` for shared libraries and `.a` for static libraries.
The SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT module defines implementations of all "direct" linear solver operations listed in Table 8.2:

- `SUNLinSolGetType_SuperLUMT`
- `SUNLinSolInitialize_SuperLUMT` – this sets the `first_factorize` flag to 1 and resets the internal SUPERLUMT statistics variables.
- `SUNLinSolSetup_SuperLUMT` – this performs either a *LU* factorization or refactorization of the input matrix.
- `SUNLinSolSolve_SuperLUMT` – this calls the appropriate SUPERLUMT solve routine to utilize the *LU* factors to solve the linear system.
- `SUNLinSolLastFlag_SuperLUMT`
- `SUNLinSolSpace_SuperLUMT` – this only returns information for the storage within the solver *interface*, i.e. storage for the integers `last_flag` and `first_factorize`. For additional space requirements, see the SUPERLUMT documentation.
- `SUNLinSolFree_SuperLUMT`

The module SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- `SUNSuperLUMT`

  This constructor function creates and allocates memory for a SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT object. Its arguments are an NVECTOR, a SUNMATRIX, and a desired number of threads (OpenMP or Pthreads, depending on how SUPERLUMT was installed) to use during the factorization steps. This routine analyzes the input matrix and vector to determine the linear system size and to assess compatibility with the SUPERLUMT library.

  This routine will perform consistency checks to ensure that it is called with consistent NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX implementations. These are currently limited to the SUNMATRIX_SPARSE matrix type (using either CSR or CSC storage formats) and the NVECTOR_SERIAL, NVECTOR_OPENMP, and NVECTOR_PTHREADS vector types. As additional compatible matrix and vector implementations are added to SUNDIALS, these will be included within this compatibility check.

  If either `A` or `y` are incompatible then this routine will return `NULL`. The `num_threads` argument is not checked and is passed directly to SUPERLUMT routines.

  ```
  SUNLinearSolver SUNSuperLUMT(N_Vector y, SUNMatrix A, int num_threads);
  ```

- `SUNSuperLUMTSetOrdering`

  This function sets the ordering used by SUPERLUMT for reducing fill in the linear solve. Options for `ordering_choice` are:

  0 natural ordering

  1 minimal degree ordering on $A^T A$

  2 minimal degree ordering on $A^T + A$

  3 COLAMD ordering for unsymmetric matrices

The default is 3 for COLAMD.

The return values from this function are `SUNLS_MEM_NULL` (`S` is `NULL`), `SUNLS_ILL_INPUT` (invalid `ordering_choice`), or `SUNLS_SUCCESS`.

```
int SUNSuperLUMTSetOrdering(SUNLinearSolver S, int ordering_choice);
```

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT module also includes the Fortran-callable function `FSUNSuperLUMTInit(code, num_threads, ier)` to initialize this SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT module for a given SUNDIALS solver. Here `code` is an integer input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); `num_threads` is the desired number of OpenMP/Pthreads threads to use in the factorization; `ier` is an error return flag equal to 0 for success and -1 for failure. All of these arguments should be declared so as to match C type `int`. This routine must be called *after* both the NVECTOR and SUNMATRIX objects have been initialized. Additionally, when using ARKODE with a non-identity mass matrix, the Fortran-callable function `FSUNMassSuperLUMTInit(num_threads, ier)` initializes this SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT module for solving mass matrix linear systems.

The `SUNSuperLUMTSetOrdering` routine also supports Fortran interfaces for the system and mass matrix solvers:

- `FSUNSuperLUMTSetOrdering(code, ordering, ier)` – `ordering` should be commensurate with a C `int`
- `FSUNMassSuperLUMTSetOrdering(ordering, ier)`

8.9 The SUNLinearSolver_SPGMR implementation

The SPGMR (Scaled, Preconditioned, Generalized Minimum Residual [25]) implementation of the SUNLINSOL module provided with SUNDIALS, SUNLINSOL_SPGMR, is an iterative linear solver that is designed to be compatible with any NVECTOR implementation (serial, threaded, parallel, and user-supplied) that supports a minimal subset of operations (`N_VClone`, `N_VDotProd`, `N_VScale`, `N_VLinearSum`, `N_VProd`, `N_VConst`, `N_VDiv`, and `N_VDestroy`).

The SUNLINSOL_SPGMR module defines the *content* field of a `SUNLinearSolver` to be the following structure:

```
struct _SUNLinearSolverContent_SPGMR {
  int maxl;
  int pretype;
  int gstype;
  int max_restarts;
  int numiters;
  realtype resnorm;
  long int last_flag;
  ATimesFn ATimes;
  void* ATData;
  PSetupFn Psetup;
  PSolveFn Psolve;
  void* PData;
  N_Vector s1;
  N_Vector s2;
  N_Vector *V;
  realtype **Hes;
  realtype *givens;
  N_Vector xcor;
  realtype *yg;
  N_Vector vtemp;
};
```

These entries of the *content* field contain the following information:

maxl - number of GMRES basis vectors to use (default is 5),

pretype - flag for type of preconditioning to employ (default is none),

gstype - flag for type of Gram-Schmidt orthogonalization (default is modified Gram-Schmidt),

max_restarts - number of GMRES restarts to allow (default is 0),

numiters - number of iterations from the most-recent solve,

resnorm - final linear residual norm from the most-recent solve,

last_flag - last error return flag from an internal function,

ATimes - function pointer to perform Av product,

ATData - pointer to structure for `ATimes`,

Psetup - function pointer to preconditioner setup routine,

Psolve - function pointer to preconditioner solve routine,

PData - pointer to structure for `Psetup` and `Psolve`,

s1, s2 - vector pointers for supplied scaling matrices (default is `NULL`),

V - the array of Krylov basis vectors $v_1, \ldots, v_{\texttt{maxl}+1}$, stored in `V[0]`, ..., `V[maxl]`. Each v_i is a vector of type NVECTOR.,

Hes - the $(\texttt{maxl}+1) \times \texttt{maxl}$ Hessenberg matrix. It is stored row-wise so that the (i,j)th element is given by `Hes[i][j]`.,

givens - a length `2*maxl` array which represents the Givens rotation matrices that arise in the GMRES algorithm. These matrices are $F_0, F_1, \ldots, F_j$, where $F_i = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & & & & & & & \\ & \ddots & & & & & & \\ & & 1 & & & & & \\ & & & c_i & -s_i & & & \\ & & & s_i & c_i & & & \\ & & & & & 1 & & \\ & & & & & & \ddots & \\ & & & & & & & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, are represented in the `givens` vector as `givens[0]` $= c_0$, `givens[1]` $= s_0$, `givens[2]` $= c_1$, `givens[3]` $= s_1$, ... `givens[2j]` $= c_j$, `givens[2j+1]` $= s_j$.,

xcor - a vector which holds the scaled, preconditioned correction to the initial guess,

yg - a length `(maxl+1)` array of `realtype` values used to hold "short" vectors (e.g. y and g),

vtemp - temporary vector storage.

This solver is constructed to perform the following operations:

- During construction, the `xcor` and `vtemp` arrays are cloned from a template NVECTOR that is input, and default solver parameters are set.
- User-facing "set" routines may be called to modify default solver parameters.
- Additional "set" routines are called by the SUNDIALS solver that interfaces with SUNLINSOL_SPGMR to supply the `ATimes`, `PSetup`, and `Psolve` function pointers and `s1` and `s2` scaling vectors.

- In the "initialize" call, the remaining solver data is allocated (`V`, `Hes`, `givens`, and `yg`)
- In the "setup" call, any non-`NULL` `PSetup` function is called. Typically, this is provided by the SUNDIALS solver itself, that translates between the generic `PSetup` function and the solver-specific routine (solver-supplied or user-supplied).
- In the "solve" call, the GMRES iteration is performed. This will include scaling, preconditioning, and restarts if those options have been supplied.

The header file to include when using this module is `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_spgmr.h`. The SUNLINSOL_SPGMR module is accessible from all SUNDIALS solvers *without* linking to the `libsundials_sunlinsolspgmr` module library.

The SUNLINSOL_SPGMR module defines implementations of all "iterative" linear solver operations listed in Table 8.2:

- `SUNLinSolGetType_SPGMR`
- `SUNLinSolInitialize_SPGMR`
- `SUNLinSolSetATimes_SPGMR`
- `SUNLinSolSetPreconditioner_SPGMR`
- `SUNLinSolSetScalingVectors_SPGMR`
- `SUNLinSolSetup_SPGMR`
- `SUNLinSolSolve_SPGMR`
- `SUNLinSolNumIters_SPGMR`
- `SUNLinSolResNorm_SPGMR`
- `SUNLinSolResid_SPGMR`
- `SUNLinSolLastFlag_SPGMR`
- `SUNLinSolSpace_SPGMR`
- `SUNLinSolFree_SPGMR`

The module SUNLINSOL_SPGMR provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- `SUNSPGMR`

  This constructor function creates and allocates memory for a SPGMR `SUNLinearSolver`. Its arguments are an NVECTOR, the desired type of preconditioning, and the number of Krylov basis vectors to use.

  This routine will perform consistency checks to ensure that it is called with a consistent NVECTOR implementation (i.e. that it supplies the requisite vector operations). If `y` is incompatible, then this routine will return `NULL`.

  A `maxl` argument that is ≤ 0 will result in the default value (5).

  Allowable inputs for `pretype` are `PREC_NONE` (0), `PREC_LEFT` (1), `PREC_RIGHT` (2) and `PREC_BOTH` (3); any other integer input will result in the default (no preconditioning). We note that some SUNDIALS solvers are designed to only work with left preconditioning (IDA and IDAS) and others with only right preconditioning (KINSOL). While it is possible to configure a SUNLINSOL_SPGMR object to use any of the preconditioning options with these solvers, this use mode is not supported and may result in inferior performance.

  ```
  SUNLinearSolver SUNSPGMR(N_Vector y, int pretype, int maxl);
  ```

- SUNSPGMRSetPrecType

  This function updates the type of preconditioning to use. Supported values are PREC_NONE (0), PREC_LEFT (1), PREC_RIGHT (2) and PREC_BOTH (3).

  This routine will return with one of the error codes SUNLS_ILL_INPUT (illegal pretype), SUNLS_MEM_NULL (S is NULL) or SUNLS_SUCCESS.

  ```
  int SUNSPGMRSetPrecType(SUNLinearSolver S, int pretype);
  ```

- SUNSPGMRSetGSType

  This function sets the type of Gram-Schmidt orthogonalization to use. Supported values are MODIFIED_GS (1) and CLASSICAL_GS (2). Any other integer input will result in a failure, returning error code SUNLS_ILL_INPUT.

  This routine will return with one of the error codes SUNLS_ILL_INPUT (illegal gstype), SUNLS_MEM_NULL (S is NULL) or SUNLS_SUCCESS.

  ```
  int SUNSPGMRSetGSType(SUNLinearSolver S, int gstype);
  ```

- SUNSPGMRSetMaxRestarts

  This function sets the number of GMRES restarts to allow. A negative input will result in the default of 0.

  This routine will return with one of the error codes SUNLS_MEM_NULL (S is NULL) or SUNLS_SUCCESS.

  ```
  int SUNSPGMRSetMaxRestarts(SUNLinearSolver S, int maxrs);
  ```

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the SUNLINSOL_SPGMR module also includes the Fortran-callable function FSUNSPGMRInit(code, pretype, maxl, ier) to initialize this SUNLINSOL_SPGMR module for a given SUNDIALS solver. Here code is an integer input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); pretype and maxl are the same as for the C function SUNSPGMR; ier is an error return flag equal to 0 for success and -1 for failure. All of these input arguments should be declared so as to match C type int. This routine must be called *after* the NVECTOR object has been initialized. Additionally, when using ARKODE with a non-identity mass matrix, the Fortran-callable function FSUNMassSPGMRInit(pretype, maxl, ier) initializes this SUNLINSOL_SPGMR module for solving mass matrix linear systems.

The SUNSPGMRSetPrecType, SUNSPGMRSetGSType and SUNSPGMRSetMaxRestarts routines also support Fortran interfaces for the system and mass matrix solvers (all arguments should be commensurate with a C int):

- FSUNSPGMRSetGSType(code, gstype, ier)
- FSUNMassSPGMRSetGSType(gstype, ier)
- FSUNSPGMRSetPrecType(code, pretype, ier)
- FSUNMassSPGMRSetPrecType(pretype, ier)
- FSUNSPGMRSetMaxRS(code, maxrs, ier)
- FSUNMassSPGMRSetMaxRS(maxrs, ier)

8.10 The SUNLinearSolver_SPFGMR implementation

The SPFGMR (Scaled, Preconditioned, Flexible, Generalized Minimum Residual [24]) implementation of the SUNLINSOL module provided with SUNDIALS, SUNLINSOL_SPFGMR, is an iterative linear solver that is designed to be compatible with any NVECTOR implementation (serial, threaded, parallel, and user-supplied) that supports a minimal subset of operations (N_VClone, N_VDotProd, N_VScale, N_VLinearSum, N_VProd, N_VConst, N_VDiv, and N_VDestroy). Unlike the other Krylov iterative linear

solvers supplied with SUNDIALS, FGMRES is specifically designed to work with a changing preconditioner (e.g. from an iterative method).

The SUNLINSOL_SPFGMR module defines the *content* field of a `SUNLinearSolver` to be the following structure:

```
struct _SUNLinearSolverContent_SPFGMR {
  int maxl;
  int pretype;
  int gstype;
  int max_restarts;
  int numiters;
  realtype resnorm;
  long int last_flag;
  ATimesFn ATimes;
  void* ATData;
  PSetupFn Psetup;
  PSolveFn Psolve;
  void* PData;
  N_Vector s1;
  N_Vector s2;
  N_Vector *V;
  N_Vector *Z;
  realtype **Hes;
  realtype *givens;
  N_Vector xcor;
  realtype *yg;
  N_Vector vtemp;
};
```

These entries of the *content* field contain the following information:

maxl - number of FGMRES basis vectors to use (default is 5),

pretype - flag for use of preconditioning (default is none),

gstype - flag for type of Gram-Schmidt orthogonalization (default is modified Gram-Schmidt),

max_restarts - number of FGMRES restarts to allow (default is 0),

numiters - number of iterations from the most-recent solve,

resnorm - final linear residual norm from the most-recent solve,

last_flag - last error return flag from an internal function,

ATimes - function pointer to perform Av product,

ATData - pointer to structure for `ATimes`,

Psetup - function pointer to preconditioner setup routine,

Psolve - function pointer to preconditioner solve routine,

PData - pointer to structure for `Psetup` and `Psolve`,

s1, s2 - vector pointers for supplied scaling matrices (default is `NULL`),

V - the array of Krylov basis vectors $v_1, \ldots, v_{\texttt{maxl}+1}$, stored in `V[0]`, ..., `V[maxl]`. Each v_i is a vector of type NVECTOR.,

Z - the array of preconditioned Krylov basis vectors $z_1, \ldots, z_{\texttt{maxl}+1}$, stored in `Z[0]`, ..., `Z[maxl]`. Each z_i is a vector of type NVECTOR.,

Hes - the $(\texttt{maxl}+1) \times \texttt{maxl}$ Hessenberg matrix. It is stored row-wise so that the (i,j)th element is given by `Hes[i][j]`.,

givens - a length `2*maxl` array which represents the Givens rotation matrices that arise in the FGMRES algorithm. These matrices are $F_0, F_1, \ldots, F_j$, where $F_i = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & & & & & & & \\ & \ddots & & & & & & \\ & & 1 & & & & & \\ & & & c_i & -s_i & & & \\ & & & s_i & c_i & & & \\ & & & & & 1 & & \\ & & & & & & \ddots & \\ & & & & & & & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, are represented in the `givens` vector as `givens[0]` $= c_0$, `givens[1]` $= s_0$, `givens[2]` $= c_1$, `givens[3]` $= s_1$, ... `givens[2j]` $= c_j$, `givens[2j+1]` $= s_j$.,

xcor - a vector which holds the scaled, preconditioned correction to the initial guess,

yg - a length `(maxl+1)` array of `realtype` values used to hold "short" vectors (e.g. y and g),

vtemp - temporary vector storage.

This solver is constructed to perform the following operations:

- During construction, the `xcor` and `vtemp` arrays are cloned from a template NVECTOR that is input, and default solver parameters are set.
- User-facing "set" routines may be called to modify default solver parameters.
- Additional "set" routines are called by the SUNDIALS solver that interfaces with SUNLINSOL_SPFGMR to supply the `ATimes`, `PSetup`, and `Psolve` function pointers and `s1` and `s2` scaling vectors.
- In the "initialize" call, the remaining solver data is allocated (`V`, `Hes`, `givens`, and `yg`)
- In the "setup" call, any non-`NULL` `PSetup` function is called. Typically, this is provided by the SUNDIALS solver itself, that translates between the generic `PSetup` function and the solver-specific routine (solver-supplied or user-supplied).
- In the "solve" call, the FGMRES iteration is performed. This will include scaling, preconditioning, and restarts if those options have been supplied.

The header file to include when using this module is `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_spfgmr.h`. The SUNLINSOL_SPFGMR module is accessible from all SUNDIALS solvers *without* linking to the `libsundials_sunlinsolspfgmr` module library.

The SUNLINSOL_SPFGMR module defines implementations of all "iterative" linear solver operations listed in Table 8.2:

- `SUNLinSolGetType_SPFGMR`
- `SUNLinSolInitialize_SPFGMR`
- `SUNLinSolSetATimes_SPFGMR`
- `SUNLinSolSetPreconditioner_SPFGMR`
- `SUNLinSolSetScalingVectors_SPFGMR`
- `SUNLinSolSetup_SPFGMR`

- SUNLinSolSolve_SPFGMR
- SUNLinSolNumIters_SPFGMR
- SUNLinSolResNorm_SPFGMR
- SUNLinSolResid_SPFGMR
- SUNLinSolLastFlag_SPFGMR
- SUNLinSolSpace_SPFGMR
- SUNLinSolFree_SPFGMR

The module SUNLINSOL_SPFGMR provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- SUNSPFGMR

  This constructor function creates and allocates memory for a SPFGMR SUNLinearSolver. Its arguments are an NVECTOR, a flag indicating to use preconditioning, and the number of Krylov basis vectors to use.

  This routine will perform consistency checks to ensure that it is called with a consistent NVECTOR implementation (i.e. that it supplies the requisite vector operations). If y is incompatible, then this routine will return NULL.

  A maxl argument that is ≤ 0 will result in the default value (5).

  Since the FGMRES algorithm is designed to only support right preconditioning, then any of the pretype inputs PREC_LEFT (1), PREC_RIGHT (2), or PREC_BOTH (3) will result in use of PREC_RIGHT; any other integer input will result in the default (no preconditioning). We note that some SUNDIALS solvers are designed to only work with left preconditioning (IDA and IDAS). While it is possible to use a right-preconditioned SUNLINSOL_SPFGMR object for these packages, this use mode is not supported and may result in inferior performance.

  ```
  SUNLinearSolver SUNSPFGMR(N_Vector y, int pretype, int maxl);
  ```

- SUNSPFGMRSetPrecType

  This function updates the flag indicating use of preconditioning. Since the FGMRES algorithm is designed to only support right preconditioning, then any of the pretype inputs PREC_LEFT (1), PREC_RIGHT (2), or PREC_BOTH (3) will result in use of PREC_RIGHT; any other integer input will result in the default (no preconditioning).

  This routine will return with one of the error codes SUNLS_MEM_NULL (S is NULL) or SUNLS_SUCCESS.

  ```
  int SUNSPFGMRSetPrecType(SUNLinearSolver S, int pretype);
  ```

- SUNSPFGMRSetGSType

  This function sets the type of Gram-Schmidt orthogonalization to use. Supported values are MODIFIED_GS (1) and CLASSICAL_GS (2). Any other integer input will result in a failure, returning error code SUNLS_ILL_INPUT.

  This routine will return with one of the error codes SUNLS_ILL_INPUT (illegal gstype), SUNLS_MEM_NULL (S is NULL), or SUNLS_SUCCESS.

  ```
  int SUNSPFGMRSetGSType(SUNLinearSolver S, int gstype);
  ```

- SUNSPFGMRSetMaxRestarts

  This function sets the number of FGMRES restarts to allow. A negative input will result in the default of 0.

  This routine will return with one of the error codes SUNLS_MEM_NULL (S is NULL) or SUNLS_SUCCESS.

  ```
  int SUNSPFGMRSetMaxRestarts(SUNLinearSolver S, int maxrs);
  ```

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the SUNLINSOL_SPFGMR module also includes the Fortran-callable function `FSUNSPFGMRInit(code, pretype, maxl, ier)` to initialize this SUNLINSOL_SPFGMR module for a given SUNDIALS solver. Here `code` is an integer input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); `pretype` and `maxl` are the same as for the C function `SUNSPFGMR`; `ier` is an error return flag equal to 0 for success and -1 for failure. All of these input arguments should be declared so as to match C type `int`. This routine must be called *after* the NVECTOR object has been initialized. Additionally, when using ARKODE with a non-identity mass matrix, the Fortran-callable function `FSUNMassSPFGMRInit(pretype, maxl, ier)` initializes this SUNLINSOL_SPFGMR module for solving mass matrix linear systems.

The `SUNSPFGMRSetPrecType`, `SUNSPFGMRSetGSType`, and `SUNSPFGMRSetMaxRestarts` routines also support Fortran interfaces for the system and mass matrix solvers (all arguments should be commensurate with a C `int`):

- `FSUNSPFGMRSetGSType(code, gstype, ier)`
- `FSUNMassSPFGMRSetGSType(gstype, ier)`
- `FSUNSPFGMRSetPrecType(code, pretype, ier)`
- `FSUNMassSPFGMRSetPrecType(pretype, ier)`
- `FSUNSPFGMRSetMaxRS(code, maxrs, ier)`
- `FSUNMassSPFGMRSetMaxRS(maxrs, ier)`

8.11 The SUNLinearSolver_SPBCGS implementation

The SPBCGS (Scaled, Preconditioned, Bi-Conjugate Gradient, Stabilized [26]) implementation of the SUNLINSOL module provided with SUNDIALS, SUNLINSOL_SPBCGS, is an iterative linear solver that is designed to be compatible with any NVECTOR implementation (serial, threaded, parallel, and user-supplied) that supports a minimal subset of operations (`N_VClone`, `N_VDotProd`, `N_VScale`, `N_VLinearSum`, `N_VProd`, `N_VDiv`, and `N_VDestroy`). Unlike the SPGMR and SPFGMR algorithms, SPBCGS requires a fixed amount of memory that does not increase with the number of allowed iterations.

The SUNLINSOL_SPBCGS module defines the *content* field of a `SUNLinearSolver` to be the following structure:

```
struct _SUNLinearSolverContent_SPBCGS {
  int maxl;
  int pretype;
  int numiters;
  realtype resnorm;
  long int last_flag;
  ATimesFn ATimes;
  void* ATData;
  PSetupFn Psetup;
  PSolveFn Psolve;
  void* PData;
  N_Vector s1;
  N_Vector s2;
  N_Vector r;
  N_Vector r_star;
  N_Vector p;
  N_Vector q;
  N_Vector u;
  N_Vector Ap;
  N_Vector vtemp;
};
```

These entries of the *content* field contain the following information:

maxl - number of SPBCGS iterations to allow (default is 5),

pretype - flag for type of preconditioning to employ (default is none),

numiters - number of iterations from the most-recent solve,

resnorm - final linear residual norm from the most-recent solve,

last_flag - last error return flag from an internal function,

ATimes - function pointer to perform Av product,

ATData - pointer to structure for `ATimes`,

Psetup - function pointer to preconditioner setup routine,

Psolve - function pointer to preconditioner solve routine,

PData - pointer to structure for `Psetup` and `Psolve`,

s1, s2 - vector pointers for supplied scaling matrices (default is `NULL`),

r - a NVECTOR which holds the current scaled, preconditioned linear system residual,

r_star - a NVECTOR which holds the initial scaled, preconditioned linear system residual,

p, q, u, Ap, vtemp - NVECTORs used for workspace by the SPBCGS algorithm.

This solver is constructed to perform the following operations:

- During construction all NVECTOR solver data is allocated, with vectors cloned from a template NVECTOR that is input, and default solver parameters are set.
- User-facing "set" routines may be called to modify default solver parameters.
- Additional "set" routines are called by the SUNDIALS solver that interfaces with SUNLINSOL_SPBCGS to supply the `ATimes`, `PSetup`, and `Psolve` function pointers and `s1` and `s2` scaling vectors.
- In the "initialize" call, the solver parameters are checked for validity.
- In the "setup" call, any non-`NULL` `PSetup` function is called. Typically, this is provided by the SUNDIALS solver itself, that translates between the generic `PSetup` function and the solver-specific routine (solver-supplied or user-supplied).
- In the "solve" call the SPBCGS iteration is performed. This will include scaling and preconditioning if those options have been supplied.

The header file to include when using this module is `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_spbcgs.h`. The SUNLINSOL_SPBCGS module is accessible from all SUNDIALS solvers *without* linking to the `libsundials_sunlinsolspbcgs` module library.

The SUNLINSOL_SPBCGS module defines implementations of all "iterative" linear solver operations listed in Table 8.2:

- `SUNLinSolGetType_SPBCGS`
- `SUNLinSolInitialize_SPBCGS`
- `SUNLinSolSetATimes_SPBCGS`
- `SUNLinSolSetPreconditioner_SPBCGS`
- `SUNLinSolSetScalingVectors_SPBCGS`

- SUNLinSolSetup_SPBCGS
- SUNLinSolSolve_SPBCGS
- SUNLinSolNumIters_SPBCGS
- SUNLinSolResNorm_SPBCGS
- SUNLinSolResid_SPBCGS
- SUNLinSolLastFlag_SPBCGS
- SUNLinSolSpace_SPBCGS
- SUNLinSolFree_SPBCGS

The module SUNLINSOL_SPBCGS provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- SUNSPBCGS

  This constructor function creates and allocates memory for a SPBCGS SUNLinearSolver. Its arguments are an NVECTOR, the desired type of preconditioning, and the number of linear iterations to allow.

  This routine will perform consistency checks to ensure that it is called with a consistent NVECTOR implementation (i.e. that it supplies the requisite vector operations). If y is incompatible, then this routine will return NULL.

  A maxl argument that is ≤ 0 will result in the default value (5).

  Allowable inputs for pretype are PREC_NONE (0), PREC_LEFT (1), PREC_RIGHT (2) and PREC_BOTH (3); any other integer input will result in the default (no preconditioning). We note that some SUNDIALS solvers are designed to only work with left preconditioning (IDA and IDAS) and others with only right preconditioning (KINSOL). While it is possible to configure a SUNLINSOL_SPBCGS object to use any of the preconditioning options with these solvers, this use mode is not supported and may result in inferior performance.

  ```
  SUNLinearSolver SUNSPBCGS(N_Vector y, int pretype, int maxl);
  ```

- SUNSPBCGSSetPrecType

  This function updates the type of preconditioning to use. Supported values are PREC_NONE (0), PREC_LEFT (1), PREC_RIGHT (2), and PREC_BOTH (3).

  This routine will return with one of the error codes SUNLS_ILL_INPUT (illegal pretype), SUNLS_MEM_NULL (S is NULL), or SUNLS_SUCCESS.

  ```
  int SUNSPBCGSSetPrecType(SUNLinearSolver S, int pretype);
  ```

- SUNSPBCGSSetMaxl

  This function updates the number of linear solver iterations to allow.

  A maxl argument that is ≤ 0 will result in the default value (5).

  This routine will return with one of the error codes SUNLS_MEM_NULL (S is NULL) or SUNLS_SUCCESS.

  ```
  int SUNSPBCGSSetMaxl(SUNLinearSolver S, int maxl);
  ```

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the SUNLINSOL_SPBCGS module also includes the Fortran-callable function FSUNSPBCGSInit(code, pretype, maxl, ier) to initialize this SUNLINSOL_SPBCGS module for a given SUNDIALS solver. Here code is an integer input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); pretype and maxl are the same as for the C function SUNSPBCGS; ier is an error return flag equal to 0 for success and -1 for failure. All of these input arguments should be declared so as to match C type int. This routine must be called *after* the NVECTOR object has been initialized. Additionally, when using ARKODE with a non-identity

mass matrix, the Fortran-callable function `FSUNMassSPBCGSInit(pretype, maxl, ier)` initializes this SUNLINSOL_SPBCGS module for solving mass matrix linear systems.

The `SUNSPBCGSSetPrecType` and `SUNSPBCGSSetMaxl` routines also support Fortran interfaces for the system and mass matrix solvers (all arguments should be commensurate with a C `int`):

- `FSUNSPBCGSSetPrecType(code, pretype, ier)`
- `FSUNMassSPBCGSSetPrecType(pretype, ier)`
- `FSUNSPBCGSSetMaxl(code, maxl, ier)`
- `FSUNMassSPBCGSSetMaxl(maxl, ier)`

8.12 The SUNLinearSolver_SPTFQMR implementation

The SPTFQMR (Scaled, Preconditioned, Transpose-Free Quasi-Minimum Residual [14]) implementation of the SUNLINSOL module provided with SUNDIALS, SUNLINSOL_SPTFQMR, is an iterative linear solver that is designed to be compatible with any NVECTOR implementation (serial, threaded, parallel, and user-supplied) that supports a minimal subset of operations (`N_VClone`, `N_VDotProd`, `N_VScale`, `N_VLinearSum`, `N_VProd`, `N_VConst`, `N_VDiv`, and `N_VDestroy`). Unlike the SPGMR and SPFGMR algorithms, SPTFQMR requires a fixed amount of memory that does not increase with the number of allowed iterations.

The SUNLINSOL_SPTFQMR module defines the *content* field of a `SUNLinearSolver` to be the following structure:

```
struct _SUNLinearSolverContent_SPTFQMR {
  int maxl;
  int pretype;
  int numiters;
  realtype resnorm;
  long int last_flag;
  ATimesFn ATimes;
  void* ATData;
  PSetupFn Psetup;
  PSolveFn Psolve;
  void* PData;
  N_Vector s1;
  N_Vector s2;
  N_Vector r_star;
  N_Vector q;
  N_Vector d;
  N_Vector v;
  N_Vector p;
  N_Vector *r;
  N_Vector u;
  N_Vector vtemp1;
  N_Vector vtemp2;
  N_Vector vtemp3;
};
```

These entries of the *content* field contain the following information:

maxl - number of TFQMR iterations to allow (default is 5),

pretype - flag for type of preconditioning to employ (default is none),

numiters - number of iterations from the most-recent solve,

resnorm - final linear residual norm from the most-recent solve,

last_flag - last error return flag from an internal function,

ATimes - function pointer to perform Av product,

ATData - pointer to structure for `ATimes`,

Psetup - function pointer to preconditioner setup routine,

Psolve - function pointer to preconditioner solve routine,

PData - pointer to structure for `Psetup` and `Psolve`,

s1, s2 - vector pointers for supplied scaling matrices (default is `NULL`),

r_star - a NVECTOR which holds the initial scaled, preconditioned linear system residual,

q, d, v, p, u - NVECTORs used for workspace by the SPTFQMR algorithm,

r - array of two NVECTORs used for workspace within the SPTFQMR algorithm,

vtemp1, vtemp2, vtemp3 - temporary vector storage.

This solver is constructed to perform the following operations:

- During construction all NVECTOR solver data is allocated, with vectors cloned from a template NVECTOR that is input, and default solver parameters are set.
- User-facing "set" routines may be called to modify default solver parameters.
- Additional "set" routines are called by the SUNDIALS solver that interfaces with SUNLINSOL_SPTFQMR to supply the `ATimes`, `PSetup`, and `Psolve` function pointers and `s1` and `s2` scaling vectors.
- In the "initialize" call, the solver parameters are checked for validity.
- In the "setup" call, any non-`NULL` `PSetup` function is called. Typically, this is provided by the SUNDIALS solver itself, that translates between the generic `PSetup` function and the solver-specific routine (solver-supplied or user-supplied).
- In the "solve" call the TFQMR iteration is performed. This will include scaling and preconditioning if those options have been supplied.

The header file to include when using this module is `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_sptfqmr.h`. The SUNLINSOL_SPTFQMR module is accessible from all SUNDIALS solvers *without* linking to the `libsundials_sunlinsolsptfqmr` module library.

The SUNLINSOL_SPTFQMR module defines implementations of all "iterative" linear solver operations listed in Table 8.2:

- `SUNLinSolGetType_SPTFQMR`
- `SUNLinSolInitialize_SPTFQMR`
- `SUNLinSolSetATimes_SPTFQMR`
- `SUNLinSolSetPreconditioner_SPTFQMR`
- `SUNLinSolSetScalingVectors_SPTFQMR`
- `SUNLinSolSetup_SPTFQMR`
- `SUNLinSolSolve_SPTFQMR`
- `SUNLinSolNumIters_SPTFQMR`

- `SUNLinSolResNorm_SPTFQMR`
- `SUNLinSolResid_SPTFQMR`
- `SUNLinSolLastFlag_SPTFQMR`
- `SUNLinSolSpace_SPTFQMR`
- `SUNLinSolFree_SPTFQMR`

The module SUNLINSOL_SPTFQMR provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- `SUNSPTFQMR`

  This constructor function creates and allocates memory for a SPTFQMR `SUNLinearSolver`. Its arguments are an NVECTOR, the desired type of preconditioning, and the number of linear iterations to allow.

  This routine will perform consistency checks to ensure that it is called with a consistent NVECTOR implementation (i.e. that it supplies the requisite vector operations). If `y` is incompatible, then this routine will return `NULL`.

  A `maxl` argument that is ≤ 0 will result in the default value (5).

  Allowable inputs for `pretype` are `PREC_NONE` (0), `PREC_LEFT` (1), `PREC_RIGHT` (2) and `PREC_BOTH` (3); any other integer input will result in the default (no preconditioning). We note that some SUNDIALS solvers are designed to only work with left preconditioning (IDA and IDAS) and others with only right preconditioning (KINSOL). While it is possible to configure a SUNLINSOL_SPTFQMR object to use any of the preconditioning options with these solvers, this use mode is not supported and may result in inferior performance.

  ```
  SUNLinearSolver SUNSPTFQMR(N_Vector y, int pretype, int maxl);
  ```

- `SUNSPTFQMRSetPrecType`

  This function updates the type of preconditioning to use. Supported values are `PREC_NONE` (0), `PREC_LEFT` (1), `PREC_RIGHT` (2), and `PREC_BOTH` (3).

  This routine will return with one of the error codes `SUNLS_ILL_INPUT` (illegal `pretype`), `SUNLS_MEM_NULL` (`S` is `NULL`), or `SUNLS_SUCCESS`.

  ```
  int SUNSPTFQMRSetPrecType(SUNLinearSolver S, int pretype);
  ```

- `SUNSPTFQMRSetMaxl`

  This function updates the number of linear solver iterations to allow.

  A `maxl` argument that is ≤ 0 will result in the default value (5).

  This routine will return with one of the error codes `SUNLS_MEM_NULL` (`S` is `NULL`) or `SUNLS_SUCCESS`.

  ```
  int SUNSPTFQMRSetMaxl(SUNLinearSolver S, int maxl);
  ```

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the SUNLINSOL_SPTFQMR module also includes the Fortran-callable function `FSUNSPTFQMRInit(code, pretype, maxl, ier)` to initialize this SUNLINSOL_SPTFQMR module for a given SUNDIALS solver. Here `code` is an integer input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); `pretype` and `maxl` are the same as for the C function `SUNSPTFQMR`; `ier` is an error return flag equal to 0 for success and -1 for failure. All of these input arguments should be declared so as to match C type `int`. This routine must be called *after* the NVECTOR object has been initialized. Additionally, when using ARKODE with a non-identity mass matrix, the Fortran-callable function `FSUNMassSPTFQMRInit(pretype, maxl, ier)` initializes this SUNLINSOL_SPTFQMR module for solving mass matrix linear systems.

The `SUNSPTFQMRSetPrecType` and `SUNSPTFQMRSetMaxl` routines also support Fortran interfaces for the system and mass matrix solvers (all arguments should be commensurate with a C `int`):

- `FSUNSPTFQMRSetPrecType(code, pretype, ier)`

- `FSUNMassSPTFQMRSetPrecType(pretype, ier)`
- `FSUNSPTFQMRSetMaxl(code, maxl, ier)`
- `FSUNMassSPTFQMRSetMaxl(maxl, ier)`

8.13 The SUNLinearSolver_PCG implementation

The PCG (Preconditioned Conjugate Gradient [15]) implementation of the SUNLINSOL module provided with SUNDIALS, SUNLINSOL_PCG, is an iterative linear solver that is designed to be compatible with any NVECTOR implementation (serial, threaded, parallel, and user-supplied) that supports a minimal subset of operations (`N_VClone`, `N_VDotProd`, `N_VScale`, `N_VLinearSum`, `N_VProd`, and `N_VDestroy`). Unlike the SPGMR and SPFGMR algorithms, PCG requires a fixed amount of memory that does not increase with the number of allowed iterations.

Unlike all of the other iterative linear solvers supplied with SUNDIALS, PCG should only be used on *symmetric* linear systems (e.g. mass matrix linear systems encountered in ARKODE). As a result, the explanation of the role of scaling and preconditioning matrices given in general must be modified in this scenario. The PCG algorithm solves a linear system $Ax = b$ where A is a symmetric ($A^T = A$), real-valued matrix. Preconditioning is allowed, and is applied in a symmetric fashion on both the right and left. Scaling is also allowed and is applied symmetrically. We denote the preconditioner and scaling matrices as follows:

- P is the preconditioner (assumed symmetric),
- S is a diagonal matrix of scale factors.

The matrices A and P are not required explicitly; only routines that provide A and P^{-1} as operators are required. The diagonal of the matrix S is held in a single NVECTOR, supplied by the user.

In this notation, PCG applies the underlying CG algorithm to the equivalent transformed system

$$\tilde{A}\tilde{x} = \tilde{b} \tag{8.3}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{A} &= SP^{-1}AP^{-1}S, \\ \tilde{b} &= SP^{-1}b, \\ \tilde{x} &= S^{-1}Px. \end{aligned} \tag{8.4}$$

The scaling matrix must be chosen so that the vectors $SP^{-1}b$ and $S^{-1}Px$ have dimensionless components.

The stopping test for the PCG iterations is on the L2 norm of the scaled preconditioned residual:

$$\begin{aligned} & \|\tilde{b} - \tilde{A}\tilde{x}\|_2 < \delta \\ \Leftrightarrow \\ & \|SP^{-1}b - SP^{-1}Ax\|_2 < \delta \\ \Leftrightarrow \\ & \|P^{-1}b - P^{-1}Ax\|_S < \delta \end{aligned}$$

where $\|v\|_S = \sqrt{v^T S^T S v}$, with an input tolerance δ.

The SUNLINSOL_PCG module defines the *content* field of a `SUNLinearSolver` to be the following structure:

```
struct _SUNLinearSolverContent_PCG {
  int maxl;
  int pretype;
```

```
  int numiters;
  realtype resnorm;
  long int last_flag;
  ATimesFn ATimes;
  void* ATData;
  PSetupFn Psetup;
  PSolveFn Psolve;
  void* PData;
  N_Vector s;
  N_Vector r;
  N_Vector p;
  N_Vector z;
  N_Vector Ap;
};
```

These entries of the *content* field contain the following information:

maxl - number of PCG iterations to allow (default is 5),

pretype - flag for use of preconditioning (default is none),

numiters - number of iterations from the most-recent solve,

resnorm - final linear residual norm from the most-recent solve,

last_flag - last error return flag from an internal function,

ATimes - function pointer to perform Av product,

ATData - pointer to structure for `ATimes`,

Psetup - function pointer to preconditioner setup routine,

Psolve - function pointer to preconditioner solve routine,

PData - pointer to structure for `Psetup` and `Psolve`,

s - vector pointer for supplied scaling matrix (default is `NULL`),

r - a NVECTOR which holds the preconditioned linear system residual,

p, z, Ap - NVECTORs used for workspace by the PCG algorithm.

This solver is constructed to perform the following operations:

- During construction all NVECTOR solver data is allocated, with vectors cloned from a template NVECTOR that is input, and default solver parameters are set.
- User-facing "set" routines may be called to modify default solver parameters.
- Additional "set" routines are called by the SUNDIALS solver that interfaces with SUNLINSOL_PCG to supply the `ATimes`, `PSetup`, and `Psolve` function pointers and `s` scaling vector.
- In the "initialize" call, the solver parameters are checked for validity.
- In the "setup" call, any non-`NULL` `PSetup` function is called. Typically, this is provided by the SUNDIALS solver itself, that translates between the generic `PSetup` function and the solver-specific routine (solver-supplied or user-supplied).
- In the "solve" call the PCG iteration is performed. This will include scaling and preconditioning if those options have been supplied.

The header file to include when using this module is `sunlinsol/sunlinsol_pcg.h`. The SUNLINSOL_PCG module is accessible from all SUNDIALS solvers *without* linking to the `libsundials_sunlinsolpcg` module library.

The SUNLINSOL_PCG module defines implementations of all "iterative" linear solver operations listed in Table 8.2:

- `SUNLinSolGetType_PCG`
- `SUNLinSolInitialize_PCG`
- `SUNLinSolSetATimes_PCG`
- `SUNLinSolSetPreconditioner_PCG`
- `SUNLinSolSetScalingVectors_PCG` – since PCG only supports symmetric scaling, the second NVECTOR argument to this function is ignored
- `SUNLinSolSetup_PCG`
- `SUNLinSolSolve_PCG`
- `SUNLinSolNumIters_PCG`
- `SUNLinSolResNorm_PCG`
- `SUNLinSolResid_PCG`
- `SUNLinSolLastFlag_PCG`
- `SUNLinSolSpace_PCG`
- `SUNLinSolFree_PCG`

The module SUNLINSOL_PCG provides the following additional user-callable routines:

- `SUNPCG`

  This constructor function creates and allocates memory for a PCG `SUNLinearSolver`. Its arguments are an NVECTOR, a flag indicating to use preconditioning, and the number of linear iterations to allow.

  This routine will perform consistency checks to ensure that it is called with a consistent NVECTOR implementation (i.e. that it supplies the requisite vector operations). If `y` is incompatible then this routine will return `NULL`.

  A `maxl` argument that is ≤ 0 will result in the default value (5).

  Since the PCG algorithm is designed to only support symmetric preconditioning, then any of the `pretype` inputs `PREC_LEFT` (1), `PREC_RIGHT` (2), or `PREC_BOTH` (3) will result in use of the symmetric preconditioner; any other integer input will result in the default (no preconditioning). Although some SUNDIALS solvers are designed to only work with left preconditioning (IDA and IDAS) and others with only right preconditioning (KINSOL), PCG should *only* be used with these packages when the linear systems are known to be *symmetric*. Since the scaling of matrix rows and columns must be identical in a symmetric matrix, symmetric preconditioning should work appropriately even for packages designed with one-sided preconditioning in mind.

  ```
  SUNLinearSolver SUNPCG(N_Vector y, int pretype, int maxl);
  ```

- `SUNPCGSetPrecType`

  This function updates the flag indicating use of preconditioning. As above, any one of the input values, `PREC_LEFT` (1), `PREC_RIGHT` (2), or `PREC_BOTH` (3) will enable preconditioning; `PREC_NONE` (0) disables preconditioning.

  This routine will return with one of the error codes `SUNLS_ILL_INPUT` (illegal `pretype`), `SUNLS_MEM_NULL` (`S` is `NULL`), or `SUNLS_SUCCESS`.

  ```
  int SUNPCGSetPrecType(SUNLinearSolver S, int pretype);
  ```

- `SUNPCGSetMaxl`

  This function updates the number of linear solver iterations to allow.

  A `maxl` argument that is ≤ 0 will result in the default value (5).

  This routine will return with one of the error codes `SUNLS_MEM_NULL` (`S` is `NULL`) or `SUNLS_SUCCESS`.

  ```
  int SUNPCGSetMaxl(SUNLinearSolver S, int maxl);
  ```

For solvers that include a Fortran interface module, the SUNLINSOL_PCG module also includes the Fortran-callable function `FSUNPCGInit(code, pretype, maxl, ier)` to initialize this SUNLINSOL_PCG module for a given SUNDIALS solver. Here `code` is an integer input solver id (1 for CVODE, 2 for IDA, 3 for KINSOL, 4 for ARKODE); `pretype` and `maxl` are the same as for the C function `SUNPCG`; `ier` is an error return flag equal to 0 for success and -1 for failure. All of these input arguments should be declared so as to match C type `int`. This routine must be called *after* the NVECTOR object has been initialized. Additionally, when using ARKODE with a non-identity mass matrix, the Fortran-callable function `FSUNMassPCGInit(pretype, maxl, ier)` initializes this SUNLINSOL_PCG module for solving mass matrix linear systems.

The `SUNPCGSetPrecType` and `SUNPCGSetMaxl` routines also support Fortran interfaces for the system and mass matrix solvers (all arguments should be commensurate with a C `int`):

- `FSUNPCGSetPrecType(code, pretype, ier)`
- `FSUNMassPCGSetPrecType(pretype, ier)`
- `FSUNPCGSetMaxl(code, maxl, ier)`
- `FSUNMassPCGSetMaxl(maxl, ier)`

8.14 SUNLinearSolver Examples

There are `SUNLinearSolver` examples that may be installed for each implementation; these make use of the functions in `test_sunlinsol.c`. These example functions show simple usage of the `SUNLinearSolver` family of functions. The inputs to the examples depend on the linear solver type, and are output to `stdout` if the example is run without the appropriate number of command-line arguments.
The following is a list of the example functions in `test_sunlinsol.c`:

- `Test_SUNLinSolGetType`: Verifies the returned solver type against the value that should be returned.
- `Test_SUNLinSolInitialize`: Verifies that `SUNLinSolInitialize` can be called and returns successfully.
- `Test_SUNLinSolSetup`: Verifies that `SUNLinSolSetup` can be called and returns successfully.
- `Test_SUNLinSolSolve`: Given a SUNMATRIX object A, NVECTOR objects x and b (where $Ax = b$) and a desired solution tolerance `tol`, this routine clones x into a new vector y, calls `SUNLinSolSolve` to fill y as the solution to $Ay = b$ (to the input tolerance), verifies that each entry in x and y match to within `10*tol`, and overwrites x with y prior to returning (in case the calling routine would like to investigate further).
- `Test_SUNLinSolSetATimes` (iterative solvers only): Verifies that `SUNLinSolSetATimes` can be called and returns successfully.
- `Test_SUNLinSolSetPreconditioner` (iterative solvers only): Verifies that `SUNLinSolSetPreconditioner` can be called and returns successfully.
- `Test_SUNLinSolSetScalingVectors` (iterative solvers only): Verifies that `SUNLinSolSetScalingVectors` can be called and returns successfully.

- `Test_SUNLinSolLastFlag`: Verifies that `SUNLinSolLastFlag` can be called, and outputs the result to `stdout`.
- `Test_SUNLinSolNumIters` (iterative solvers only): Verifies that `SUNLinSolNumIters` can be called, and outputs the result to `stdout`.
- `Test_SUNLinSolResNorm` (iterative solvers only): Verifies that `SUNLinSolResNorm` can be called, and that the result is non-negative.
- `Test_SUNLinSolResid` (iterative solvers only): Verifies that `SUNLinSolResid` can be called.
- `Test_SUNLinSolSpace` verifies that `SUNLinSolSpace` can be called, and outputs the results to `stdout`.

We'll note that these tests should be performed in a particular order. For either direct or iterative linear solvers, `Test_SUNLinSolInitialize` must be called before `Test_SUNLinSolSetup`, which must be called before `Test_SUNLinSolSolve`. Additionally, for iterative linear solvers `Test_SUNLinSolSetATimes`, `Test_SUNLinSolSetPreconditioner` and `Test_SUNLinSolSetScalingVectors` should be called before `Test_SUNLinSolInitialize`; similarly `Test_SUNLinSolNumIters`, `Test_SUNLinSolResNorm` and `Test_SUNLinSolResid` should be called after `Test_SUNLinSolSolve`. These are called in the appropriate order in all of the example problems.

8.15 SUNLinearSolver functions used by IDA

In Table 8.5 below, we list the linear solver functions in the SUNLINSOL module used within the IDA package. The table also shows, for each function, which of the code modules uses the function. In general, the main IDA integrator considers three categories of linear solvers, *direct*, *iterative* and *custom*, with interfaces accessible in the IDA header files `ida_direct.h` (IDADLS), `ida_spils.h` (IDASPILS) and `ida_customls.h` (IDACLS), respectively. Hence, the table columns reference the use of SUNLINSOL functions by each of these solver interfaces.

As with the SUNMATRIX module, we emphasize that the IDA user does not need to know detailed usage of linear solver functions by the IDA code modules in order to use IDA. This information is presented as an implementation detail for the interested reader.

Table 8.5: List of linear solver function usage by IDA code modules

	IDADLS	IDASPILS	IDACLS
SUNLinSolGetType	✓	✓	†
SUNLinSolSetATimes		✓	†
SUNLinSolSetPreconditioner		✓	†
SUNLinSolSetScalingVectors		✓	†
SUNLinSolInitialize	✓	✓	✓
SUNLinSolSetup	✓	✓	✓
SUNLinSolSolve	✓	✓	✓
SUNLinSolNumIters		✓	†
SUNLinSolResNorm		✓	†
SUNLinSolResid		✓	†
SUNLinSolLastFlag			
SUNLinSolFree			
SUNLinSolSpace	†	†	†

The linear solver functions listed in Table 8.2 with a † symbol are optionally used, in that these are only called if they are implemented in the SUNLINSOL module that is being used (i.e. their function

pointers are non-`NULL`). Also, although IDA does not call the `SUNLinSolLastFlag` or `SUNLinSolFree` routines directly, these are available for users to query linear solver issues and free linear solver memory directly.

Appendix A

SUNDIALS Package Installation Procedure

The installation of any SUNDIALS package is accomplished by installing the SUNDIALS suite as a whole, according to the instructions that follow. The same procedure applies whether or not the downloaded file contains one or all solvers in SUNDIALS.

The SUNDIALS suite (or individual solvers) are distributed as compressed archives (`.tar.gz`). The name of the distribution archive is of the form *solver*`-x.y.z.tar.gz`, where *solver* is one of: `sundials`, `cvode`, `cvodes`, `arkode`, `ida`, `idas`, or `kinsol`, and `x.y.z` represents the version number (of the SUNDIALS suite or of the individual solver). To begin the installation, first uncompress and expand the sources, by issuing

```
% tar xzf solver-x.y.z.tar.gz
```

This will extract source files under a directory *solver*`-x.y.z`.

Starting with version `2.6.0` of SUNDIALS, CMake is the only supported method of installation. The explanations of the installation procedure begins with a few common observations:

- The remainder of this chapter will follow these conventions:

  solverdir is the directory *solver*`-x.y.z` created above; i.e., the directory containing the SUNDIALS sources.

  builddir is the (temporary) directory under which SUNDIALS is built.

  instdir is the directory under which the SUNDIALS exported header files and libraries will be installed. Typically, header files are exported under a directory *instdir*`/include` while libraries are installed under *instdir*`/lib`, with *instdir* specified at configuration time.

- For SUNDIALS CMake-based installation, in-source builds are prohibited; in other words, the build directory *builddir* can **not** be the same as *solverdir* and such an attempt will lead to an error. This prevents "polluting" the source tree and allows efficient builds for different configurations and/or options.

- The installation directory *instdir* can **not** be the same as the source directory *solverdir*.

- By default, only the libraries and header files are exported to the installation directory *instdir*. If enabled by the user (with the appropriate toggle for CMake), the examples distributed with SUNDIALS will be built together with the solver libraries but the installation step will result in exporting (by default in a subdirectory of the installation directory) the example sources and sample outputs together with automatically generated configuration files that reference the *installed* SUNDIALS headers and libraries. As such, these configuration files for the SUNDIALS examples can be used as "templates" for your own problems. CMake installs `CMakeLists.txt` files and also (as an option available only under Unix/Linux) `Makefile` files. Note this installation

approach also allows the option of building the SUNDIALS examples without having to install them. (This can be used as a sanity check for the freshly built libraries.)

- Even if generation of shared libraries is enabled, only static libraries are created for the FCMIX modules. (Because of the use of fixed names for the Fortran user-provided subroutines, FCMIX shared libraries would result in "undefined symbol" errors at link time.)

A.1 CMake-based installation

CMake-based installation provides a platform-independent build system. CMake can generate Unix and Linux Makefiles, as well as KDevelop, Visual Studio, and (Apple) XCode project files from the same configuration file. In addition, CMake also provides a GUI front end and which allows an interactive build and installation process.

The SUNDIALS build process requires CMake version `3.0.2` or higher and a working C compiler. On Unix-like operating systems, it also requires Make (and `curses`, including its development libraries, for the GUI front end to CMake, `ccmake`), while on Windows it requires Visual Studio. While many Linux distributions offer CMake, the version included may be out of date. Many new CMake features have been added recently, and you should download the latest version from `http://www.cmake.org`. Build instructions for CMake (only necessary for Unix-like systems) can be found on the CMake website. Once CMake is installed, Linux/Unix users will be able to use `ccmake`, while Windows users will be able to use `CMakeSetup`.

As previously noted, when using CMake to configure, build and install SUNDIALS, it is always required to use a separate build directory. While in-source builds are possible, they are explicitly prohibited by the SUNDIALS CMake scripts (one of the reasons being that, unlike autotools, CMake does not provide a `make distclean` procedure and it is therefore difficult to clean-up the source tree after an in-source build). By ensuring a separate build directory, it is an easy task for the user to clean-up all traces of the build by simply removing the build directory. CMake does generate a `make clean` which will remove files generated by the compiler and linker.

A.1.1 Configuring, building, and installing on Unix-like systems

The default CMake configuration will build all included solvers and associated examples and will build static and shared libraries. The *instdir* defaults to `/usr/local` and can be changed by setting the `CMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX` variable. Support for FORTRAN and all other options are disabled.

CMake can be used from the command line with the `cmake` command, or from a `curses`-based GUI by using the `ccmake` command. Examples for using both methods will be presented. For the examples shown it is assumed that there is a top level SUNDIALS directory with appropriate source, build and install directories:

```
% mkdir (...)sundials/instdir
% mkdir (...)sundials/builddir
% cd (...)sundials/builddir
```

Building with the GUI

Using CMake with the GUI follows this general process:

- Select and modify values, run configure (`c` key)
- New values are denoted with an asterisk
- To set a variable, move the cursor to the variable and press enter
  - If it is a boolean (ON/OFF) it will toggle the value
  - If it is string or file, it will allow editing of the string

  - For file and directories, the `<tab>` key can be used to complete

- Repeat until all values are set as desired and the generate option is available (`g` key)
- Some variables (advanced variables) are not visible right away
- To see advanced variables, toggle to advanced mode (`t` key)
- To search for a variable press `/` key, and to repeat the search, press the `n` key

To build the default configuration using the GUI, from the *builddir* enter the ccmake command and point to the *solverdir*:

```
% ccmake ../solverdir
```

The default configuration screen is shown in Figure A.1.

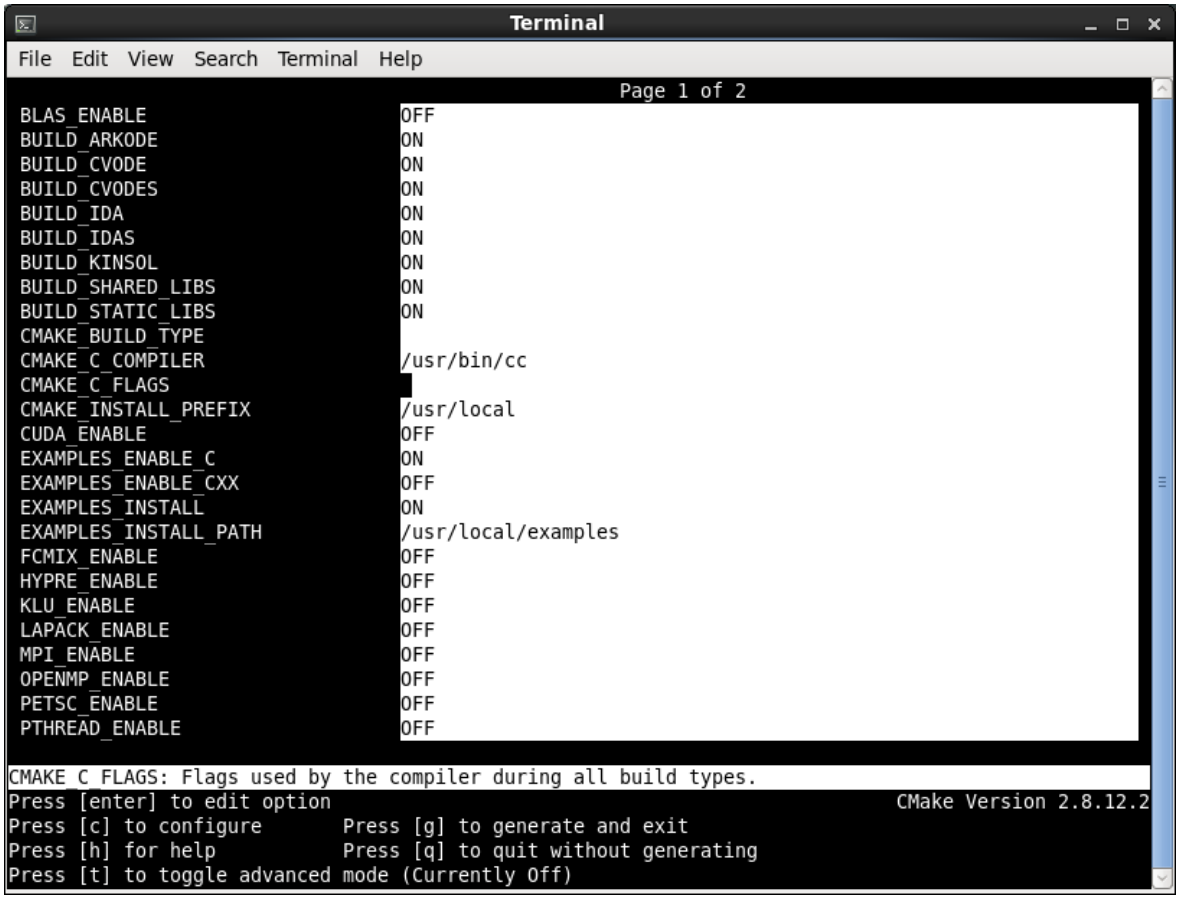


Figure A.1: Default configuration screen. Note: Initial screen is empty. To get this default configuration, press 'c' repeatedly (accepting default values denoted with asterisk) until the 'g' option is available.

The default *instdir* for both SUNDIALS and corresponding examples can be changed by setting the `CMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX` and the `EXAMPLES_INSTALL_PATH` as shown in figure A.2.

Pressing the (`g` key) will generate makefiles including all dependencies and all rules to build SUNDIALS on this system. Back at the command prompt, you can now run:

```
% make
```

To install SUNDIALS in the installation directory specified in the configuration, simply run:

```
% make install
```

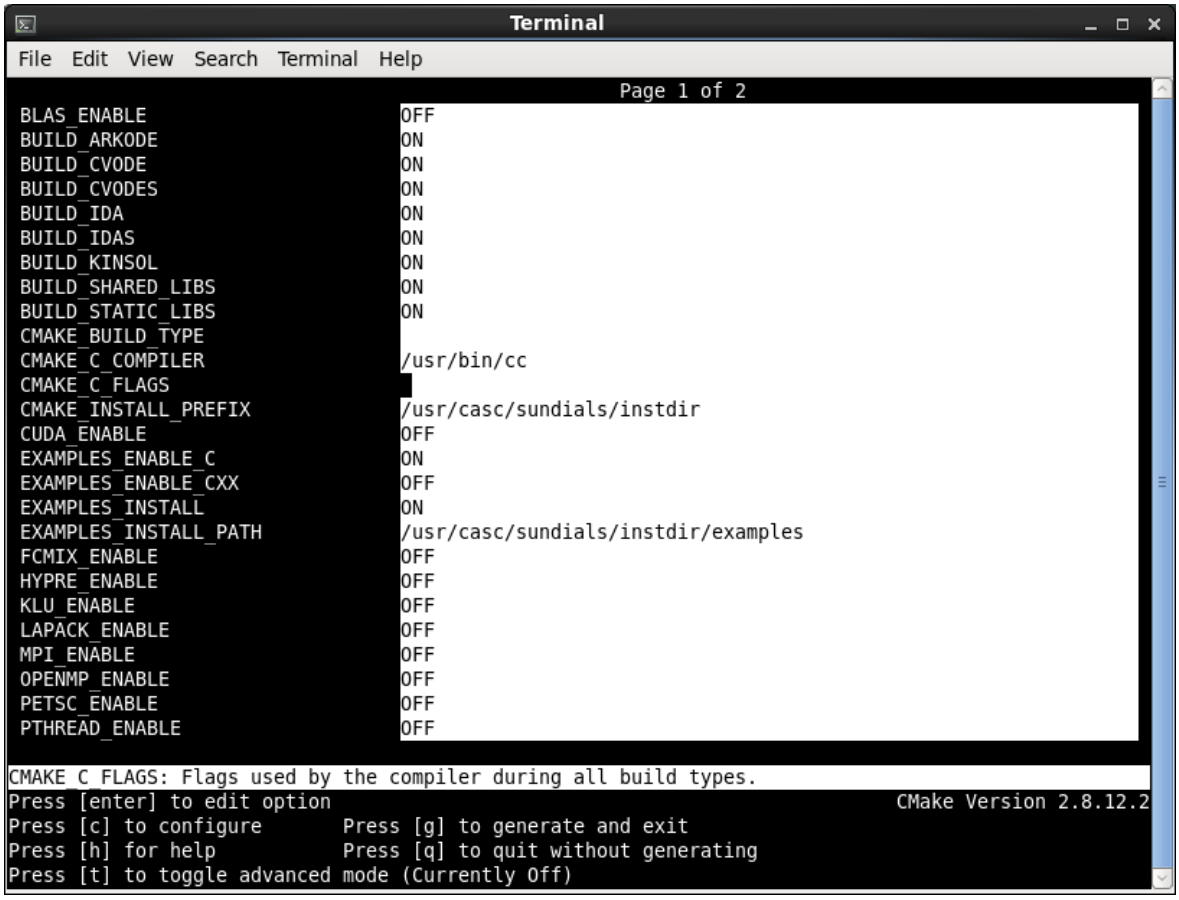


Figure A.2: Changing the *instdir* for SUNDIALS and corresponding examples

Building from the command line

Using CMake from the command line is simply a matter of specifying CMake variable settings with the `cmake` command. The following will build the default configuration:

```
% cmake -DCMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX=/home/myname/sundials/instdir \
> -DEXAMPLES_INSTALL_PATH=/home/myname/sundials/instdir/examples \
> ../solverdir
% make
% make install
```

A.1.2 Configuration options (Unix/Linux)

A complete list of all available options for a CMake-based SUNDIALS configuration is provide below. Note that the default values shown are for a typical configuration on a Linux system and are provided as illustration only.

`BLAS_ENABLE` - Enable BLAS support
Default: OFF
Note: Setting this option to ON will trigger additional CMake options. See additional information on building with BLAS enabled in A.1.4.

`BLAS_LIBRARIES` - BLAS library
Default: /usr/lib/libblas.so

Note: CMake will search for libraries in your LD_LIBRARY_PATH prior to searching default system paths.

BUILD_ARKODE - Build the ARKODE library
Default: ON

BUILD_CVODE - Build the CVODE library
Default: ON

BUILD_CVODES - Build the CVODES library
Default: ON

BUILD_IDA - Build the IDA library
Default: ON

BUILD_IDAS - Build the IDAS library
Default: ON

BUILD_KINSOL - Build the KINSOL library
Default: ON

BUILD_SHARED_LIBS - Build shared libraries
Default: ON

BUILD_STATIC_LIBS - Build static libraries
Default: ON

CMAKE_BUILD_TYPE - Choose the type of build, options are: None (CMAKE_C_FLAGS used), Debug, Release, RelWithDebInfo, and MinSizeRel
Default:
Note: Specifying a build type will trigger the corresponding build type specific compiler flag options below which will be appended to the flags set by CMAKE_<language>_FLAGS.

CMAKE_C_COMPILER - C compiler
Default: /usr/bin/cc

CMAKE_C_FLAGS - Flags for C compiler
Default:

CMAKE_C_FLAGS_DEBUG - Flags used by the C compiler during debug builds
Default: -g

CMAKE_C_FLAGS_MINSIZEREL - Flags used by the C compiler during release minsize builds
Default: -Os -DNDEBUG

CMAKE_C_FLAGS_RELEASE - Flags used by the C compiler during release builds
Default: -O3 -DNDEBUG

CMAKE_CXX_COMPILER - C++ compiler
Default: /usr/bin/c++
Note: A C++ compiler (and all related options) are only triggered if C++ examples are enabled (EXAMPLES_ENABLE_CXX is ON). All SUNDIALS solvers can be used from C++ applications by default without setting any additional configuration options.

CMAKE_CXX_FLAGS - Flags for C++ compiler
Default:

CMAKE_CXX_FLAGS_DEBUG - Flags used by the C++ compiler during debug builds
Default: -g

CMAKE_CXX_FLAGS_MINSIZEREL - Flags used by the C++ compiler during release minsize builds
Default: -Os -DNDEBUG

CMAKE_CXX_FLAGS_RELEASE - Flags used by the C++ compiler during release builds
Default: -O3 -DNDEBUG

CMAKE_Fortran_COMPILER - Fortran compiler
Default: /usr/bin/gfortran
Note: Fortran support (and all related options) are triggered only if either Fortran-C support is enabled (FCMIX_ENABLE is ON) or BLAS/LAPACK support is enabled (BLAS_ENABLE or LAPACK_ENABLE is ON).

CMAKE_Fortran_FLAGS - Flags for Fortran compiler
Default:

CMAKE_Fortran_FLAGS_DEBUG - Flags used by the Fortran compiler during debug builds
Default: -g

CMAKE_Fortran_FLAGS_MINSIZEREL - Flags used by the Fortran compiler during release minsize builds
Default: -Os

CMAKE_Fortran_FLAGS_RELEASE - Flags used by the Fortran compiler during release builds
Default: -O3

CMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX - Install path prefix, prepended onto install directories
Default: /usr/local
Note: The user must have write access to the location specified through this option. Exported SUNDIALS header files and libraries will be installed under subdirectories include and lib of CMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX, respectively.

CUDA_ENABLE - Build the SUNDIALS CUDA vector module.
Default: OFF

EXAMPLES_ENABLE_C - Build the SUNDIALS C examples
Default: ON

EXAMPLES_ENABLE_CUDA - Build the SUNDIALS CUDA examples
Default: OFF
Note: You need to enable CUDA support to build these examples.

EXAMPLES_ENABLE_CXX - Build the SUNDIALS C++ examples
Default: OFF

EXAMPLES_ENABLE_RAJA - Build the SUNDIALS RAJA examples
Default: OFF
Note: You need to enable CUDA and RAJA support to build these examples.

EXAMPLES_ENABLE_F77 - Build the SUNDIALS Fortran77 examples
Default: ON (if FCMIX_ENABLE is ON)

EXAMPLES_ENABLE_F90 - Build the SUNDIALS Fortran90 examples
Default: OFF

EXAMPLES_INSTALL - Install example files
Default: ON
Note: This option is triggered when any of the SUNDIALS example programs are enabled (EXAMPLES_ENABLE_<language> is ON). If the user requires installation of example programs then the sources and sample output files for all SUNDIALS modules that are currently enabled will be exported to the directory specified by EXAMPLES_INSTALL_PATH. A CMake configuration

script will also be automatically generated and exported to the same directory. Additionally, if the configuration is done under a Unix-like system, makefiles for the compilation of the example programs (using the installed SUNDIALS libraries) will be automatically generated and exported to the directory specified by EXAMPLES_INSTALL_PATH.

EXAMPLES_INSTALL_PATH - Output directory for installing example files
Default: /usr/local/examples
Note: The actual default value for this option will be an examples subdirectory created under CMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX.

FCMIX_ENABLE - Enable Fortran-C support
Default: OFF

HYPRE_ENABLE - Enable *hypre* support
Default: OFF
Note: See additional information on building with *hypre* enabled in A.1.4.

HYPRE_INCLUDE_DIR - Path to *hypre* header files

HYPRE_LIBRARY_DIR - Path to *hypre* installed library files

KLU_ENABLE - Enable KLU support
Default: OFF
Note: See additional information on building with KLU enabled in A.1.4.

KLU_INCLUDE_DIR - Path to SuiteSparse header files

KLU_LIBRARY_DIR - Path to SuiteSparse installed library files

LAPACK_ENABLE - Enable LAPACK support
Default: OFF
Note: Setting this option to ON will trigger additional CMake options. See additional information on building with LAPACK enabled in A.1.4.

LAPACK_LIBRARIES - LAPACK (and BLAS) libraries
Default: /usr/lib/liblapack.so;/usr/lib/libblas.so
Note: CMake will search for libraries in your LD_LIBRARY_PATH prior to searching default system paths.

MPI_ENABLE - Enable MPI support (build the parallel nvector).
Default: OFF
Note: Setting this option to ON will trigger several additional options related to MPI.

MPI_C_COMPILER - mpicc program
Default:

MPI_CXX_COMPILER - mpicxx program
Default:
Note: This option is triggered only if MPI is enabled (MPI_ENABLE is ON) and C++ examples are enabled (EXAMPLES_ENABLE_CXX is ON). All SUNDIALS solvers can be used from C++ MPI applications by default without setting any additional configuration options other than MPI_ENABLE.

MPI_Fortran_COMPILER - mpif77 or mpif90 program
Default:
Note: This option is triggered only if MPI is enabled (MPI_ENABLE is ON), Fortran-C support is enabled (FCMIX_ENABLE is ON), and Fortran77 or Fortran90 examples are enabled (EXAMPLES_ENABLE_F77 or EXAMPLES_ENABLE_F90 are ON).

MPIEXEC - Specify the executable for running MPI programs
Default: mpirun
Note: This option is triggered only if MPI is enabled (MPI_ENABLE is ON).

OPENMP_ENABLE - Enable OpenMP support (build the OpenMP nvector).
Default: OFF

PETSC_ENABLE - Enable PETSc support
Default: OFF
Note: See additional information on building with PETSc enabled in A.1.4.

PETSC_INCLUDE_DIR - Path to PETSc header files

PETSC_LIBRARY_DIR - Path to PETSc installed library files

PTHREAD_ENABLE - Enable Pthreads support (build the Pthreads nvector).
Default: OFF

RAJA_ENABLE - Enable RAJA support (build the RAJA nvector).
Default: OFF
Note: You need to enable CUDA in order to build the RAJA vector module.

SUNDIALS_F77_FUNC_CASE - **advanced option** - Specify the case to use in the Fortran name-mangling scheme, options are: lower or upper
Default:
Note: The build system will attempt to infer the Fortran name-mangling scheme using the Fortran compiler. This option should only be used if a Fortran compiler is not available or to override the inferred or default (lower) scheme if one can not be determined. If used, SUNDIALS_F77_FUNC_UNDERSCORES must also be set.

SUNDIALS_F77_FUNC_UNDERSCORES - **advanced option** - Specify the number of underscores to append in the Fortran name-mangling scheme, options are: none, one, or two
Default:
Note: The build system will attempt to infer the Fortran name-mangling scheme using the Fortran compiler. This option should only be used if a Fortran compiler is not available or to override the inferred or default (one) scheme if one can not be determined. If used, SUNDIALS_F77_FUNC_CASE must also be set.

SUNDIALS_INDEX_TYPE - Integer type used for SUNDIALS indices, options are: int32_t or int64_t
Default: int64_t

SUNDIALS_PRECISION - Precision used in SUNDIALS, options are: double, single, or extended
Default: double

SUPERLUMT_ENABLE - Enable SuperLU_MT support
Default: OFF
Note: See additional information on building with SuperLU_MT enabled in A.1.4.

SUPERLUMT_INCLUDE_DIR - Path to SuperLU_MT header files (typically SRC directory)

SUPERLUMT_LIBRARY_DIR - Path to SuperLU_MT installed library files

SUPERLUMT_THREAD_TYPE - Must be set to Pthread or OpenMP
Default: Pthread

USE_GENERIC_MATH - Use generic (stdc) math libraries
Default: ON

xSDK Configuration Options

SUNDIALS supports CMake configuration options defined by the Extreme-scale Scientific Software Development Kit (xSDK) community policies (see `https://xsdk.info` for more information). xSDK CMake options are unused by default but may be activated by setting `USE_XSDK_DEFAULTS` to ON.

When xSDK options are active, they will overwrite the corresponding SUNDIALS option and may have different default values (see details below). As such the equivalent SUNDIALS options should not be used when configuring with xSDK options. In the GUI front end to CMake (`ccmake`), setting `USE_XSDK_DEFAULTS` to ON will hide the corresponding SUNDIALS options as advanced CMake variables. During configuration, messages are output detailing which xSDK flags are active and the equivalent SUNDIALS options that are replaced. Below is a complete list xSDK options and the corresponding SUNDIALS options if applicable.

`TPL_BLAS_LIBRARIES` - BLAS library
Default: /usr/lib/libblas.so
SUNDIALS equivalent: `BLAS_LIBRARIES`
Note: CMake will search for libraries in your `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` prior to searching default system paths.

`TPL_ENABLE_BLAS` - Enable BLAS support
Default: OFF
SUNDIALS equivalent: `BLAS_ENABLE`

`TPL_ENABLE_HYPRE` - Enable *hypre* support
Default: OFF
SUNDIALS equivalent: `HYPRE_ENABLE`

`TPL_ENABLE_KLU` - Enable KLU support
Default: OFF
SUNDIALS equivalent: `KLU_ENABLE`

`TPL_ENABLE_PETSC` - Enable PETSc support
Default: OFF
SUNDIALS equivalent: `PETSC_ENABLE`

`TPL_ENABLE_LAPACK` - Enable LAPACK support
Default: OFF
SUNDIALS equivalent: `LAPACK_ENABLE`

`TPL_ENABLE_SUPERLUMT` - Enable SuperLU_MT support
Default: OFF
SUNDIALS equivalent: `SUPERLUMT_ENABLE`

`TPL_HYPRE_INCLUDE_DIRS` - Path to *hypre* header files
SUNDIALS equivalent: `HYPRE_INCLUDE_DIR`

`TPL_HYPRE_LIBRARIES` - *hypre* library
SUNDIALS equivalent: N/A

`TPL_KLU_INCLUDE_DIRS` - Path to KLU header files
SUNDIALS equivalent: `KLU_INCLUDE_DIR`

`TPL_KLU_LIBRARIES` - KLU library
SUNDIALS equivalent: N/A

`TPL_LAPACK_LIBRARIES` - LAPACK (and BLAS) libraries
Default: /usr/lib/liblapack.so;/usr/lib/libblas.so
SUNDIALS equivalent: `LAPACK_LIBRARIES`
Note: CMake will search for libraries in your `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` prior to searching default system paths.

TPL_PETSC_INCLUDE_DIRS - Path to PETSc header files
SUNDIALS equivalent: PETSC_INCLUDE_DIR

TPL_PETSC_LIBRARIES - PETSc library
SUNDIALS equivalent: N/A

TPL_SUPERLUMT_INCLUDE_DIRS - Path to SuperLU_MT header files
SUNDIALS equivalent: SUPERLUMT_INCLUDE_DIR

TPL_SUPERLUMT_LIBRARIES - SuperLU_MT library
SUNDIALS equivalent: N/A

TPL_SUPERLUMT_THREAD_TYPE - SuperLU_MT library thread type
SUNDIALS equivalent: SUPERLUMT_THREAD_TYPE

USE_XSDK_DEFAULTS - Enable xSDK default configuration settings
Default: OFF
SUNDIALS equivalent: N/A
Note: Enabling xSDK defaults also sets CMAKE_BUILD_TYPE to Debug

XSDK_ENABLE_FORTRAN - Enable SUNDIALS Fortran interface
Default: OFF
SUNDIALS equivalent: FCMIX_ENABLE

XSDK_INDEX_SIZE - Integer size (bits) used for indices in SUNDIALS, options are: 32 or 64
Default: 32
SUNDIALS equivalent: SUNDIALS_INDEX_TYPE

XSDK_PRECISION - Precision used in SUNDIALS, options are: double, single, or quad
Default: double
SUNDIALS equivalent: SUNDIALS_PRECISION

A.1.3 Configuration examples

The following examples will help demonstrate usage of the CMake configure options.
To configure SUNDIALS using the default C and Fortran compilers, and default mpicc and mpif77 parallel compilers, enable compilation of examples, and install libraries, headers, and example sources under subdirectories of /home/myname/sundials/, use:

```
% cmake \
> -DCMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX=/home/myname/sundials/instdir \
> -DEXAMPLES_INSTALL_PATH=/home/myname/sundials/instdir/examples \
> -DMPI_ENABLE=ON \
> -DFCMIX_ENABLE=ON \
> /home/myname/sundials/solverdir
%
% make install
%
```

To disable installation of the examples, use:

```
% cmake \
> -DCMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX=/home/myname/sundials/instdir \
> -DEXAMPLES_INSTALL_PATH=/home/myname/sundials/instdir/examples \
> -DMPI_ENABLE=ON \
> -DFCMIX_ENABLE=ON \
> -DEXAMPLES_INSTALL=OFF \
> /home/myname/sundials/solverdir
```

```
%
% make install
%
```

A.1.4 Working with external Libraries

The SUNDIALS suite contains many options to enable implementation flexibility when developing solutions. The following are some notes addressing specific configurations when using the supported third party libraries. When building SUNDIALS as a shared library external libraries any used with SUNDIALS must also be build as a shared library or as a static library compiled with the `-fPIC` flag.

Building with BLAS

SUNDIALS does not utilize BLAS directly but it may be needed by other external libraries that SUNDIALS can be built with (e.g. LAPACK, PETSc, SuperLU_MT, etc.). To enable BLAS, set the `BLAS_ENABLE` option to `ON`. If the directory containing the BLAS library is in the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable, CMake will set the `BLAS_LIBRARIES` variable accordingly, otherwise CMake will attempt to find the BLAS library in standard system locations. To explicitly tell CMake what libraries to use, the `BLAS_LIBRARIES` variable can be set to the desired library. Example:

```
% cmake \
> -DCMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX=/home/myname/sundials/instdir \
> -DEXAMPLES_INSTALL_PATH=/home/myname/sundials/instdir/examples \
> -DBLAS_ENABLE=ON \
> -DBLAS_LIBRARIES=/myblaspath/lib/libblas.so \
> -DSUPERLUMT_ENABLE=ON \
> -DSUPERLUMT_INCLUDE_DIR=/mysuperlumtpath/SRC
> -DSUPERLUMT_LIBRARY_DIR=/mysuperlumtpath/lib
> /home/myname/sundials/solverdir
%
% make install
%
```

When allowing CMake to automatically locate the LAPACK library, CMake *may* also locate the corresponding BLAS library.

If a working Fortran compiler is not available to infer the Fortran name-mangling scheme, the options `SUNDIALS_F77_FUNC_CASE` and `SUNDIALS_F77_FUNC_UNDERSCORES` *must* be set in order to bypass the check for a Fortran compiler and define the name-mangling scheme. The defaults for these options in earlier versions of SUNDIALS were `lower` and `one` respectively.

Building with LAPACK

To enable LAPACK, set the `LAPACK_ENABLE` option to `ON`. If the directory containing the LAPACK library is in the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable, CMake will set the `LAPACK_LIBRARIES` variable accordingly, otherwise CMake will attempt to find the LAPACK library in standard system locations. To explicitly tell CMake what library to use, the `LAPACK_LIBRARIES` variable can be set to the desired libraries. When setting the LAPACK location explicitly the location of the corresponding BLAS library will also need to be set. Example:

```
% cmake \
> -DCMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX=/home/myname/sundials/instdir \
> -DEXAMPLES_INSTALL_PATH=/home/myname/sundials/instdir/examples \
> -DBLAS_ENABLE=ON \
> -DBLAS_LIBRARIES=/mylapackpath/lib/libblas.so \
> -DLAPACK_ENABLE=ON \
> -DLAPACK_LIBRARIES=/mylapackpath/lib/liblapack.so \
```

```
> /home/myname/sundials/solverdir
%
% make install
%
```

When allowing CMake to automatically locate the LAPACK library, CMake *may* also locate the corresponding BLAS library.

If a working Fortran compiler is not available to infer the Fortran name-mangling scheme, the options SUNDIALS_F77_FUNC_CASE and SUNDIALS_F77_FUNC_UNDERSCORES *must* be set in order to bypass the check for a Fortran compiler and define the name-mangling scheme. The defaults for these options in earlier versions of SUNDIALS were lower and one respectively.

Building with KLU

The KLU libraries are part of SuiteSparse, a suite of sparse matrix software, available from the Texas A&M University website: http://faculty.cse.tamu.edu/davis/suitesparse.html. SUNDIALS has been tested with SuiteSparse version 4.5.3. To enable KLU, set KLU_ENABLE to ON, set KLU_INCLUDE_DIR to the include path of the KLU installation and set KLU_LIBRARY_DIR to the lib path of the KLU installation. The CMake configure will result in populating the following variables: AMD_LIBRARY, AMD_LIBRARY_DIR, BTF_LIBRARY, BTF_LIBRARY_DIR, COLAMD_LIBRARY, COLAMD_LIBRARY_DIR, and KLU_LIBRARY.

Building with SuperLU_MT

The SuperLU_MT libraries are available for download from the Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory website: http://crd-legacy.lbl.gov/~xiaoye/SuperLU/#superlu_mt. SUNDIALS has been tested with SuperLU_MT version 3.1. To enable SuperLU_MT, set SUPERLUMT_ENABLE to ON, set SUPERLUMT_INCLUDE_DIR to the SRC path of the SuperLU_MT installation, and set the variable SUPERLUMT_LIBRARY_DIR to the lib path of the SuperLU_MT installation. At the same time, the variable SUPERLUMT_THREAD_TYPE must be set to either Pthread or OpenMP.

Do not mix thread types when building SUNDIALS solvers. If threading is enabled for SUNDIALS by having either OPENMP_ENABLE or PTHREAD_ENABLE set to ON then SuperLU_MT should be set to use the same threading type.

Building with PETSc

The PETSc libraries are available for download from the Argonne National Laboratory website: http://www.mcs.anl.gov/petsc. SUNDIALS has been tested with PETSc version 3.7.2. To enable PETSc, set PETSC_ENABLE to ON, set PETSC_INCLUDE_DIR to the include path of the PETSc installation, and set the variable PETSC_LIBRARY_DIR to the lib path of the PETSc installation.

Building with *hypre*

The *hypre* libraries are available for download from the Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory website: http://computation.llnl.gov/projects/hypre. SUNDIALS has been tested with *hypre* version 2.11.1. To enable *hypre*, set HYPRE_ENABLE to ON, set HYPRE_INCLUDE_DIR to the include path of the *hypre* installation, and set the variable HYPRE_LIBRARY_DIR to the lib path of the *hypre* installation.

Building with CUDA

SUNDIALS CUDA modules and examples have been tested with version 8.0 of the CUDA toolkit. To build them, you need to install the Toolkit and compatible NVIDIA drivers. Both are available for download from the NVIDIA website: https://developer.nvidia.com/cuda-downloads. To enable CUDA, set CUDA_ENABLE to ON. If CUDA is installed in a nonstandard location, you may be prompted to

set the variable CUDA_TOOLKIT_ROOT_DIR with your CUDA Toolkit installation path. To enable CUDA examples, set EXAMPLES_ENABLE_CUDA to ON.

Building with RAJA

RAJA is a performance portability layer developed by Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory and can be obtained from https://github.com/LLNL/RAJA. SUNDIALS RAJA modules and examples have been tested with RAJA version 0.3. Building SUNDIALS RAJA modules requires a CUDA-enabled RAJA installation. To enable RAJA, set CUDA_ENABLE and RAJA_ENABLE to ON. If RAJA is installed in a nonstandard location you will be prompted to set the variable RAJA_DIR with the path to the RAJA CMake configuration file. To enable building the RAJA examples set EXAMPLES_ENABLE_RAJA to ON.

A.1.5 Testing the build and installation

If SUNDIALS was configured with EXAMPLES_ENABLE_<language> options to ON, then a set of regression tests can be run after building with the make command by running:

```
% make test
```

Additionally, if EXAMPLES_INSTALL was also set to ON, then a set of smoke tests can be run after installing with the make install command by running:

```
% make test_install
```

A.2 Building and Running Examples

Each of the SUNDIALS solvers is distributed with a set of examples demonstrating basic usage. To build and install the examples, set at least of the EXAMPLES_ENABLE_<language> options to ON, and set EXAMPLES_INSTALL to ON. Specify the installation path for the examples with the variable EXAMPLES_INSTALL_PATH. CMake will generate CMakeLists.txt configuration files (and Makefile files if on Linux/Unix) that reference the *installed* SUNDIALS headers and libraries.

Either the CMakeLists.txt file or the traditional Makefile may be used to build the examples as well as serve as a template for creating user developed solutions. To use the supplied Makefile simply run make to compile and generate the executables. To use CMake from within the installed example directory, run cmake (or ccmake to use the GUI) followed by make to compile the example code. Note that if CMake is used, it will overwrite the traditional Makefile with a new CMake-generated Makefile. The resulting output from running the examples can be compared with example output bundled in the SUNDIALS distribution.

NOTE: There will potentially be differences in the output due to machine architecture, compiler versions, use of third party libraries etc.

A.3 Configuring, building, and installing on Windows

CMake can also be used to build SUNDIALS on Windows. To build SUNDIALS for use with Visual Studio the following steps should be performed:

1. Unzip the downloaded tar file(s) into a directory. This will be the *solverdir*
2. Create a separate *builddir*
3. Open a Visual Studio Command Prompt and cd to *builddir*
4. Run cmake-gui ../*solverdir*
   (a) Hit Configure
   (b) Check/Uncheck solvers to be built

(c) Change CMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX to *instdir*

(d) Set other options as desired

(e) Hit Generate

5. Back in the VS Command Window:

(a) Run msbuild ALL_BUILD.vcxproj

(b) Run msbuild INSTALL.vcxproj

The resulting libraries will be in the *instdir*. The SUNDIALS project can also now be opened in Visual Studio. Double click on the ALL_BUILD.vcxproj file to open the project. Build the whole *solution* to create the SUNDIALS libraries. To use the SUNDIALS libraries in your own projects, you must set the include directories for your project, add the SUNDIALS libraries to your project solution, and set the SUNDIALS libraries as dependencies for your project.

A.4 Installed libraries and exported header files

Using the CMake SUNDIALS build system, the command

```
% make install
```

will install the libraries under *libdir* and the public header files under *includedir*. The values for these directories are *instdir*`/lib` and *instdir*`/include`, respectively. The location can be changed by setting the CMake variable `CMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX`. Although all installed libraries reside under *libdir*`/lib`, the public header files are further organized into subdirectories under *includedir*`/include`.

The installed libraries and exported header files are listed for reference in Table A.1. The file extension *.lib* is typically `.so` for shared libraries and `.a` for static libraries. Note that, in the Tables, names are relative to *libdir* for libraries and to *includedir* for header files.

A typical user program need not explicitly include any of the shared SUNDIALS header files from under the *includedir*`/include/sundials` directory since they are explicitly included by the appropriate solver header files (*e.g.*, `cvode_dense.h` includes `sundials_dense.h`). However, it is both legal and safe to do so, and would be useful, for example, if the functions declared in `sundials_dense.h` are to be used in building a preconditioner.

Table A.1: SUNDIALS libraries and header files

SHARED	Libraries	n/a	
	Header files	sundials/sundials_config.h	sundials/sundials_fconfig.h
		sundials/sundials_types.h	sundials/sundials_math.h
		sundials/sundials_nvector.h	sundials/sundials_fnvector.h
		sundials/sundials_iterative.h	sundials/sundials_direct.h
		sundials/sundials_dense.h	sundials/sundials_band.h
		sundials/sundials_matrix.h	sundials/sundials_version.h
		sundials/sundials_linearsolver.h	
NVECTOR_SERIAL	Libraries	libsundials_nvecserial.*lib*	libsundials_fnvecserial.a
	Header files	nvector/nvector_serial.h	
NVECTOR_PARALLEL	Libraries	libsundials_nvecparallel.*lib*	libsundials_fnvecparallel.a
	Header files	nvector/nvector_parallel.h	

continued on next page

continued from last page		
NVECTOR_OPENMP	Libraries	libsundials_nvecopenmp.*lib* libsundials_fnvecopenmp.a
	Header files	nvector/nvector_openmp.h
NVECTOR_PTHREADS	Libraries	libsundials_nvecpthreads.*lib* libsundials_fnvecpthreads.a
	Header files	nvector/nvector_pthreads.h
NVECTOR_PARHYP	Libraries	libsundials_nvecparhyp.*lib*
	Header files	nvector/nvector_parhyp.h
NVECTOR_PETSC	Libraries	libsundials_nvecpetsc.*lib*
	Header files	nvector/nvector_petsc.h
NVECTOR_CUDA	Libraries	libsundials_nveccuda.*lib*
	Header files	nvector/nvector_cuda.h nvector/cuda/ThreadPartitioning.hpp nvector/cuda/Vector.hpp nvector/cuda/VectorKernels.cuh
NVECTOR_RAJA	Libraries	libsundials_nvecraja.*lib*
	Header files	nvector/nvector_raja.h nvector/raja/Vector.hpp
SUNMATRIX_BAND	Libraries	libsundials_sunmatrixband.*lib* libsundials_fsunmatrixband.a
	Header files	sunmatrix/sunmatrix_band.h
SUNMATRIX_DENSE	Libraries	libsundials_sunmatrixdense.*lib* libsundials_fsunmatrixdense.a
	Header files	sunmatrix/sunmatrix_dense.h
SUNMATRIX_SPARSE	Libraries	libsundials_sunmatrixsparse.*lib* libsundials_fsunmatrixsparse.a
	Header files	sunmatrix/sunmatrix_sparse.h
SUNLINSOL_BAND	Libraries	libsundials_sunlinsolband.*lib* libsundials_fsunlinsolband.a
	Header files	sunlinsol/sunlinsol_band.h
SUNLINSOL_DENSE	Libraries	libsundials_sunlinsoldense.*lib* libsundials_fsunlinsoldense.a
	Header files	sunlinsol/sunlinsol_dense.h
SUNLINSOL_KLU	Libraries	libsundials_sunlinsolklu.*lib* libsundials_fsunlinsolklu.a
	Header files	sunlinsol/sunlinsol_klu.h
SUNLINSOL_LAPACKBAND	Libraries	libsundials_sunlinsollapackband.*lib* libsundials_fsunlinsollapackband.a
	Header files	sunlinsol/sunlinsol_lapackband.h
SUNLINSOL_LAPACKDENSE	Libraries	libsundials_sunlinsollapackdense.*lib* libsundials_fsunlinsollapackdense.a
	Header files	sunlinsol/sunlinsol_lapackdense.h
SUNLINSOL_PCG	Libraries	libsundials_sunlinsolpcg.*lib*
continued on next page		

continued from last page			
		libsundials_fsunlinsolpcg.a	
	Header files	sunlinsol/sunlinsol_pcg.h	
SUNLINSOL_SPBCGS	Libraries	libsundials_sunlinsolspbcgs.*lib* libsundials_fsunlinsolspbcgs.a	
	Header files	sunlinsol/sunlinsol_spbcgs.h	
SUNLINSOL_SPFGMR	Libraries	libsundials_sunlinsolspfgmr.*lib* libsundials_fsunlinsolspfgmr.a	
	Header files	sunlinsol/sunlinsol_spfgmr.h	
SUNLINSOL_SPGMR	Libraries	libsundials_sunlinsolspgmr.*lib* libsundials_fsunlinsolspgmr.a	
	Header files	sunlinsol/sunlinsol_spgmr.h	
SUNLINSOL_SPTFQMR	Libraries	libsundials_sunlinsolsptfqmr.*lib* libsundials_fsunlinsolsptfqmr.a	
	Header files	sunlinsol/sunlinsol_sptfqmr.h	
SUNLINSOL_SUPERLUMT	Libraries	libsundials_sunlinsolsuperlumt.*lib* libsundials_fsunlinsolsuperlumt.a	
	Header files	sunlinsol/sunlinsol_superlumt.h	
CVODE	Libraries	libsundials_cvode.*lib*	libsundials_fcvode.a
	Header files	cvode/cvode.h cvode/cvode_direct.h cvode/cvode_bandpre.h	cvode/cvode_impl.h cvode/cvode_spils.h cvode/cvode_bbdpre.h
CVODES	Libraries	libsundials_cvodes.*lib*	
	Header files	cvodes/cvodes.h cvodes/cvodes_direct.h cvodes/cvodes_bandpre.h	cvodes/cvodes_impl.h cvodes/cvodes_spils.h cvodes/cvodes_bbdpre.h
ARKODE	Libraries	libsundials_arkode.*lib*	libsundials_farkode.a
	Header files	arkode/arkode.h arkode/arkode_direct.h arkode/arkode_bandpre.h	arkode/arkode_impl.h arkode/arkode_spils.h arkode/arkode_bbdpre.h
IDA	Libraries	libsundials_ida.*lib*	libsundials_fida.a
	Header files	ida/ida.h ida/ida_direct.h ida/ida_bbdpre.h	ida/ida_impl.h ida/ida_spils.h
IDAS	Libraries	libsundials_idas.*lib*	
	Header files	idas/idas.h idas/idas_direct.h idas/idas_bbdpre.h	idas/idas_impl.h idas/idas_spils.h
KINSOL	Libraries	libsundials_kinsol.*lib*	libsundials_fkinsol.a
	Header files	kinsol/kinsol.h kinsol/kinsol_direct.h kinsol/kinsol_bbdpre.h	kinsol/kinsol_impl.h kinsol/kinsol_spils.h

Appendix B

IDA Constants

Below we list all input and output constants used by the main solver and linear solver modules, together with their numerical values and a short description of their meaning.

B.1 IDA input constants

IDA **main solver module**		
IDA_NORMAL	1	Solver returns at specified output time.
IDA_ONE_STEP	2	Solver returns after each successful step.
IDA_YA_YDP_INIT	1	Compute y_a and $\dot{y}_d$, given y_d.
IDA_Y_INIT	2	Compute y, given $\dot{y}$.
Iterative linear solver module		
PREC_NONE	0	No preconditioning
PREC_LEFT	1	Preconditioning on the left.
MODIFIED_GS	1	Use modified Gram-Schmidt procedure.
CLASSICAL_GS	2	Use classical Gram-Schmidt procedure.

B.2 IDA output constants

IDA **main solver module**		
IDA_SUCCESS	0	Successful function return.
IDA_TSTOP_RETURN	1	`IDASolve` succeeded by reaching the specified stopping point.
IDA_ROOT_RETURN	2	`IDASolve` succeeded and found one or more roots.
IDA_WARNING	99	`IDASolve` succeeded but an unusual situation occurred.
IDA_TOO_MUCH_WORK	-1	The solver took `mxstep` internal steps but could not reach tout.
IDA_TOO_MUCH_ACC	-2	The solver could not satisfy the accuracy demanded by the user for some internal step.
IDA_ERR_FAIL	-3	Error test failures occurred too many times during one internal time step or minimum step size was reached.

IDA_CONV_FAIL	-4	Convergence test failures occurred too many times during one internal time step or minimum step size was reached.
IDA_LINIT_FAIL	-5	The linear solver's initialization function failed.
IDA_LSETUP_FAIL	-6	The linear solver's setup function failed in an unrecoverable manner.
IDA_LSOLVE_FAIL	-7	The linear solver's solve function failed in an unrecoverable manner.
IDA_RES_FAIL	-8	The user-provided residual function failed in an unrecoverable manner.
IDA_REP_RES_FAIL	-9	The user-provided residual function repeatedly returned a recoverable error flag, but the solver was unable to recover.
IDA_RTFUNC_FAIL	-10	The rootfinding function failed in an unrecoverable manner.
IDA_CONSTR_FAIL	-11	The inequality constraints were violated and the solver was unable to recover.
IDA_FIRST_RES_FAIL	-12	The user-provided residual function failed recoverably on the first call.
IDA_LINESEARCH_FAIL	-13	The line search failed.
IDA_NO_RECOVERY	-14	The residual function, linear solver setup function, or linear solver solve function had a recoverable failure, but IDACalcIC could not recover.
IDA_MEM_NULL	-20	The ida_mem argument was NULL.
IDA_MEM_FAIL	-21	A memory allocation failed.
IDA_ILL_INPUT	-22	One of the function inputs is illegal.
IDA_NO_MALLOC	-23	The IDA memory was not allocated by a call to IDAInit.
IDA_BAD_EWT	-24	Zero value of some error weight component.
IDA_BAD_K	-25	The k-th derivative is not available.
IDA_BAD_T	-26	The time t is outside the last step taken.
IDA_BAD_DKY	-27	The vector argument where derivative should be stored is NULL.

IDADLS **linear solver modules**

IDADLS_SUCCESS	0	Successful function return.
IDADLS_MEM_NULL	-1	The ida_mem argument was NULL.
IDADLS_LMEM_NULL	-2	The IDADLS linear solver has not been initialized.
IDADLS_ILL_INPUT	-3	The IDADLS solver is not compatible with the current NVECTOR module.
IDADLS_MEM_FAIL	-4	A memory allocation request failed.
IDADLS_JACFUNC_UNRECVR	-5	The Jacobian function failed in an unrecoverable manner.
IDADLS_JACFUNC_RECVR	-6	The Jacobian function had a recoverable error.
IDADLS_SUNMAT_FAIL	-7	An error occurred with the current SUNMATRIX module.

IDASPILS **linear solver modules**

IDASPILS_SUCCESS	0	Successful function return.

IDASPILS_MEM_NULL	-1	The ida_mem argument was NULL.
IDASPILS_LMEM_NULL	-2	The IDASPILS linear solver has not been initialized.
IDASPILS_ILL_INPUT	-3	The IDASPILS solver is not compatible with the current NVECTOR module, or an input value was illegal.
IDASPILS_MEM_FAIL	-4	A memory allocation request failed.
IDASPILS_PMEM_NULL	-5	The preconditioner module has not been initialized.
IDASPILS_SUNLS_FAIL	-6	An error occurred with the current SUNLINSOL module.

Bibliography

[1] KLU Sparse Matrix Factorization Library. http://faculty.cse.tamu.edu/davis/suitesparse.html.

[2] SuperLU_MT Threaded Sparse Matrix Factorization Library. http://crd-legacy.lbl.gov/ xiaoye/-SuperLU/.

[3] K. E. Brenan, S. L. Campbell, and L. R. Petzold. *Numerical Solution of Initial-Value Problems in Differential-Algebraic Equations*. SIAM, Philadelphia, Pa, 1996.

[4] P. N. Brown and A. C. Hindmarsh. Reduced Storage Matrix Methods in Stiff ODE Systems. *J. Appl. Math. & Comp.*, 31:49–91, 1989.

[5] P. N. Brown, A. C. Hindmarsh, and L. R. Petzold. Using Krylov Methods in the Solution of Large-Scale Differential-Algebraic Systems. *SIAM J. Sci. Comput.*, 15:1467–1488, 1994.

[6] P. N. Brown, A. C. Hindmarsh, and L. R. Petzold. Consistent Initial Condition Calculation for Differential-Algebraic Systems. *SIAM J. Sci. Comput.*, 19:1495–1512, 1998.

[7] G. D. Byrne. Pragmatic Experiments with Krylov Methods in the Stiff ODE Setting. In J.R. Cash and I. Gladwell, editors, *Computational Ordinary Differential Equations*, pages 323–356, Oxford, 1992. Oxford University Press.

[8] G. D. Byrne and A. C. Hindmarsh. User Documentation for PVODE, An ODE Solver for Parallel Computers. Technical Report UCRL-ID-130884, LLNL, May 1998.

[9] G. D. Byrne and A. C. Hindmarsh. PVODE, An ODE Solver for Parallel Computers. *Intl. J. High Perf. Comput. Apps.*, 13(4):254–365, 1999.

[10] S. D. Cohen and A. C. Hindmarsh. CVODE, a Stiff/Nonstiff ODE Solver in C. *Computers in Physics*, 10(2):138–143, 1996.

[11] A. M. Collier, A. C. Hindmarsh, R. Serban, and C.S. Woodward. User Documentation for KINSOL v4.0.0-dev. Technical Report UCRL-SM-208116, LLNL, 2017.

[12] T. A. Davis and P. N. Ekanathan. Algorithm 907: KLU, a direct sparse solver for circuit simulation problems. *ACM Trans. Math. Softw.*, 37(3), 2010.

[13] J. W. Demmel, J. R. Gilbert, and X. S. Li. An asynchronous parallel supernodal algorithm for sparse gaussian elimination. *SIAM J. Matrix Analysis and Applications*, 20(4):915–952, 1999.

[14] R. W. Freund. A Transpose-Free Quasi-Minimal Residual Algorithm for Non-Hermitian Linear Systems. *SIAM J. Sci. Comp.*, 14:470–482, 1993.

[15] M. R. Hestenes and E. Stiefel. Methods of Conjugate Gradients for Solving Linear Systems. *J. Research of the National Bureau of Standards*, 49(6):409–436, 1952.

[16] K. L. Hiebert and L. F. Shampine. Implicitly Defined Output Points for Solutions of ODEs. Technical Report SAND80-0180, Sandia National Laboratories, February 1980.

[17] A. C. Hindmarsh, P. N. Brown, K. E. Grant, S. L. Lee, R. Serban, D. E. Shumaker, and C. S. Woodward. SUNDIALS, suite of nonlinear and differential/algebraic equation solvers. *ACM Trans. Math. Softw.*, (31):363–396, 2005.

[18] A. C. Hindmarsh and R. Serban. User Documentation for CVODE v4.0.0-dev. Technical Report UCRL-SM-208108, LLNL, 2017.

[19] A. C. Hindmarsh, R. Serban, and A. Collier. Example Programs for IDA v4.0.0-dev. Technical Report UCRL-SM-208113, LLNL, 2017.

[20] A. C. Hindmarsh, R. Serban, and D. R. Reynolds. Example Programs for CVODE v4.0.0-dev. Technical report, LLNL, 2017. UCRL-SM-208110.

[21] A. C. Hindmarsh and A. G. Taylor. PVODE and KINSOL: Parallel Software for Differential and Nonlinear Systems. Technical Report UCRL-ID-129739, LLNL, February 1998.

[22] X. S. Li. An overview of SuperLU: Algorithms, implementation, and user interface. *ACM Trans. Math. Softw.*, 31(3):302–325, September 2005.

[23] Daniel R. Reynolds. Example Programs for ARKODE v3.0.0-dev. Technical report, Southern Methodist University, 2017.

[24] Y. Saad. A flexible inner-outer preconditioned GMRES algorithm. *SIAM J. Sci. Comput.*, 14(2):461–469, 1993.

[25] Y. Saad and M. H. Schultz. GMRES: A Generalized Minimal Residual Algorithm for Solving Nonsymmetric Linear Systems. *SIAM J. Sci. Stat. Comp.*, 7:856–869, 1986.

[26] H. A. Van Der Vorst. Bi-CGSTAB: A Fast and Smoothly Converging Variant of Bi-CG for the Solution of Nonsymmetric Linear Systems. *SIAM J. Sci. Stat. Comp.*, 13:631–644, 1992.

Index

BIG_REAL, 24, 98
booleantype, 24

CONSTR_VEC, 86

data types
    Fortran, 75

eh_data, 63
error messages, 36
    redirecting, 36
    user-defined handler, 38, 62

FIDA interface module
    interface to the IDABBDPRE module, 88–90
    optional input and output, 85
    rootfinding, 88
    usage, 77–85
    user-callable functions, 76–77
    user-supplied functions, 77
FIDABANDSETJAC, 81
FIDABBDINIT, 89
FIDABBDOPT, 90
FIDABBDREINIT, 90
FIDABJAC, 81
FIDACOMMFN, 90
FIDADENSESETJAC, 80
FIDADJAC, 80
FIDADLSINIT, 80
FIDAEWT, 79
FIDAEWTSET, 80
FIDAFREE, 85
FIDAGETDKY, 84
FIDAGETERRWEIGHTS, 85
FIDAGETESTLOCALERR, 85
FIDAGLOCFN, 90
FIDAJTIMES, 82, 91
FIDAJTSETUP, 83, 91
FIDAMALLOC, 79
FIDAMALLOC, 79
FIDAPSET, 83
FIDAPSOL, 83
FIDAREINIT, 84
FIDARESFUN, 78
FIDASETIIN, 85
FIDASETRIN, 85
FIDASETVIN, 85
FIDASOLVE, 84
FIDASPARSESETJAC, 82
FIDASPILSINIT, 82
FIDASPILSSETJAC, 82
FIDASPILSSETPREC, 82
FIDATOLREINIT, 85

generic linear solvers
    use in IDA, 18–21

half-bandwidths, 71
header files, 25, 70

ID_VEC, 86
IDA
    motivation for writing in C, 1
    package structure, 17
IDA linear solver interfaces, 17
    IDADLS, 32
    IDASPILS, 33
    selecting one, 32
IDA linear solvers
    header files, 25
    implementation details, 18
    NVECTOR compatibility, 23
    selecting one, 32
ida/ida.h, 25
ida/ida_direct.h, 25
ida/ida_spils.h, 25
IDA_BAD_DKY, 47
IDA_BAD_EWT, 34
IDA_BAD_K, 47
IDA_BAD_T, 47
IDA_CONSTR_FAIL, 34, 36
IDA_CONV_FAIL, 34, 36
IDA_ERR_FAIL, 36
IDA_FIRST_RES_FAIL, 34
IDA_ILL_INPUT, 29, 30, 34, 35, 39–42, 44–47, 55, 61
IDA_LINESEARCH_FAIL, 34
IDA_LINIT_FAIL, 34, 36

IDA_LSETUP_FAIL, 34, 36
IDA_LSOLVE_FAIL, 34, 36
IDA_MEM_FAIL, 29
IDA_MEM_NULL, 29–31, 34, 35, 38–42, 44–47, 50–56, 61
IDA_NO_MALLOC, 30, 31, 34, 61
IDA_NO_RECOVERY, 34
IDA_NORMAL, 35
IDA_ONE_STEP, 35
IDA_REP_RES_ERR, 36
IDA_RES_FAIL, 34, 36
IDA_ROOT_RETURN, 35
IDA_RTFUNC_FAIL, 36, 64
IDA_SUCCESS, 29–31, 34, 35, 38–42, 44–47, 56, 61
IDA_TOO_MUCH_ACC, 36
IDA_TOO_MUCH_WORK, 35
IDA_TSTOP_RETURN, 35
IDA_WARNING, 63
IDA_Y_INIT, 33
IDA_YA_YDP_INIT, 33
IDABBDPRE preconditioner
  description, 69
  optional output, 73–74
  usage, 70–71
  user-callable functions, 71–73
  user-supplied functions, 69–70
IDABBDPrecGetNumGfnEvals, 73
IDABBDPrecGetWorkSpace, 73
IDABBDPrecInit, 72
IDABBDPrecReInit, 73
IDACalcIC, 33
IDACreate, 29
IDADLS linear solver
  SUNLINSOL compatibility, 32
IDADLS linear solver interface
  Jacobian approximation used by, 42
  memory requirements, 56
  optional input, 42
  optional output, 56–58
  use in FIDA, 80
IDADLS_ILL_INPUT, 32
IDADLS_LMEM_NULL, 42, 57
IDADLS_MEM_FAIL, 32
IDADLS_MEM_NULL, 32, 42, 57
IDADLS_SUCCESS, 32, 42, 57
IDADlsGetLastFlag, 57
IDADlsGetNumJacEvals, 57
IDADlsGetNumResEvals, 57
IDADlsGetReturnFlagName, 58
IDADlsGetWorkSpace, 56
IDADlsJacFn, 64
IDADlsSetJacFn, 42
IDADlsSetLinearSolver, 27, 32, 64
IDAErrHandlerFn, 62
IDAEwtFn, 63
IDAFree, 28, 30
IDAGetActualInitStep, 52
IDAGetConsistentIC, 55
IDAGetCurrentOrder, 52
IDAGetCurrentStep, 52
IDAGetCurrentTime, 53
IDAGetDky, 47
IDAGetErrWeights, 53
IDAGetEstLocalErrors, 53
IDAGetIntegratorStats, 54
IDAGetLastOrder, 51
IDAGetLastStep, 52
IDAGetNonlinSolvStats, 55
IDAGetNumBacktrackOps, 55
IDAGetNumErrTestFails, 51
IDAGetNumGEvals, 56
IDAGetNumLinSolvSetups, 51
IDAGetNumNonlinSolvConvFails, 54
IDAGetNumNonlinSolvIters, 54
IDAGetNumResEvals, 51
IDAGetNumSteps, 50
IDAGetReturnFlagName, 55
IDAGetRootInfo, 56
IDAGetTolScaleFactor, 53
IDAGetWorkSpace, 50
IDAInit, 29, 61
IDAReInit, 61
IDAResFn, 29, 62
IDARootFn, 63
IDARootInit, 34
IDASetConstraints, 42
IDASetErrFile, 36
IDASetErrHandlerFn, 38
IDASetId, 41
IDASetInitStep, 39
IDASetLineSearchOffIC, 46
IDASetMaxBacksIC, 45
IDASetMaxConvFails, 40
IDASetMaxErrTestFails, 40
IDASetMaxNonlinIters, 40
IDASetMaxNumItersIC, 45
IDASetMaxNumJacsIC, 45
IDASetMaxNumSteps, 39
IDASetMaxNumStepsIC, 45
IDASetMaxOrd, 38
IDASetMaxStep, 39
IDASetNoInactiveRootWarn, 47
IDASetNonlinConvCoef, 41
IDASetNonlinConvCoefIC, 44
IDASetRootDirection, 46
IDASetStepToleranceIC, 46
IDASetStopTime, 40
IDASetSuppressAlg, 41

IDASetUserData, 38
IDASolve, 28, 35
IDASPILS linear solver
SUNLINSOL compatibility, 33
IDASPILS linear solver interface
convergence test, 43
Jacobian approximation used by, 43
memory requirements, 58
optional input, 43–44
optional output, 58–61
preconditioner setup function, 43, 68
preconditioner solve function, 43, 67
use in FIDA, 82
IDASPILS_ILL_INPUT, 33, 44, 72
IDASPILS_LMEM_NULL, 43, 44, 58–60, 72, 73
IDASPILS_MEM_FAIL, 33, 72
IDASPILS_MEM_NULL, 33, 43, 44, 58–60
IDASPILS_PMEM_NULL, 73, 74
IDASPILS_SUCCESS, 33, 43, 44, 58–60
IDASPILS_SUNLS_FAIL, 33, 43, 44
IDASpilsGetLastFlag, 60
IDASpilsGetNumConvFails, 59
IDASpilsGetNumJtimesEvals, 60
IDASpilsGetNumJTSetupEvals, 59
IDASpilsGetNumLinIters, 58
IDASpilsGetNumPrecEvals, 59
IDASpilsGetNumPrecSolves, 59
IDASpilsGetNumResEvals, 60
IDASpilsGetReturnFlagName, 61
IDASpilsGetWorkSpace, 58
IDASpilsJacTimesSetupFn, 66
IDASpilsJacTimesVecFn, 66
IDASpilsPrecSetupFn, 68
IDASpilsPrecSolveFn, 67
IDASpilsSetEpsLin, 44
IDASpilsSetJacTimes, 43
IDASpilsSetLinearSolver, 27, 32, 33
IDASpilsSetPreconditioner, 43
IDASStolerances, 30
IDASVtolerances, 30
IDAWFtolerances, 31
INIT_STEP, 86
IOUT, 85, 87
itask, 35

Jacobian approximation function
band
use in FIDA, 81
dense
use in FIDA, 80
difference quotient, 42
Jacobian times vector
difference quotient, 43
use in FIDA, 82
user-supplied, 43, 66
Jacobian-vector setup
user-supplied, 66–67
sparse
use in FIDA, 81
user-supplied, 42, 64–65

LS_OFF_IC, 86

MAX_CONVFAIL, 86
MAX_ERRFAIL, 86
MAX_NITERS, 86
MAX_NITERS_IC, 86
MAX_NJE_IC, 86
MAX_NSTEPS, 86
MAX_NSTEPS_IC, 86
MAX_ORD, 86
MAX_STEP, 86
maxord, 61
memory requirements
IDA solver, 50
IDABBDPRE preconditioner, 73
IDADLS linear solver interface, 56
IDASPILS linear solver interface, 58

N_VCloneVectorArray, 94
N_VCloneVectorArray_Cuda, 116
N_VCloneVectorArray_OpenMP, 108
N_VCloneVectorArray_Parallel, 106
N_VCloneVectorArray_ParHyp, 112
N_VCloneVectorArray_Petsc, 114
N_VCloneVectorArray_Pthreads, 111
N_VCloneVectorArray_Raja, 118
N_VCloneVectorArray_Serial, 103
N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty, 94
N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Cuda, 116
N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_OpenMP, 108
N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Parallel, 106
N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_ParHyp, 113
N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Petsc, 114
N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Pthreads, 111
N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Raja, 119
N_VCloneVectorArrayEmpty_Serial, 103
N_VCopyFromDevice_Cuda, 117
N_VCopyFromDevice_Raja, 119
N_VCopyToDevice_Cuda, 117
N_VCopyToDevice_Raja, 119
N_VDestroyVectorArray, 94
N_VDestroyVectorArray_Cuda, 116
N_VDestroyVectorArray_OpenMP, 108
N_VDestroyVectorArray_Parallel, 106
N_VDestroyVectorArray_ParHyp, 113
N_VDestroyVectorArray_Petsc, 114
N_VDestroyVectorArray_Pthreads, 111
N_VDestroyVectorArray_Raja, 119

N_VDestroyVectorArray_Serial, 103
N_Vector, 25, 93
N_VGetDeviceArrayPointer_Cuda, 117
N_VGetDeviceArrayPointer_Raja, 119
N_VGetHostArrayPointer_Cuda, 117
N_VGetHostArrayPointer_Raja, 119
N_VGetLength_Cuda, 116
N_VGetLength_OpenMP, 109
N_VGetLength_Parallel, 106
N_VGetLength_Pthreads, 111
N_VGetLength_Raja, 119
N_VGetLength_Serial, 103
N_VGetLocalLength_Parallel, 106
N_VGetVector_ParHyp, 112
N_VGetVector_Petsc, 114
N_VMake_Cuda, 116
N_VMake_OpenMP, 108
N_VMake_Parallel, 106
N_VMake_ParHyp, 112
N_VMake_Petsc, 114
N_VMake_Pthreads, 111
N_VMake_Raja, 118
N_VMake_Serial, 103
N_VNew_Cuda, 116
N_VNew_OpenMP, 108
N_VNew_Parallel, 105
N_VNew_Pthreads, 110
N_VNew_Raja, 118
N_VNew_Serial, 103
N_VNewEmpty_Cuda, 116
N_VNewEmpty_OpenMP, 108
N_VNewEmpty_Parallel, 105
N_VNewEmpty_ParHyp, 112
N_VNewEmpty_Petsc, 114
N_VNewEmpty_Pthreads, 110
N_VNewEmpty_Raja, 118
N_VNewEmpty_Serial, 103
N_VPrint_Cuda, 117
N_VPrint_OpenMP, 109
N_VPrint_Parallel, 106
N_VPrint_ParHyp, 113
N_VPrint_Petsc, 114
N_VPrint_Pthreads, 111
N_VPrint_Raja, 119
N_VPrint_Serial, 104
N_VPrintFile_Cuda, 117
N_VPrintFile_OpenMP, 109
N_VPrintFile_Parallel, 106
N_VPrintFile_ParHyp, 113
N_VPrintFile_Petsc, 114
N_VPrintFile_Pthreads, 111
N_VPrintFile_Raja, 119
N_VPrintFile_Serial, 104
NLCONV_COEF, 86
NLCONV_COEF_IC, 86
NV_COMM_P, 105
NV_CONTENT_OMP, 107
NV_CONTENT_P, 104
NV_CONTENT_PT, 110
NV_CONTENT_S, 102
NV_DATA_OMP, 107
NV_DATA_P, 105
NV_DATA_PT, 110
NV_DATA_S, 102
NV_GLOBLENGTH_P, 105
NV_Ith_OMP, 108
NV_Ith_P, 105
NV_Ith_PT, 110
NV_Ith_S, 103
NV_LENGTH_OMP, 107
NV_LENGTH_PT, 110
NV_LENGTH_S, 102
NV_LOCLENGTH_P, 105
NV_NUM_THREADS_OMP, 107
NV_NUM_THREADS_PT, 110
NV_OWN_DATA_OMP, 107
NV_OWN_DATA_P, 105
NV_OWN_DATA_PT, 110
NV_OWN_DATA_S, 102
NVECTOR module, 93

optional input
  direct linear solver interface, 42
  initial condition calculation, 44–46
  iterative linear solver, 43–44
  rootfinding, 46–47
  solver, 36–42
optional output
  band-block-diagonal preconditioner, 73–74
  direct linear solver interface, 56–58
  initial condition calculation, 55
  interpolated solution, 47
  iterative linear solver interface, 58–61
  solver, 50–55
  version, 48

portability, 24
  Fortran, 75
preconditioning
  advice on, 15, 18
  band-block diagonal, 69
  setup and solve phases, 18
  user-supplied, 43, 67, 68

RCONST, 24
realtype, 24
reinitialization, 61
residual function, 62
Rootfinding, 15, 27, 34, 88

ROUT, 85, 87

SM_COLS_B, 133
SM_COLS_D, 129
SM_COLUMN_B, 65, 133
SM_COLUMN_D, 65, 129
SM_COLUMN_ELEMENT_B, 65, 133
SM_COLUMNS_B, 133
SM_COLUMNS_D, 128
SM_COLUMNS_S, 139
SM_CONTENT_B, 133
SM_CONTENT_D, 128
SM_CONTENT_S, 137
SM_DATA_B, 133
SM_DATA_D, 129
SM_DATA_S, 139
SM_ELEMENT_B, 65, 133
SM_ELEMENT_D, 65, 129
SM_INDEXPTRS_S, 139
SM_INDEXVALS_S, 139
SM_LBAND_B, 133
SM_LDATA_B, 133
SM_LDATA_D, 128
SM_LDIM_B, 133
SM_NNZ_S, 65, 139
SM_NP_S, 139
SM_ROWS_B, 133
SM_ROWS_D, 128
SM_ROWS_S, 139
SM_SPARSETYPE_S, 139
SM_SUBAND_B, 133
SM_UBAND_B, 133
SMALL_REAL, 24
step size bounds, 39
STEP_TOL_IC, 86
STOP_TIME, 86
SUNBandLinearSolver, 153
SUNBandMatrix, 134
SUNBandMatrix_Cols, 135
SUNBandMatrix_Column, 135
SUNBandMatrix_Columns, 134
SUNBandMatrix_Data, 135
SUNBandMatrix_LDim, 135
SUNBandMatrix_LowerBandwidth, 134
SUNBandMatrix_Print, 134
SUNBandMatrix_Rows, 134
SUNBandMatrix_StoredUpperBandwidth, 134
SUNBandMatrix_UpperBandwidth, 134
SUNDenseLinearSolver, 151
SUNDenseMatrix, 129
SUNDenseMatrix_Cols, 130
SUNDenseMatrix_Column, 130
SUNDenseMatrix_Columns, 130
SUNDenseMatrix_Data, 130
SUNDenseMatrix_LData, 130
SUNDenseMatrix_Print, 129
SUNDenseMatrix_Rows, 130
sundials_nvector.h, 25
sundials_types.h, 24, 25
SUNDIALSGetVersion, 48
SUNDIALSGetVersionNumber, 48
sunindextype, 24
SUNKLU, 158
SUNKLUReInit, 158
SUNKLUSetOrdering, 159
SUNLapackBand, 156
SUNLapackDense, 154
SUNLinearSolver, 143, 144
SUNLinearSolver module, 143
SUNLINEARSOLVER_DIRECT, 145
SUNLINEARSOLVER_ITERATIVE, 145
sunlinsol/sunlinsol_band.h, 25
sunlinsol/sunlinsol_dense.h, 25
sunlinsol/sunlinsol_klu.h, 25
sunlinsol/sunlinsol_lapackband.h, 25
sunlinsol/sunlinsol_lapackdense.h, 25
sunlinsol/sunlinsol_pcg.h, 25
sunlinsol/sunlinsol_spbcgs.h, 25
sunlinsol/sunlinsol_spfgmr.h, 25
sunlinsol/sunlinsol_spgmr.h, 25
sunlinsol/sunlinsol_sptfqmr.h, 25
sunlinsol/sunlinsol_superlumt.h, 25
SUNLinSolFree, 28
SUNMatDestroy, 28
SUNMatrix, 125
SUNMatrix module, 125
SUNPCG, 177, 178
SUNPCGSetMaxl, 178
SUNPCGSetPrecType, 177
SUNSparseFromBandMatrix, 140
SUNSparseFromDenseMatrix, 139
SUNSparseMatrix, 139
SUNSparseMatrix_Columns, 140
SUNSparseMatrix_Data, 141
SUNSparseMatrix_IndexPointers, 141
SUNSparseMatrix_IndexValues, 141
SUNSparseMatrix_NNZ, 65, 140
SUNSparseMatrix_NP, 141
SUNSparseMatrix_Print, 140
SUNSparseMatrix_Realloc, 140
SUNSparseMatrix_Rows, 140
SUNSparseMatrix_SparseType, 141
SUNSPBCGS, 171
SUNSPBCGSSetMaxl, 171
SUNSPBCGSSetPrecType, 171
SUNSPFGMR, 168, 169
SUNSPFGMRSetGSType, 168
SUNSPFGMRSetMaxRestarts, 168

SUNSPFGMRSetPrecType, 168
SUNSPGMR, 164, 165
SUNSPGMRSetGSType, 165
SUNSPGMRSetMaxRestarts, 165
SUNSPGMRSetPrecType, 165
SUNSPTFQMR, 174
SUNSPTFQMRSetMaxl, 174
SUNSPTFQMRSetPrecType, 174
SUNSuperLUMT, 161
SUNSuperLUMTSetOrdering, 161, 162
SUPPRESS_ALG, 86

tolerances, 12, 31, 63

UNIT_ROUNDOFF, 24
User main program
    FIDA usage, 77
    FIDABBD usage, 89
    IDA usage, 26
    IDABBDPRE usage, 70
user_data, 38, 62–64, 70

weighted root-mean-square norm, 12